MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 100

The Saxon War

Bruno of Merseburg · Gregory VII

De bello Saxonico liber
Vita Heinrici IV imperatoris
Registrum

The Saxon War

With the Life of Henry IV and Selected Letters of Gregory VII

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

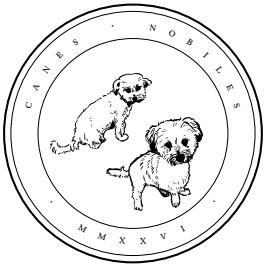


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 100 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows W. Wattenbach's text of Bruno (Hanover, 1880), the school text of the Life of Henry IV (Hanover, 1855), and Philipp Jaffé's text of Gregory VII's Register (Monumenta Gregoriana, Berlin, 1865)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

DE BELLO SAXONICO LIBER

Prologue: To Werner of Merseburg 11
Henry's Boyhood and Adalbert of Bremen 15
The King's Vices and His Cruelty 23
A Bishop Sold and the Letter to Russia 31
The Castles in Saxony 38
The Danish King, Lüneburg, and the Princes Kept Waiting 45
Duke Otto's Speech at Normeslovo 52
Henry's Flight from the Harzburg 58
The Peace and the Harzburg Razed 65
Henry Seeks Allies 74
Poison, Portents, and Werner's Letter to Siegfried 81
The First Battle 91

DE BELLO SAXONICO LIBER

(continued)

Werner's Letters for Peace 99
The Surrender at Everha 106
The Princes in Captivity 114
Plots Against Rudolf and the Worms Letters 121
Henry's Letters to Rome 129
Henry Excommunicated 136
Gregory's Letter to Hermann of Metz 152
The Deaths of the King's Supporters 177
The Saxons Rise Again and Oppenheim 186
Canossa and Rudolf's Election 196
Würzburg, the Neckar, and Mellrichstadt 205
The Outcome of Mellrichstadt 212
Gregory's Letters of 1079 220
The Saxons' First Complaint to Gregory 228
Two More Letters to Rome 237
The Pope's Letter and the Saxons' Reply 251
The Saxons Reproach Gregory and the Battle of Flarchheim 259
Gregory Turns to Rudolf and the Elster Campaign 267
The Battle on the Elster and Rudolf's Death 276
The Conference in the Kaufunger Forest 283
The Conference Ends and Hermann Is Made King 292

VITA HEINRICI IV IMPERATORIS

Lament for the Emperor 301
The Boy King and the Saxon War 309
Rudolf, Hermann, and Ekbert 318
Henry Takes Rome 327
The Peace and Young Henry's Revolt 338
The Son's Betrayal and the Abdication 348
The Battle on the Meuse and the Emperor's Death 361

REGISTRUM

II 55a · The Dictatus Papae 375
III 10 · Gregory's Warning to Henry 378
III 10a · The Lenten Synod of 1076 387
IV 1 · To the Faithful in the Empire 393
IV 2 · To Hermann of Metz 399
IV 3 · To the German Princes 407
IV 12 · The Absolution at Canossa 413
IV 12a · Henry's Oath at Canossa 417
VII 14a · The Lenten Synod of 1080 419

BRUNO OF MERSEBURG

De bello Saxonico liber

The Saxon War

Prologus Saxonici belli

PROLOGUE: TO WERNER OF MERSEBURG

Bruno dedicates his book to Werner, bishop of Merseburg. Letters, he argues, are the best gift, since gold perishes while writing rescues the past from time. He will tell briefly and truly the war King Henry waged against the Saxons, as he learned it from those who took part, but first something of Henry's boyhood, so that the reader may wonder less that the grown man began a civil war. Werner's name stands first to shield the book from scorn.

Domno suo dilectissimo, numquam sine pia veneratione
to-lord his most-beloved never without dutiful veneration
nominando, Werinhero sanctae Merseburgensis ecclesiae
to-be-named to-Werner of-the-holy Merseburg church
praesuli venerando, Bruno, licet perexigua suae tamen
to-the-prelate venerable Bruno although very-slight of-his yet
familiae portio, quicquid valet hominis utriusque devotio.
household portion whatever is-worth of-the-man of-each devotion
Inter eum qui munus aliquod donat, et eum cui donatur,
between him who gift some gives and him to-whom it-is-given
haec est observanda ratio, ut cum iste in thesauris
this is to-be-observed principle that when the-latter in treasuries
nichil pretiosius quod donet invenire valeat, tunc ille
nothing more-precious which he-may-give to-find is-able then the-former
munere tali nichil iocundius accipiat. Quod ego considerans,
than-gift such nothing more-pleasant may-receive which I considering
cum paternitati vestrae, cui pro viribus meis immo ultra
when to-the-paternity your which for strength my nay beyond
vires meas semper servire desidero, munus aliquod offerre
strength my always to-serve I-desire gift some to-offer
voluissem, quo fervorem mentis etiam foris alicuius operis
I-had-wished by-which the-fervor of-mind even outwardly of-some work

attestatione monstrarem, omnibus scriniis mearum facultatum
by-the-attestation I-might-show all the-chests of-my means
perquisitis solum litterarum genus inveni, quod et vestrae
having-been-searched only of-letters the-kind I-found which both to-your
convenire dignitati et meae non impar esse putarem devotioni.
to-befit dignity and to-my not unequal to-be I-thought devotion
Hoc enim munus ceteris omnibus, quae sibi invicem
this for gift than-other all which to-one-another mutually
possit benignitas humana largiri, pretiosius aestimo, quia
can kindness human to-bestow more-precious I-esteem because
eius et origo nobilior et usus excellentior et aetas probatur
its both origin more-noble and use more-excellent and age is-proved
esse diuturnior. Aurum namque vel cetera quae homines
to-be more-lasting gold for or the-other-things which men
praecipua ducunt, de terrae visceribus nata, nullum tribuunt
chief consider from of-the-earth the-bowels born no confer
animae profectum, sed fragilitati corporeae breve subsidium
on-the-soul profit but to-the-frailty bodily brief support
vel etiam luxuriae praebent turpe servitium, et dum corpora
or even to-luxury offer shameful service and while bodies
sustentant hominum, effugere proprium non possunt interitum.
they-sustain of-men to-escape their-own not they-can destruction
Quamvis etiam si quieta iaceant, non sint tuta, dum tinearum
although even if quiet they-lie not they-are safe while of-moths
morsibus vel scabra rubigine corrosa, diu manere non valeant.
by-the-bites or by-rough rust eaten-away long to-remain not they-are-able
Studium vero litterarum a latebris animae secretioribus
the-study but of-letters from the-hiding-places of-the-soul more-secret
ligone rationis effossum, nullum debet corporis imbecillitati
by-the-mattock of-reason dug-out no owes of-the-body to-the-weakness
servitium, sed eum, cuius industria processit, format et
service but that whose by-industry it-proceeded it-forms and

instruit animum, adeo senectutis vel interitus ignarum, ut
instructs the-mind so of-old-age or of-death ignorant that
etiam ea quae torrente violentia temporis rapiuntur ad
even those-things which by-rushing violence of-time are-snatched to
interitum, ab ipso temporis impetu litterarum virtus conetur
destruction from the-very of-time onset of-letters the-power tries
eripere, et semper nova quasi stationaria legentibus ostendere.
to-rescue and always new as-if stationary to-readers to-show
Igitur bellum quod Heinricus rex cum Saxonibus egit, volo
therefore the-war which Henry king with the-Saxons waged I-wish
breviter et veraciter scribere, sicut ab his, qui rebus
briefly and truthfully to-write as from those who in-the-events
intererant, potui cognoscere. Quod cum sui magnitudine, tum
were-present I-could to-learn which both of-its by-the-greatness and
misericordia Dei, quam in ipso bello experti sumus, est
by-the-mercy of-God which in the-very war experienced we-have is
memorabile, sicut in sequentibus, si quis legere dignabitur,
memorable as in the-following(-pages) if anyone to-read will-deign
poterit agnoscere. Sic enim in flagello vino severitatis
he-will-be-able to-recognize thus for in the-scourge with-the-wine of-severity
oleum pietatis admiscuit, ut et prophetam vera locutum
the-oil of-piety be-mixed that both the-prophet true-things spoken
esse gaudentes agnosceremus: ‘Cum iratus fueris,
to-have rejoicing we-might-recognize when angry you-shall-have-been
misericordiae recordaberis’, et apostolum: ‘Fidelis Deus, qui
of-mercy you-will-remember and the-apostle faithful God who
non permittet vos temptari super id quod potestis’. Sed
not will-permit you to-be-tempted above that which you-can but
priusquam incipiam ipsius belli seriem explicare, oportet
before I-begin of-the-very war the-course to-unfold it-behooves
me pauca de pueritia vel adolescentia eiusdem Heinrici
me a-few-things about the-boyhood or adolescence of-the-same Henry

praemittere, ut dum qualem vitam puer vel adolescens
to-put-first that while what-kind-of life the-boy or the-adolescent
agebat, lector agnoverit, minus miretur, quod intestinum
led the-reader shall-have-learned less he-may-wonder that civil
bellum vir factus inceperit. Verum ne hoc opus quilibet
war the-man having-become he-began but lest this work anyone
in manus accipiens statim velit conspuere, placuit michi
into hands taking immediately should-wish to-spit-upon it-pleased me
illud vestri nominis praenotatione munire, quatenus dum
it of-your name by-the-prefixing to-fortify so-that while
vestrum nomen pagina prima demonstrat, sequens opus a
your name the-page first shows the-following work from
sputis defendat. Ergo vestra dignitas dignetur illud tanta
spittings it-may-defend therefore your dignity may-deign it with-as-much
alacritate suscipere, quanta a me offertur devotione.
eagerness to-receive as-much-as by me it-is-offered devotion

Saxonicum bellum incipit

HENRY'S BOYHOOD AND ADALBERT OF BREMEN

Henry IV succeeds his father as a boy of five under the care of his mother Agnes, until Anno of Cologne takes him from her. Grown to youth, he takes the broad road of vice and casts off his tutor's authority. Adalbert of Bremen, so proud that he claims Peter's power or more, bids a sick abbess die within fifteen days and is confounded when she recovers. He flatters the king and teaches him to do whatever pleases him.

Postquam Heinricus imperator ab hoc saeculo felici
after Henry the-emperor from this world by-a-happy
morte migravit, filius eius Heinricus quartus, infeliciter
death departed son his Henry the-fourth unhappily
in hoc saeculo relictus vitae, regnum patris electione
in this world left to-life the-kingdom of-(his)-father by-election
communi suscepit. Quod quia adhuc decenter, utpote
common received which because still fittingly as-being
puerulus quinquennis, gubernare non potuit, ipsum cum
a-little-boy of-five-years to-govern not he-could him with
regni cura curandum cunctorum iussu principum
of-the-kingdom the-care to-be-cared-for of-all by-the-command of-the-princes
mater ipsius Agnes venerabilis imperatrix accepit. Sed cum
mother his Agnes venerable empress received but when
procedente temporis cursu puer aetate quidem, sed non
advancing of-time the-course the-boy in-age indeed but not
sapientia vel apud Deum vel apud homines proficeret,
in-wisdom either with God or with men advanced
matrisque monita regio fastu tumidus iam minus
and-of-his-mother the-admonitions with-royal pride swollen now less
audiret, Anno, Coloniensis praesul venerandus, eum violenter
heeded Anno of-Cologne prelate venerable him violently

matri eripuit eumque cum omni diligentia, sicut decebat
from-his-mother snatched and-him with all diligence as befitted
imperatoriam prolem, non tam regi quam regno
imperial offspring not so-much for-the-king as for-the-kingdom
prospiciens, nutrire curavit. Non enim ignorabat, quod rex
providing to-rear took-care not for he-was-ignorant that a-king
insipiens perdet populum suum, et civitates habitabuntur
foolish will-destroy people his and cities will-be-inhabited
per sensum prudentium, nec nesciebat etiam, quod sicut
through the-sense of-the-prudent nor was-he-unaware also that as
aliquos humili stirpe procreatos virtutes declarant, sic a
some of-humble stock begotten virtues make-illustrious so from
magnis natos parentibus, si doctrina bonique defecere mores,
great born parents if teaching and-good have-failed morals
culpae dedecorant. Verum postquam ille, puerili simplicitate
faults disgrace but after he boyish simplicity
transcursa, adolescentiam, quae communis est omnium
passed-through adolescence which common is of-all
campus flagitiorum, ingressus ad bivium Samiae litterae
the-field of-crimes having-entered to the-fork of-the-Samian letter
pervenit, derelicta sublimi semitae dexterioris angustia,
came having-been-abandoned the-lofty of-the-path more-right narrowness
declivem plateae sinistrae latitudinem, qua incederet elegit,
the-sloping of-the-street left breadth by-which he-might-go chose
calleque virtutum penitus abdicato, totis viribus post
and-the-path of-virtues utterly having-been-renounced with-all strength after
concupiscentias suas ire disposuit. Quod ut liberius facere
desires his to-go he-resolved which that more-freely to-do
potuisset — non enim sub illo magistro sibi licebat,
he-might-be-able not for under that master to-him it-was-allowed
quicquid libuit—, prius magisterii illius auctoritatem a
whatever pleased first of-the-teaching that the-authority from

se penitus excussit, et qui ad regnum gubernandum
himself utterly he-shook-off and who for the-kingdom to-be-governed
fuisset electus, iam se ab aliquo gubernari est dedignatus.
had-been chosen now himself by anyone to-be-governed has disdained
Igitur rex ab episcopo manumissus, cum sui iuris esse
therefore the-king by the-bishop set-free when of-his-own right to-be
coepisset, tunc patefecit quin viam vitae sectari decrevisset.
he-had-begun then he-revealed what way of-life to-follow he-had-decided
Vepres enim libidinum, quae in hac aetate etiam eos fatigant,
the-briars for of-lusts which in this age even those weary
qui eas in se frequentibus ieiuniis arefaciunt et assiduis
who them in themselves by-frequent fasts dry-up and by-constant
orationibus eradicant, eo fructuosius in eo germinabant,
prayers root-out the more-fruitfully in him sprouted
quo eas nec ipse, utpote igne primae iuventutis
the-more them neither he-himself as-being with-the-fire of-first youth
ardescens et regni luxus deliciis affluens, ab agro
burning and of-the-kingdom of-luxury with-the-delights abounding from the-field
sui cordis evellebat, nec eas aliquis ab eo, rege videlicet
of-his heart plucked nor them anyone from him the-king namely
monitores aspernante, exstirpare ferro correptionis audebat.
admonishers spurning to-root-out with-the-iron of-reproof dared
Erat eodem tempore Bremensis praesul Adalbertus, sic
there-was at-the-same time of-Bremen prelate Adalbert so
typho superbiae turgidus, ut nec in saeculari nobilitate
with-the-vapor of-pride swollen that neither in secular nobility
nec in sancta conversatione quemquam putaret sibi aequalem.
nor in holy way-of-life anyone he-thought to-himself equal
Ipse cum in aliqua summa festivitate publicam missam rege
he-himself when on some highest feast public mass the-king
praesente celebraret, et populo verbum Dei dicturus
being-present he-was-celebrating and to-the-people the-word of-God about-to-speak

ex more locum altiorem ascenderet, inter cetera quasi
according-to custom a-place higher was-ascending among other-things as-if
bonos et nobiles in hac terra conquerens defecisse, se
the-good and noble in this land complaining to-have-failed himself
solum et regem, se scilicet anteponens regi, dixit de
alone and the-king himself namely setting-before the-king he-said of
nobilitate remansisse, — cum duo fratres ipsius iisdem
nobility to-have-remained although two brothers his of-the-same
parentibus nati starent praesentes — et quamvis apostolorum
parents born stood present and although of-the-apostles
principis, fratris sui Petri nomen non haberet, se tamen
of-the-prince brother his Peter the-name not he-had himself nevertheless
eandem quam Petrus habere potestatem, vel etiam maiorem,
the-same which Peter to-have power or even greater
quia dominum suum non ut Petrus unquam negasset.
because lord his not as Peter ever he-had-denied
Ipse cuidam in suo episcopatu abbatissae, quae nescio
he-himself to-a-certain in his bishopric abbess who I-know-not
quid in eum peccaverat, praecepit per obedientiam, ut intra
what against him had-sinned commanded by obedience that within
dies quindecim hanc praesentem relinqueret vitam. Et quia
days fifteen this present she-should-leave life and because
ipsa tunc aegrotabat, ille vanus suum in ea praeceptum
she-herself then was-sick he vain his in her command
impleri posse sperabat, et si casu moreretur, mortuam
to-be-fulfilled to-be-able hoped and if by-chance she-should-die dead
suo iussu volebat ut crederetur. Die vero 15. illa iam
by-his command he-wished that she-be-believed on-the-day but fifteenth she now
sanitate recuperata, misit episcopo legatum nescio pro qua
with-health recovered sent to-the-bishop a-messenger I-know-not for what
causa. Quem ut ille de longe adventantem vidit, sibi
cause whom when he from afar approaching saw beside-him

assidentibus laetabundus dixit: 'Numquid mea potestas minor
to-those-sitting rejoicing he-said surely-not my power less
in ista, quam fratris mei Petri fuit in Saphira? Ecce ista
on her than of-brother my Peter was on Sapphira behold she
misera est mortua, auctoritate iubente mea!' Sed postquam,
wretched is dead by-authority commanding my but after
nuntio propius accedente, vivere eam et ab infirmitate
the-messenger nearer approaching to-live her and from sickness
convaluisse cognovit, a superbia sua valde confusus obticuit.
to-have-recovered he-learned by pride his greatly confounded he-fell-silent
Aliquando cum, sicut solebat, in curia regis esset, et
once when as he-was-wont at the-court of-the-king he-was and
mensam regis cottidie delicatioribus quam ipse rex
the-table of-the-king daily with-more-delicate than he-himself the-king
epulis oneraret, quadam die cunctis ad cibum pertinentibus
dishes was-loading on-a-certain day all-things to food pertaining
prae nimio luxu consumptis, dapifer eius nichil habebat,
because-of excessive luxury having-been-consumed steward his nothing had
quod tum ex consuetudine sua venustum ipsique
which then according-to custom his elegant and-for-the-very
regi comedendum mensae regis imponeret; sed nec erat
king to-be-eaten on-the-table of-the-king he-might-place but neither was-there
pretium quo cibum emeret pretiosum, quia in similem
money with-which food he-might-buy costly because to similar
usum totum consumpserat argentum. Quod cum episcopus
use all he-had-consumed the-silver which since the-bishop
non ignoraret, die illa latitabat, ne eum dapifer invenire
not was-ignorant on-day that he-hid-himself lest him the-steward to-find
potuisset, volens ut ille per suam industriam quolibet modo
might-be-able wishing that he by his-own industry in-whatever way
perquireret, quod ad mensam sibi decenter apponeret. Sed
should-search-out what at the-table for-him fittingly he-might-set but

ille postquam dominum suum diu quaesitum tandem in
he after lord his long sought at-last in
capella quadam, quo confugerat, esse cognovit, ad hostium
chapel a-certain whither he-had-fled to-be learned at the-door
capellae confidentius pulsans, se intromitti postulavit. Cuius
of-the-chapel rather-boldly knocking himself to-be-let-in demanded whose
vocem ut episcopus agnovit, subito se in terram quasi
voice when the-bishop recognized suddenly himself on the-ground as-if
in orationem prostravit. Ille ingressus, ut eum iacentem
into prayer he-prostrated he having-entered when him lying
conspexit, et eum nec tussi nec screatu erigere potuit,
he-beheld and him neither by-coughing nor by-hawking to-rouse was-able
tandem sese iuxta episcopum velut simul oraturus extendit,
at-last himself beside the-bishop as-if together about-to-pray stretched-out
et ei in auriculam loquens: 'Orate', dixit, 'ut vobis
and to-him into the-ear speaking pray he-said that to-you
hodie sit quod manducetis; quia nondum quicquam, quod
today there-be what you-may-eat because not-yet anything which
honeste super mensam vestram ponatur, habetis'. Episcopus
honorably upon table your may-be-placed you-have the-bishop
velut ab extasi repente expergefactus: 'Quid', ait, 'stultissime,
as-if from a-trance suddenly awakened what he-says most-foolish-man
fecisti, qui me a colloquio Dei temerarius abstulisti?
have-you-done who me from converse with-God rashly have-taken-away
Si, quod frater Transmandus videre meruit, tu vidisses,
if what brother Transmund to-see deserved you had-seen
numquam michi posito in orationibus appropinquasses'. Ille
never to-me placed in prayers you-would-have-approached he
autem in praesens aderat, et quia talia videbat episcopo
moreover at-the present was-present and because such-things he-saw to-the-bishop

placere, angelos cum eo loquentes in oratione se iam
to-be-pleasing angels with him speaking in prayer himself already
dudum dixerat vidisse. Erat autem ipse pictor ab Italia.
long-since had-said to-have-seen was moreover he-himself a-painter from Italy
Hic igitur episcopus ubi regem velut infrenem equum per
this therefore bishop when the-king like an-unbridled horse through
abrupta flagitiorum ruere vidit, eius se lateri familiariter
the-steeps of-crimes to-rush saw his himself to-the-side familiarly
adiungere quaesivit; non ut vitiorum spinas, quae fuerant
to-join sought not that of-vices the-thorns which had
ortae, manu severae auctoritatis radicitus erueret, et
sprung-up with-the-hand of-stern authority by-the-roots he-might-tear-out and
virtutum semina episcopali praedicatione plantaret, sed ut
of-virtues the-seeds with-episcopal preaching might-plant but that
germina vitiorum adulationis aqua rigaret, et si quae
the-shoots of-vices of-flattery with-the-water he-might-water and if any
virtutum fruges emergerent, amaritudine perversi dogmatis
of-virtues crops should-emerge with-the-bitterness of-perverse teaching
enecaret. Neque enim ut ante dum perpetratis facinoribus
he-might-kill nor for that before while from-committed crimes
caveret, cum Tobia dicebat: ‘Attende tibi ab omni
he-might-beware with Tobias he-said attend to-yourself from all
fornicatione, et omni tempore benedic Deum, et pete
fornication and at-every time bless God and ask
ab eo, ut vias tuas dirigat’; nec ut perpetrata lacrimis
from him that ways your he-may-direct nor that things-committed with-tears
poenitentiae lavaret, cum Nathan sub velamento parabolae
of-penitence he-might-wash with Nathan under the-veil of-a-parable
ferrum increpationis portavit, quo ulcere mentis repente
the-iron of-rebuke he-carried by-which the-ulcer of-the-mind suddenly
percusso conscientiae virus efflueret; sed velut apostolicum
struck of-conscience the-poison might-flow-out but as-if apostolic

dabat ei praeceptum: ‘Fac omnia quae placent animae tuae;
he-gave to-him a-precept do all-things which please soul your
hoc solum observans, ut in die tuae mortis in recta fide
this only observing that on the-day of-your death in right faith
inveniaris’; cum scriptura dicat: ‘Post concupiscentias tuas
you-may-be-found although scripture says after desires your
non eas’, et rursum: ‘Non semines mala in sulcis iniustitiae,
not go and again not sow evils in the-furrows of-injustice
et non metes ea in septuplum’. Ille vero ita docebat,
and not you-will-reap them into a-sevenfold(-crop) he but so taught
quasi sit in hominis potestate, in una hora mutare vitam
as-if it-be in of-man the-power in one hour to-change life
suam, cum proverbium sit: ‘Adolescens iuxta viam suam
his although the-proverb is a-young-man according-to way his
etiam cum senuerit, non recedet ab ea’, et: ‘Odorem
even when he-shall-have-grown-old not will-depart from it and the-odor
quem semel imbiberit recens testa, diu servabit’. Hac igitur
which once shall-have-imbibed new jar long will-keep by-this therefore
episcopi non episcopali doctrina rex in nequitia confortatus,
of-the-bishop not episcopal teaching the-king in wickedness strengthened
ivit per libidinum praecipitia, sicut equus et mulus quibus
went through of-lusts the-precipices like horse and mule in-whom
non est intellectus; et qui multorum rex erat populorum,
not is understanding and who of-many king was peoples
thronum posuit in se libidini, cunctorum reginae vitiorum.
throne set in himself to-lust of-all to-the-queen of-vices

Henry takes other men's wives and daughters by force. Hating the queen he married unwillingly, he sets a courtier to seduce her, meaning to put her away or kill her, but when he bursts in, she beats him with stools and staves. He gives women he has dishonored to his servants, has his own sister violated, and kills counselors for a word against his will. Conrad, lured from a church, is murdered for no known cause, and the king mourns him with feigned tears.

Binas vel ternas simul concubinas habebat; nec his
two or three at-once concubines he-had nor with-these
contentus, cuiuscumque filiam vel uxorem iuvenem et
content of-whomever the-daughter or wife young and
formosam audierat, si seduci non poterat, sibi violenter
beautiful he-had-heard if to-be-seduced not she-could to-himself violently
adduci praecipiebat. Aliquando etiam ipse uno sive duobus
to-be-brought he-ordered sometimes even he-himself by-one or two
comitatus, ubi tales esse cognoverat, in nocte pergebat; et
accompanied where such to-be he-had-learned by night went and
aliquando voti sui mali compos efficitur, aliquando vero vix
sometimes of-wish his evil possessed is-made sometimes but hardly
effugiebat, ne a parentibus amatae sive marito occideretur.
escaped lest by the-parents of-the-beloved or by-the-husband he-should-be-killed
Uxorem suam, quam nobilem et pulcram suasionibus
wife his whom noble and beautiful by-the-persuasions
principum invitus duxerat, sic exosam habebat, ut post
of-the-princes unwilling he-had-married so hateful he-held that after
nuptias celebratas eam sponte sua numquam videret, quia et
the-wedding celebrated her of-will his-own never he-saw because also
ipsas nuptias non sponte sua celebraverat. Ergo multis modis
the-very wedding not of-will his-own he-had-celebrated therefore in-many ways

eam a se separare quaerebat, ut tunc quasi licenter illicita
her from himself to-separate he-sought that then as-if licitly illicit-things
faceret, cum hoc, quod licebat, coniugium non haberet.
he-might-do when that which was-licit wedlock not he-should-have
Denique cuidam de suis familiaribus, ut peteret reginae
finally to-a-certain of his intimates that he-should-seek of-the-queen
concubitum praecepit, magnumque ei praemium, si
the-bed he-ordered and-great to-him a-reward if
potiretur eo, promisit, quod inde illam non negaturam
he-should-obtain it he-promised because thence her not about-to-refuse
sperabat, quia iuvencula virum experta, iam quasi deserta
he-hoped because a-young-girl a-husband having-known now as-if deserted
vivebat. Regina vero sub femineo corpore cor habens virile,
lived the-queen but under a-womanly body a-heart having manly
statim de quo fonte consilium hoc emanaret intellexit. Et
at-once from what source counsel this flowed understood and
primo quidem velut indignata negavit; sed sicut ille pertinaciter
at-first indeed as-if indignant refused but as he persistently
sicut praedoctus erat instaret, quod rogabatur ore
as instructed he-had-been pressed what was-asked by-mouth
tantum promisit. Ille gratulabundus rem regi nuntiat,
only she-promised he rejoicing the-matter to-the-king announces
et horam qua perficienda esset indicat. Rex vero laetus
and the-hour at-which to-be-done it-was indicates the-king but glad
ad cubiculum reginae simul cum adultero pergit, ut dum
to the-chamber of-the-queen together with the-adulterer goes that while
eos pariter commisceri ipse videret, eam a suo coniugio
them together to-be-joined he-himself should-see her from his wedlock
legaliter abiceret, vel etiam, quod magis volebat, occideret.
lawfully he-might-cast-off or even what more he-wished might-kill
Sed cum adulter ad hostium reginae pulsaret, et huic illa
but when the-adulterer at the-door of-the-queen knocked and to-him she

velociter aperiret, rex timens ne illo prius intromisso
quickly should-open the-king fearing lest with-him first let-in
ipse excluderetur, ostium concitus irrupit. Quem regina
he-himself be-shut-out the-door in-haste burst-in whom the-queen
agnoscens, adultero foris relicto ianuam citissime clausit, et
recognizing the-adulterer outside left the-door most-quickly shut and
suis virginibus convocatis eum scamnis et baculis, quae
her maidens having-been-called-together him with-stools and with-staves which
arma ad hoc collegerat, in tantum verberavit, ut eum
as-weapons for this she-had-collected to-such-a degree beat that him
semianimem relinqueret: 'Fili meretricis', inquiens, 'unde tibi
half-dead she-left son of-a-harlot saying whence to-you
haec audacia, ut reginae, quae fortissimum habet maritum,
this boldness that of-the-queen who a-most-mighty has husband
sperares adulteria?' Ille clamat se esse Heinricum,
you-should-hope-for adulteries he cries himself to-be Henry
se esse ipsius maritum, se voluisse legitimum eius
himself to-be her-own husband himself to-have-wished-for lawful her
concubitum. Illa reclamat, hunc non esse maritum qui furtivum
bed she cries-back this-man not to-be husband who stealthy
quaesisset adulterium; si maritus esset, cur non aperte ad suum
had-sought adultery if husband he-were why not openly to his-own
thorum accederet? Itaque paene usque ad mortem percussum
couch he-would-come and-so almost all-the-way to death beaten
de cubiculo eiecit, ostioque clauso lectum suum
from the-chamber she-threw-out and-the-door having-been-shut bed her
petivit. Ille quid sibi accidisset, nulli ausus est confiteri; sed
sought he what to-him had-happened to-no-one dared has to-confess but
aegritudinem aliam simulans, integrum fere mensem iacuit in
sickness other feigning whole nearly a-month he-lay in
suo cubili. Illa enim non capiti, non ventri pepercerat, sed totum
his bed she for not the-head not the-belly had-spared but whole

corpus integra cute contuderat. Qui postquam convaluit,
the-body with-unbroken skin had-bruised who after he-recovered
quamvis acriter correptus, antiqua flagitia sua non deseruit.
although sharply chastised old crimes his not he-abandoned
Si qua coram eo querelam de qualibet iniuria fecisset, et
if any-woman before him complaint about any-whatever injury had-made and
ab eius regia potestate sibi iustitiam fieri postulasset, si
from his royal power to-herself justice to-be-done had-demanded if
illius insaniae aetas eius et forma placebat, pro iustitia quam
his to-the-madness age her and beauty pleased for the-justice which
petebat, iniustitiam multiplicem reportabat. Nam postquam
she-sought injustice manifold she-carried-back for after
ipse in ea quamdiu placuit libidinem suam implevit, alicui
he-himself on her as-long-as it-pleased lust his had-satisfied to-someone
de famulis suis eam velut uxorem dedit. Ita nobiles in hac terra
of servants his her as wife he-gave thus noble in this land
mulieres, ipse prius eis turpiter abusus, servili coniugio
women he-himself first them shamefully having-abused by-servile marriage
turpius dehonestavit. Haec omnia vidit ille falsus et
more-shamefully dishonored these all saw that false and
fallens episcopus Adalbertus; vidit, neque prohibuit; immo sua
deceiving bishop Adalbert he-saw nor forbade nay by-his
doctrina eum, quo sine timore vel pudore talia faceret,
teaching him so-that without fear or shame such-things he-might-do
velut adhortando confortavit. Stultum namque dixit esse,
as-if by-exhorting he-strengthened foolish for he-said to-be(-it)
si non in omnibus satisfaceret suae desideriis adolescentiae.
if not in all-things he-should-satisfy of-his the-desires youth
Multa et magna in hoc genere eius flagitia sponte praetereo,
many and great in this kind his crimes willingly I-pass-over
quia ad alia alterius generis ipsius scelera festino; hoc
because to other of-another kind his wickednesses I-hasten this

tantum hic ultimum locum teneat, quod in eo iustus iudex
only here the-last place may-hold which in him the-just judge
inultum non relinquat, ignominia videlicet quam sorori suae
unavenged not may-leave the-disgrace namely which to-sister his
fecit, quod eam manibus suis depressam tenuit, donec alius
he-did that her with-hands his pressed-down he-held until another
ex ipsius iussu coactus fratre praesente cum ea concubuit;
by his command compelled the-brother being-present with her lay
cui non profuit, quod imperatoris filia, quod ipsius ex
to-whom not it-availed that of-the-emperor daughter that his by
utroque parente soror unica, quod sacro capitis velamine
both parent sister only that by-the-sacred of-the-head veil
Christo fuerat desponsata.
to-Christ she-had-been betrothed
Sed quia nefanda stupra nefandiora generare solent
but because unspeakable debaucheries more-unspeakable to-beget are-wont
homicidia, sicut ille non unam Bethsabee libidinosus stupravit,
murders as he not one Bathsheba lustful defiled
ita non unum Uriam crudelis interfecit. Tot enim in
so not one Uriah cruel killed so-many for in
homicidiis inmania perpetravit facinora, ut dubium sit, quae
murders monstrous he-perpetrated crimes that doubtful it-is which
maior sit eius infamia, libidinis incestae an crudelitatis
greater be his infamy of-lust incestuous or of-cruelty
inmensae. Omnibus erat horribiliter crudelis, sed nullis ita ut
immense to-all he-was horribly cruel but to-none so as
familiarissimis suis. Qui omnium particeps erat secretorum
to-most-intimate his-own who of-all a-sharer was of-the-secrets
eius, et conscius vel adiutor flagitiorum sive facinorum,
his and privy or helper of-debaucheries or of-crimes
dum securus sui de aliorum morte tractanti favebat,
while secure of-himself about of-others the-death to-him-planning he-assented

coactus est mortem pati, quam non timebat. Et hoc pro
compelled was death to-suffer which not he-feared and this for
qua culpa? Quia unum contra eius voluntatem dixit verbum,
what fault because one against his will he-said word
vel tacens, aliquod eius consilium sibi non placere,
or keeping-silent some his counsel to-himself not to-please
gestu quolibet ostendit. Multos namque consiliarios habebat,
by-gesture any showed many for counselors he-had
sed nullus ei dare consilium audebat, nisi quod ipsi
but none to-him to-give counsel dared except what to-him-himself
placeret. Si quis vel inscius aliquid quod nollet ei
might-please if anyone even unknowing anything which he-did-not-wish him
consulebat, delictum quod ignoranter egerat, sui
advised the-offense which ignorantly he-had-committed of-his-own
sanguinis effusione luebat. Nec alicui suam demonstrabat
blood by-the-shedding he-atoned nor to-anyone his he-showed
iram, donec incauto faceret auferri vitam.
anger until from-the-unwary he-caused to-be-taken life
Quidam de secretariis suis nomine Conradus, — iuvenis
a-certain of secretaries his by-name Conrad a-young-man
nobilitate et moribus insignis, si hoc solum ei Deus
in-nobility and in-character distinguished if this only to-him God
dedisset, ut consiliarius regis numquam fuisset — hic
had-granted that counselor of-the-king never he-had-been this-man
erat quadam die Goslariae, certus se tam bene gratiam
was on-a-certain day at-Goslar sure himself so well the-favor
regis habere, sicut tunc cum eam habebat optime. Rex
of-the-king to-have as then when it he-had best the-king
autem erat in Hertesburg castello, quo praeter eos, qui
moreover was at Harzburg the-castle whither besides those who
facinorum ipsius erant conscii et fautores, nullus nisi
of-the-crimes his were privy and abettors no-one unless

nomine vocatus ascendebat. Mittit ergo rex Goslariam,
by-name called went-up sends therefore the-king to-Goslar
iubens ut Conradus ad se citissime veniat, et nullum
ordering that Conrad to himself most-quickly should-come and no-one
praeter armigerum suum, qui se comitetur assumat. Ille
besides squire his who him should-accompany should-take he
se putans ad aliquod consilium, cui nulli praeter se
himself thinking to some council at-which to-no-one besides himself
liceret adesse, vocari, ut fidem suam maiorem
it-would-be-allowed to-be-present to-be-summoned that the-faith his greater
ostenderet, etiam plus quam iussus fuisset fecit, et ipse
he-might-show even more than ordered he-had-been did and he-himself
suus armiger factus, cunctis incomitatus equitavit. Ergo
his-own squire having-become by-all unaccompanied rode therefore
veniens in silvam vidit insidias, nec credidit eas sibi
coming into a-forest he-saw an-ambush nor believed it for-himself
paratas; tamen quia, utpote solus, tantam multitudinem
prepared yet because as-being alone so-great a-multitude
timuit, ecclesiam quae prope erat celeriter petivit. Burchardus
he-feared the-church which near was quickly sought Burchard
Misnensis praefectus, huius latrocinii ductor nequissimus, ad
of-Meissen prefect of-this robbery leader most-wicked to
ecclesiam sequitur, eique, si velit egredi, quod nichil
the-church follows and-to-him if he-wish to-come-out that nothing
mali patiatur in sua fide pollicetur. Ille quamvis ei
of-evil he-will-suffer on his faith promises he although in-him
nullam fidem haberet, tamen sciens quod si sponte
no trust he-had yet knowing that if of-his-own-accord
non exiret, ecclesiae non parcerent, exivit eiusque se
not he-came-out the-church not they-would-spare came-out and-his himself
fidei commendavit. Quem ducentes in solitudinem, sicut
to-the-faith committed whom leading into a-wilderness as

erant iussi, crudeliter interfecerunt; et nec in ipsa
they-had-been ordered cruelly they-killed and not in the-very
morte ei quare moreretur indicaverunt. Nec unquam
death to-him why he-was-dying they-indicated nor ever
vere cognovit aliquis, quare fuisset occisus, nisi quidam
truly learned anyone why he-had-been slain except some
mussitabant, quod illi rex imponeret, quia cum quadam
muttered that on-him the-king laid(-it) because with a-certain
concubina sua iacuisset. Sed rex, ut suspicionem mortis
concubine his he-had-lain but the-king that the-suspicion of-the-death
eius a se tolleret, auctores eiusdem mortis, quos
his from himself he-might-remove the-authors of-the-same death whom
latitare ad horam iusserat, persequi ab omnibus amicis suis
to-hide for an-hour he-had-ordered to-be-pursued by all friends his
imperat; et illum sepeliri in loco fecit honorabili, ipse
commands and him to-be-buried in a-place made honorable he-himself
eius sepulturae tristis interfuit, et ut ad omnia simulanda
his at-the-burial sad was-present and as for all-things to-be-feigned
doctus erat, non parum lacrimarum fudit. Sed nulli, quin
taught he-had-been not little of-tears he-shed but to-none that-not
esset, sicut erat, praecepto regis occisus, credibile fuit.
he-had-been as he-was by-the-command of-the-king slain believable was(-it)

A courtier who withdraws from Henry's court for his soul's sake is sent on an embassy to Russia; a Slav shows him a sealed letter asking the Russian king to keep him from ever returning, and he burns it and returns. Henry asks another counselor for his bride and, refused, summons him at midnight to swords at the chamber door, which a triple cuirass turns. He sells bishoprics to the highest bidder, Bamberg to an ignorant dealer, whom he deposes in turn.

Fama fuit, quod quendam de familiaribus adolescentem
the-report was that a-certain of (his)-intimates young-man
nobilissimum sua manu, dum quasi iocaretur, interfecerit;
most-noble by-his-own hand while as-if he-was-jesting he-had-killed
et eo furtim sepulto, in crastino quasi poenitens ad suum
and him secretly buried on the-morrow as-if penitent to his
magistrum Adalbertum episcopum venerit, et ab eo sine
master Adalbert the-bishop he-had-come and from him without
ulla satisfactione indulgentiam perceperit. Sed quia huius
any satisfaction pardon had-received but because of-this
rei veritatem michi non contigit agnoscere, placuit michi
matter the-truth to-me not it-befell to-learn it-pleased me
eam inter ambigua relinquere, quamvis paene omnibus
it among doubtful-things to-leave although almost of-all
versaretur in ore.
it-was-going-round in the-mouth
Novi autem quendam de familiaribus regis, qui aliquando
I-knew moreover a-certain-man of the-intimates of-the-king who once
de curia venit ad fratrem suum, — frater autem ille
from the-court came to brother his the-brother moreover that
episcopus erat — et quasi iactando fratri suo narrabat,
bishop was and as-if by-boasting to-brother his he-related
quod nullus esset in curia, qui magis quam ipse esset
that no-one was in the-court who more than he-himself was

in regis gratia. Quod cum frater eius episcopus libenter
in of-the-king favor which when brother his the-bishop gladly
audiret eumque diligenter ammoneret, ut gratiam regis
heard and-him diligently admonished that the-favor of-the-king
omnibus modis servare quaereret, quia et ipsi honestum
by-all means to-keep he-should-seek because both to-himself honorable
et omnibus suis utile esset: 'Facerem', dixit ille, 'si
and to-all his-own useful it-was I-would-do(-so) said he if
simul cum gratia terreni regis possem tenere gratiam
together with the-favor of-the-earthly king I-could to-hold the-favor
coelestis. Sed veraciter', inquit, 'agnovi, quod si quis
of-the-heavenly(-one) but truly he-said I-have-learned that if anyone
huius regis familiariter habet gratiam, habere non poterit
of-this king familiarly has the-favor to-have not he-will-be-able
aeternam vitam'. Igitur paulatim se sicut prudens a
eternal life therefore little-by-little himself as a-prudent-man from
curia subtrahebat, et iam minus et minus ad secreta
the-court he-withdrew and now less and less to the-secrets
regis accedebat, et nec omnino aberat, nec sicut erat
of-the-king he-approached and neither altogether was-he-absent nor as he-was
solitus frequens aderat. Quem ubi rex minus assiduum
wont frequent he-was-present whom when the-king less assiduous
vidit in suo servitio, causam quare faceret non inquirit, nec
saw in his service the-cause why he-did(-so) not he-inquires nor
ei quicquam malae voluntatis ostendit; sed suo iam volens
to-him anything of-ill will shows but his-own now wishing
parcere ferro, quaerebat eum perdere ense alieno. Itaque,
to-spare sword he-sought him to-destroy with-a-sword another's and-so
pro qua causa ficta vel vera nescio, misit eum ad regem
for what cause feigned or true I-know-not he-sent him to the-king
Rusciae. Quam legationem ille libenter accepit, primum quia
of-Russia which embassy he gladly accepted first because

per hoc quasi probavit, se a gratia regis non abesse,
by this as-if he-proved himself from the-favor of-the-king not to-be-absent
cui secreta non dubitaret ut antea credere; deinde
to-whom secrets not he-would-hesitate as before to-entrust then
quia speravit se legationis huius labore meriturum, ut
because he-hoped himself of-the-embassy this by-the-labor about-to-merit that
legatione prospere peracta reversus, non parvum a rege
the-embassy prosperously completed having-returned not small from the-king
deberet accipere beneficium; nec haec etiam minima fuit
he-should to-receive benefit nor this even least was
causa, quia libenter aberat a curia. Igitur perrexit, nec
cause that gladly he-was-absent from the-court therefore he-set-out nor
adhuc quid de se dispositum fuisset intellexit. Post aliquot
yet what about him arranged had-been understood after some
vero dies, cum vespere declinasset in diversorium,
but days when in-the-evening he-had-turned-aside into an-inn
iubet sibi bonum parari convivium. Cumque iam
he-orders for-himself a-good to-be-prepared feast and-when now
comites eius aliquantum bibissent, exilivit Sclavus quidam,
companions his somewhat had-drunk leaped-up a-Slav certain
vilis persona, et: 'Nescio', dixit, 'quid est quod ego porto,
a-base person and I-know-not he-said what it-is which I carry
quod episcopus Eppo michi dedit, et ut regi, ad
which bishop Eppo to-me gave and that to-the-king to
quem missus vadis, darem praecepit'. Quod cum sibi
whom sent you-go I-should-give ordered which when to-himself
ille monstrari rogaret, protulit Sclavus epistolam regis
he to-be-shown asked brought-out the-Slav a-letter of-the-king
imagine sigillatam. Ille nil moratus sigillum fregit,
with-the-image sealed he not-at-all delaying the-seal broke
clericum suum, quid illae litterae vellent, exponere sibi
the-clerk his what those letters meant to-expound to-himself

praecepit. Clericus legit et exposuit; hic autem sensus erat in
ordered the-clerk read and expounded this moreover the-sense was in
litteris: Scias in hoc te maxime, qualis amicus michi sis,
the-letter know in this you most what-sort-of friend to-me you-are
posse monstrare, si hoc effeceris, ut iste meus nuntius
to-be-able to-show if this you-shall-have-effected that this my messenger
numquam in meum regnum possit remeare; quod utrum
never into my kingdom may-be-able to-return which whether
aeterno carcere vel potius efficias morte, nichil puta differre.
by-eternal prison or rather you-effect by-death nothing think to-differ
Litteris itaque consumptis igni, ipse laetus iter suum
the-letter and-so having-been-consumed by-fire he-himself glad journey his
peregit, legationem prudenter implevit, non parvo munere
completed the-embassy prudently fulfilled not with-small gift
donatus rediit, domino suo regi regalia dona portavit.
presented he-returned to-lord his the-king royal gifts he-carried
De quodam intimo ipsius consiliario, cuius vocabulum sicut
about a-certain intimate his counselor whose name as
aliorum multorum sponte praetereo, rem comperi, quam
of-others many willingly I-pass-over a-matter I-learned which
idcirco hic placuit inseri, quia duo non minima
for-that-reason here it-pleased to-be-inserted because two not least
continet in se regis vitia, quae sunt videlicet crudelitas
it-contains in itself of-the-king vices which are namely cruelty
et luxuria. Hic cum non esset ortus a Saxonia,
and lust this-man although not he-was sprung from Saxony
duxit uxorem natam de Saxonia, virginem tam formosam
took as-wife born from Saxony a-virgin as beautiful
corpore quam et nobilem genere. Rex ipse eam illi a
in-body as also noble by-birth the-king himself her for-him from
parentibus eius impetravit, rex ipse nuptiis interfuit,
parents her obtained the-king himself at-the-wedding was-present

sed dubium, utrum magis pro sponsi honore vel pro
but doubtful whether more for of-the-bridegroom the-honor or for
amore sponsae. Nondum illa desponsatae virginalis pudicitiae
love of-the-bride not-yet she of-a-betrothed of-virginal chastity
pudorem deposuit, cum rex omni pudore deposito,
the-modesty had-laid-aside when the-king all shame having-been-laid-aside
ut eam sibi ad lectum suum mitteret, ipsum sponsum
that her to-him to bed his he-should-send the-very bridegroom
petivit. 'Cum nec ullam rem', dixit ille, 'nec ipsam vitam
asked though not any thing said he not-even itself life
vobis unquam velim negare, haec sola res est, quam nec
to-you ever I-would-wish to-deny this only thing is which neither
vos decet a me petere, nec ego vobis possum concedere'.
you befits from me to-ask nor I to-you can to-grant
Rex magnus dissimulator, dolorem quem in corde magnum
the-king a-great dissembler the-pain which in heart great
habuit, nec vultu nec verbis ostendit. Post non multos
he-had neither by-face nor by-words showed after not many
autem dies, cum ille iam securus nichil sibi timeret,
moreover days when he now secure nothing for-himself feared
rex fere media nocte misit ad eum, praecipiens ut
the-king about the-middle-of the-night sent to him ordering that
solus ad se veniret. Ille quamvis more regis cognito
alone to himself he-should-come he although the-way of-the-king known
certus esset, quod in ipsa nocte mori debuisset, tamen quo
sure he-was that in that night to-die he-was-destined yet whither
iubebatur ivit; sed prius loricam triplicem subtus tunicam
he-was-ordered went but first a-cuirass threefold under his-tunic
induit. Cumque ad vestibulum cubilis regii venisset, ecce
put-on and-when to the-vestibule of-the-chamber royal he-had-come behold
duo gladii ad duo latera eius affixi, in mediis eius visceribus
two swords at two sides his fixed in the-midst-of his entrails

sibi obviarent, nisi eos thoracis fortitudo repulisset. Ille
to-him would-have-met unless them of-the-breastplate the-strength had-repelled he
tamen ad regem pervenit, et ei qualiter ante cubile
nevertheless to the-king came-through and to-him how before the-chamber
eius susceptus esset indicavit. Cui rex praecepit, ut
his received he-had-been indicated to-whom the-king ordered that
si deinceps vivere vellet, hoc ab eo nullus unquam sciret.
if henceforth to-live he-wished this from him no-one ever should-know
Omnibus his malis hoc malum superaddidit, quod ceteris
to-all these evils this evil he-added that to-the-other
omnibus malis, et antiquis firmamentum quo vigerent,
all evils both old a-support by-which they-might-thrive
et novis quo surgerent initium dedit. Episcopos enim
and to-new by-which they-might-rise a-beginning gave bishops for
non pro qualitate meritorum secundum canonum decreta
not according-to the-quality of-merits according-to of-the-canons the-decrees
constituit, sed si quis maiorem pecuniam dedit, vel ipse
he-appointed but if anyone greater money gave or he-himself
maior eius flagitiorum adulator extitit, hic dignior quolibet
greater of-his crimes flatterer proved this-man worthier of-any
episcopatu fuit. Cumque alicui sic episcopatum dedisset,
bishopric was and-when to-someone thus a-bishopric he-had-given
si ei alius plus daret vel eius magis facinora laudaret,
if to-him another more should-give or his more crimes should-praise
illum priorem quasi symoniacum fecit deponi, et istum
him the-former as a-simoniac he-caused to-be-deposed and this-one
secundum quasi sanctum in eodem loco consecrari. Unde
the-second as a-saint in the-same place to-be-consecrated whence
contigit ut multae civitates in illis temporibus duos episcopos
it-happened that many cities in those times two bishops
simul haberent, quorum neuter episcopi vocabulo dignus esset.
at-once had of-whom neither of-bishop the-name worthy was

Babenbergensem episcopatum, tam rebus exterius divitem
the-Bamberg bishopric as-much in-goods outwardly rich
quam sapientibus personis intus venerabilem, cuidam mangoni
as in-wise persons within venerable to-a-certain dealer
dedit immo pro inaestimabili pecunia vendidit, qui melius sciebat
he-gave nay for incalculable money sold who better knew
nummos monetae cuiuslibet aestimare, quam textum cuiuslibet
the-coins of-money of-any-kind to-value than the-text of-any
libri, ne dicam intelligere vel exponere, saltem regulariter
book lest I-say to-understand or to-expound at-least correctly
pronuntiare. Qui tum in sacro officio vigiliae pascalis primam
to-pronounce who then in the-sacred office of-the-vigil of-Easter the-first
ex more lectionem coram sapientibus clericis pronuntiavit:
by custom lesson before learned clerics pronounced
'Terra autem erat inanis et vacca!' ipse nimirum, licet
the-earth moreover was void and a-cow he-himself no-doubt although
bipes, vacca bruta et omni probitate vacua! Ipse tamen,
two-footed a-cow brute and of-all goodness void he-himself nevertheless
quamvis nec suo nec ecclesiae, quam ipse quasi regendam
although neither his-own nor of-the-church which he as-if to-be-ruled
acceperat, auro parceret ut gratiam regis obtineret, ipso
had-received the-gold he-spared that the-favor of-the-king he-might-obtain the-very
rege consiliante deponitur, et episcopatus alii datur, non
king counseling(-it) is-deposed and the-bishopric to-another is-given not
qui vita et sapientia episcopatu sit dignior, sed qui
who in-life and wisdom of-the-bishopric might-be worthier but who
regis flagitiorum maior in omnibus fuisset assentator.
of-the-king of-crimes greater in all-things had-been approver

THE CASTLES IN SAXONY

On Adalbert's counsel Henry builds castles on hills, the Harzburg foremost. The Saxons think them a boy's game until the garrisons plunder, enslave free men, and abuse their women; his wrongs to Frederick of the Mount and William of Lotheslovo raise a conspiracy. Siegfried of Mainz urges the bishops of Magdeburg and Halberstadt to bind themselves to Anno of Cologne. Henry undermines the strongest princes: Otto of Bavaria, falsely accused by a hireling, flees and wars beside Magnus, whom the king imprisons after their surrender.

Inter haec omnia iam abeunte adolescentia, mox ut
among these all-things now passing-away adolescence as-soon as
Adalbertum Bremensem episcopum nactus est consiliarium,
Adalbert of-Bremen bishop obtained he-has as-counselor
ipsius suasionibus coepit in desertis locis altos et natura
his by-persuasions he-began in deserted places high and by-nature
munitos montes quaerere, et in his huiusmodi castella
fortified mountains to-seek and on these of-this-kind castles
fabricare, quae si in locis competentibus starent, ingens
to-build which if in places suitable they-stood huge
regno firmamentum simul et ornamentum forent.
for-the-kingdom a-support at-once and an-ornament they-would-be
Quorum primum et maximum Hartesburg appellavit; quod
of-which the-first and greatest Harzburg he-called which
ita forti muro et turribus et portis exterius munivit, ita
so with-strong wall and with-towers and gates outwardly he-fortified so
regalibus aedificiis intus adornavit, tale monasterium in ipso
with-royal buildings within adorned such a-monastery in it
construxit, tales ornatus in ipso monasterio collocavit, tales
built such ornaments in the-very monastery placed such
et tot clericos illuc undique congregavit, uti aliquot
and so-many clerics thither from-all-sides gathered as some

episcopales locos omni suo apparatu aequiperaret, aliquot
episcopal places in-all its furnishing he-might-equal some
etiam transcenderet. Quicquid ornatus ecclesiastici quemlibet
even he-might-surpass whatever of-adornment ecclesiastical any
episcopum magis decorum videbat habere, sive praecepto sive
bishop more seemly he-saw to-have either by-command or
precibus acceptum suo monasterio studebat conferre. Cetera
by-prayers received to-his monastery he-strove to-bestow the-other
vero castella non tam pulcra quam fortia esse laborabat.
but castles not so beautiful as strong to-be he-labored
Beatus et valde beatus esset, si munitiones easdem contra
blessed and very blessed he-would-be if fortifications the-same against
paganos erexisset. Nam ipsi iam dudum aut omnes
the-pagans he-had-raised for they-themselves now long-since either all
fuissent christiani, aut christianis principibus imperpetuum
would-have-been Christians or to-Christian princes forever
tributarii. Sed haec castellorum diversis in locis constructio
tributary but this of-castles diverse in places the-building
primo nostratibus puerilis ludus videbatur, quia nondum eius
at-first to-ours a-boyish game seemed because not-yet his
intentio mala cognoscebatur. Et non solum ea fieri, nichil
intention evil was-known and not only them to-be-made nothing
adhuc periculi timentes, cum iam possent non prohibebant,
as-yet of-danger fearing when already they-could not they-forbade
verum etiam ex hoc eum fore contra nationes exteras
but even from this him about-to-be against nations foreign
bellicosum quasi divinantes, ad ipsas aedificationes eum vel
warlike as-if divining in the-very buildings him either
opibus vel operibus adiuvabant. Postquam vero praesidia
with-wealth or with-works they-helped after but the-garrisons
in ipsis castellis collocata coeperunt in circuitu sui
in the-very castles placed began in the-circuit of-them

praedationes agere, non suos labores in suos usus
plunderings to-carry-on not their-own labors into their-own uses
comportare, liberos homines ad opus servile compellere,
to-carry free men to work servile to-compel
filias vel uxores alienas ludibrio habere: tunc primum quid
daughters or wives of-others in-mockery to-hold then first what
illa castella portenderent intellexerunt, nec tamen adhuc
those castles portended they-understood nor yet still
resistere vel se defendere praesumpserunt. Tantum illi
to-resist or themselves to-defend they-presumed only those
qui laedebantur, querelas occulte faciebant apud illos, qui
who were-being-harmed complaints secretly made among those who
longius a castellis remoti nichil adhuc mali patiebantur.
farther from the-castles removed nothing yet of-evil were-suffering
Illaesi vero dum laesis auxilium ferre negligebant,
the-unharmed but while to-the-harmed help to-bring neglected
tyrannidi vires in se ipsos tribuebant. Nam ab agricolis
to-tyranny strength against them themselves they-gave for from the-peasants
ad militares, a terrae fructibus ad libertatem adimendam
to the-knights from of-the-land the-fruits to liberty to-be-taken-away
ascendit; et Fridericum de Monte, qui inter liberos homines
he-rose and Frederick of the-Mount who among free men
vel nobiles eximius habebatur, famulum suum esse rex
or nobles eminent was-held servant his to-be the-king
asseruit; Willehalmum quoque, qui propter nimium cultum
asserted William also who on-account-of excessive display
sui rex de Lotheslovo appellabatur, tanta crudelitate
of-himself the-king of Lotheslovo was-called with-such cruelty
persequitur, quia multa ei erant praedia sed non multa
he-persecutes because many to-him were estates but not much
sapientia, ut propter hos duos ab omni Saxonia praecipue
wisdom that on-account-of these two by all Saxony chiefly

facta sit adversus regem coniuratio, quamvis ab ipsis duobus
made was against the-king a-conspiracy although by these two
pessima reddita sit retributio. Nam postquam Saxones omnes
the-worst repaid was return for after the-Saxons all
manifestum iam contra regem bellum coeperunt, illi duo
open now against the-king war began those two
fidei iuratae obliti, primi relicta patria transfugae
of-the-faith sworn forgetful first having-left (their)-fatherland deserters
viles ad hostes defecerunt. Hoc vero postea patebit.
base to the-enemy went-over this but afterward will-be-clear
Gens vero Suevorum audita Saxonum calamitate clam
the-people but of-the-Swabians having-heard-of of-the-Saxons the-calamity secretly
legatos suos ad illos misit et foedus cum eis fecit, ut neuter
envoys its to them sent and a-treaty with them made that neither
populus ad alterius oppressionem regi ferret auxilium.
people for of-the-other the-oppression to-the-king should-bring help
Volebat enim rex etiam Suevos violenter opprimere, et
wished for the-king also the-Swabians violently to-oppress and
ut sibi de praediis suis redderent tributa compellere.
that to-him from estates their they-should-render tributes to-compel
Quod foedus Saxones si fideliter servassent, et ab infamia
which treaty the-Saxons if faithfully they-had-kept both from the-infamy
perfidiae et a magna parte calamitatis liberi fuissent.
of-treachery and from a-great part of-calamity free they-would-have-been
Sigifridus Magontinae sedis archipraesul, Werinhero
Siegfried of-the-Mainz see archbishop to-Werner
Magedaburgensi et Burchardo Halberstatensi episcopis
of-Magdeburg and to-Burchard of-Halberstadt bishops
litteras querimonia plenas misit, quod rex in episcopatu
a-letter with-complaint full sent that the-king in bishopric
suo loca praedationibus faciendis apta elegisset, positisque
his places for-plunderings to-be-made suited had-chosen and-placed

inibi castellis et praesidiis, multa mala rebus suae ecclesiae
there castles and garrisons many evils to-the-goods of-his church
faceret. Rogavit etiam in eisdem litteris, quatenus se
was-doing he-asked also in the-same letter that themselves
cum Annone Coloniensi archiepiscopo fidelissimo foedere
with Anno of-Cologne archbishop by-most-faithful pact
coniungerent; non quod qualibet inimicitia dissilirent, sed
they-should-join not that by-any enmity they-were-sundered but
quia non talis amicitia eos fideliter adunaret, ut uterque
because not such friendship them faithfully united that each
alteri secreta sua credere, sicut vellet, auderet. Hoc
to-the-other secrets his to-entrust as he-might-wish would-dare this
autem omni regno fore necessarium; quia si illi duo, qui
moreover for-all the-kingdom to-be necessary because if those two who
maiores erant in regno, fideliter in unum convenirent,
greater were in the-kingdom faithfully into one should-come-together
in multa securitate totum regnum constituere potuissent.
in much security the-whole kingdom to-establish they-could-have
Hoc autem illos duos episcopos eo facile efficere posse,
this moreover those two bishops so easily to-effect to-be-able
quo alter eorum, scilicet Magedaburgensis, esset frater, alter
since one of-them namely he-of-Magdeburg was brother the-other
vero consobrinus superius nominati Coloniensis archiepiscopi.
but cousin of-the-above named of-Cologne archbishop
Eandem querimoniam fecerunt ad invicem omnes paene
the-same complaint made to each-other all almost
regni Teutonici principes; sed tamen palam nullus
of-the-kingdom Teutonic princes but yet openly no-one
audebat fateri, tanto rex erat omnibus terrori. Sic quamvis
dared to-confess so-great the-king was to-all a-terror thus although
soli Saxones hoc aperte viderentur incipere bellum, tamen non
alone the-Saxons this openly seemed to-begin war yet not

ipsorum solummodo consilio fuit inceptum. Qui cum tot
their only by-the-counsel it-was begun who though so-many
et tantas calamitates et contumelias singuli paterentur, dum
and so-great calamities and insults individually they-suffered while
quisque suum tantummodo vulnus dolebat, et intactus adhuc
each his-own only wound grieved and unhurt still
vulnerato non condolebat, communi malo non resistebant
with-the-wounded not condoled the-common evil not they-resisted
communi consilio. Rex universale damnum disponebat, et
by-common counsel the-king universal ruin was-arranging and
ad hoc quaelibet impedimenta repellebat, et auxilia quibus
for this any obstacles was-repelling and aids by-which
sua mala voluntas impleretur, undecunque quaerebat; illi
his evil will might-be-fulfilled from-wherever was-seeking they
vero putantes speciale malum, contra communem perniciem
but thinking a-particular evil against the-common destruction
nulla defensionis instrumenta parabant. Ille, quo facilius
no of-defense instruments prepared he so-that more-easily
cunctos ut volebat opprimeret, prius illos in quibus eorum
all as he-wished he-might-oppress first those in whom their
virtus maxime stabat, singulos labefactare temptabat.
strength most stood one-by-one to-undermine tried
Ottonem denique, virum prudentem et fortem, qui natus
Otto finally a-man prudent and brave who born
e Saxonia dux erat in Bawaria, omni calliditate deponere
from Saxony duke was in Bavaria with-all cunning to-depose
quaerebat, quia illum cum omnibus Bawariis Saxones
he-sought because him with all the-Bavarians the-Saxons
adiuturum non dubitabat. Ergo quendam nomine Einnonem,
about-to-help not he-doubted therefore a-certain by-name Egino
praeter audaciam nichil virtutis habentem, pretio conduxit
besides boldness nothing of-virtue having for-a-price he-hired

et promissionibus sollicitavit, ut ducem de regis morte
and with-promises solicited that the-duke about of-the-king death
secum tractasse diceret, et hoc se, si negaret, singulari
with-him to-have-treated he-should-say and this himself if he-should-deny in-single
bello probaturum promitteret. Ita certaminis illius constituto
combat about-to-prove he-should-promise thus of-combat that appointed
die, Otto ab amicis suis episcopis et aliis principibus
the-day Otto by friends his bishops and other princes
praemonetur, quod si Goslariam veniret, ubi duellum fieri
is-forewarned that if to-Goslar he-came where the-duel to-take-place
debebat, etiamsi adversarium suum vinceret, tamen inde
was-to even-if adversary his he-should-conquer yet thence
cum vita non rediret. Elegit ergo honore suo potius
with life not he-would-return he-chose therefore of-honor his rather
iniuste privari, quam tale iudicium subire, ubi sciebat
unjustly to-be-deprived than such judgment to-undergo where he-knew
ipsi iustitiae violentiam fieri. Igitur ad sua recessit, et
to-the-very justice violence to-be-done therefore to his-own he-withdrew and
associato sibi Magno, duce Saxoniae, per duos fere annos
having-associated to-himself Magnus duke of-Saxony for two nearly years
cum rege bellum crudele gessit. Deinde consiliis amicorum
with the-king war cruel waged then by-the-counsels of-friends
coacti, cum se regiae traderent potestati, rex
compelled when themselves to-the-royal they-surrendered power the-king
Magnum ducem in carcere suo per integrum biennium tenuit,
Magnus the-duke in prison his for a-whole two-years held
ita ut nullus in hoc tempore sciret, utrum viveret vel ubi esset.
so that no-one in this time knew whether he-lived or where he-was

THE DANISH KING, LÜNEBURG, AND THE PRINCES KEPT WAITING

Henry meets the Danish king secretly at Bardowiek and promises him all the lands bordering his kingdom for his help against the Saxons. He garrisons Lüneburg, but Count Hermann besieges it, and to ransom his seventy starving men Henry must free Magnus, to all Saxony's joy. At Goslar the king keeps the assembled princes waiting all day while he plays at dice, then slips away by another door. That night they meet in a church and fix a day and place to take counsel for their liberty.

Postea legatos ad regem Danorum misit ultra mare, eumque
afterward envoys to the-king of-the-Danes he-sent beyond the-sea and-him
sibi ad Bardanwich rogavit occurrere, quo et ipse
to-himself at Bardowiek asked to-meet whither also he-himself
cum paucis perrexit, cum nulla fama testetur, quod ante
with a-few went though no report testifies that before
eum ullus rex in illas partes pervenerit. Regem illum ibi
him any king into those parts has-come the-king that there
obvium habuit, cum eo secretum colloquium fecit, cui
meeting he-had with him a-secret conference he-held at-which
colloquio praeter episcopum Adalbertum et unum de regiis
conference besides bishop Adalbert and one of the-royal
consiliatoribus nullus interfuit. Ipsum tamen colloquium non
counselors no-one was-present the-very yet conference not
diu latuit, quia ille qui cum episcopo solus aderat, cum
long lay-hid because he who with the-bishop alone was-present since
consilium quod ibi fecerunt prohibere non posset, illud quod
the-counsel which there they-made to-prevent not he-could that which
poterat effecit, quod principes Saxoniae, quorum intererat,
he-could effected that the-princes of-Saxony to-whom it-mattered
ipsum consilium non lateret. Rex enim Danorum regi
the-very counsel not should-lie-hid the-king for of-the-Danes to-king
Heinrico iuravit, ut ei contra omnes hostes suos, et
Henry swore that to-him against all enemies his and

nominatim contra Saxones, quantum posset terra marique
by-name against the-Saxons as-much-as he-could by-land and-by-sea
auxilium ferret; et rex Heinricus illi promisit, ut ei
help he-would-bring and king Henry to-him promised that to-him
cunctas regiones suo regno contiguas in proprium daret.
all regions to-his kingdom adjoining as his-own he-would-give
Igitur illo colloquio finito et Danorum rege reverso,
therefore that conference ended and of-the-Danes the-king returned
rex Heinricus castellum Liuniburg, quod ibi prope erat,
king Henry the-castle Lüneburg which there near was
consideravit; cuius munitione perspecta, in eius cupiditatem
considered whose fortification having-been-viewed into of-it desire
suo more vehementer exarsit, quasi si illud in sua potestate
in-his way vehemently he-flared as if it in his power
teneret, nullus in illis partibus sibi resistere potuisset.
he-held no-one in those parts him to-resist would-have-been-able
Illud autem castellum Magni ducis parentum semper
that moreover castle of-Magnus the-duke of-the-forebears always
fuerat, et ad ipsum suumque patruum Herimannum tunc
had-been and to him-himself and-his uncle Hermann then
hereditario iure pervenerat. Ex paucis ergo quos habebat
by-hereditary right had-come of the-few therefore whom he-had
secum fidelissimos, septuaginta fere dimisit in illo castello,
with-him most-faithful seventy nearly he-left in that castle
qui et ipsum totamque regionem circa compellerent regio
who both it and-the-whole region around should-compel to-the-royal
parere serviliter imperio. Sed his temere ingressis, Herimannus
to-obey slavishly command but these rashly having-entered Hermann
dum rex e finibus suis fuisset egressus expectat, et
until the-king from territories his should-have gone-out waits and
mox ipsum castellum cum multa virtute circumdat. Illi quid
soon the-very castle with much force surrounds they what

facerent? Castellum quidem forte et cunctis nisi soli
were-they-to-do the-castle indeed strong and to-all-things except alone
fami insuperabile, sed praeter paucos panes, quos discedentes
to-hunger unconquerable but besides a-few loaves which departing
monachi reliquerant, nichil quod manducari posset habebat,
the-monks had-left nothing which to-be-eaten could it-had
et fames eos castellum relinquere iubebat, sed obvia ferri
and hunger them the-castle to-leave bade but opposing of-iron
virtus eos exire non sinebat. Paucis autem non erat tutum
the-force them to-go-out not allowed for-few moreover not it-was safe
cum exercitu venire in proelium. Deditionem ergo comiti
with an-army to-come into battle surrender therefore to-count
Herimanno offerebant; sed ille, nisi Magnus dux, filius
Hermann they-offered but he unless Magnus the-duke son
fratris sui, rediret, nullum istorum abiturum dicebat.
of-brother his should-return none of-these about-to-go-away said
Quo comperto rex multas angustias habuit, nec quid sibi
which learned the-king many straits had nor what to-himself
fuisset utile, facile excogitare potuit. Illos obsessos per
would-have-been useful easily to-devise could those besieged by
vim liberare non potuit, quia de Saxonibus, quos offensos
force to-free not he-could because from the-Saxons whom offended
habebat, exercitum congregare non credidit; de gentibus vero
he-held an-army to-gather not he-trusted from peoples but
aliis suae ditioni subiectis eam multitudinem, cui illuc ire
other to-his rule subject that multitude for-which thither to-go
tutum esset, non habuit. Ducem reddere noluit, quia
safe it-would-be not he-had the-duke to-return he-would-not because
dum illum in vinculis tenebat, securus a bello Saxoniae fuit.
while him in chains he-held secure from war of-Saxony he-was
Solus enim timor ne ille occideretur, fecit ut tot iniuriis
alone for the-fear lest he should-be-killed caused that so-many injuries

acceptis bellum non inciperetur. Tot autem fidelissimos
received war not was-begun so-many moreover most-faithful
suos, inter quos etiam erant qui nobiles cognatos habebant
his-own among whom also were-some who noble kinsmen had
et fortes, si perire dimitteret, nullum ultra fidelem sibi
and brave if to-perish he-let none further faithful to-himself
inveniret, et tutum tempus ab eorum propinquis nullum
he-would-find and safe time from their kinsmen none
haberet. Reddidit ergo Magnum ducem, et suorum
he-would-have he-returned therefore Magnus the-duke and of-his-own
fidelium recepit multitudinem. Inde natum proverbium per
faithful received the-multitude thence born a-proverb through
totam Saxoniam divulgatur: quod unus Saxo septuaginta
all Saxony is-spread that one Saxon for-seventy
Suevis ematur, vel septuaginta Suevi uno Saxone redimantur.
Swabians is-bought or seventy Swabians for-one Saxon are-redeemed
De reditu ducis Magni quanta fuissent omni Saxoniae gaudia,
at the-return of-duke Magnus how-great had-been to-all Saxony the-joys
Tulliana non posset explicare facundia: non magis de illo
Tullian not could to-explain eloquence not more about him
gauderent, si eum a morte redivivum accepissent. Quanto
they-would-rejoice if him from death restored-to-life they-had-received the-more
eum se unquam vivum visuros desperaverant, tanto
him themselves ever alive to-see they-had-despaired the-more
eum videntes vivum maiore laetitia tripudiabant; nec solum
him seeing alive with-greater joy they-danced nor only
sui vel cognati vel clientes eius de salute plaudebant, sed
his-own or kinsmen or clients his for (his)-safety applauded but
omnis omnino populus omnipotenti Deo, qui eum mirabiliter
all altogether the-people to-almighty God who him wonderfully
liberavit, laudes unanimiter reddebat. Quem enim patruus suus
freed praises with-one-mind rendered whom for uncle his

inaestimabili praediorum sive pecuniarum pretio redimere
with-an-incalculable of-estates or of-moneys price to-redeem
non valuit, hunc divina pietas eo modo, quem humana
not was-able this-one divine mercy in-that way which human
prudentia numquam posset excogitare, liberavit. Itaque nichil
prudence never could to-devise freed and-so nothing
fere iam sonabat ex ore totius Saxoniae, nisi: 'Deo gratias
almost now sounded from the-mouth of-all Saxony except to-God thanks
de Magni ducis ammirabili liberatione!' Illi qui numquam
for of-Magnus the-duke wondrous liberation those who never
eum viderant, pro eius ereptione non minores, quam si de
him had-seen for his rescue not lesser than if of
eius genere vel familia fuissent, Deo gratias agebant.
his race or household they-had-been to-God thanks gave
Deinde cum principum festivitas apostolorum, Petri videlicet
then when of-the-princes the-feast of-the-apostles Peter namely
et Pauli, propinquaret, praecepit rex, ut universa principum
and Paul was-approaching ordered the-king that the-whole of-the-princes
Saxoniae multitudo Goslariam conveniret, ut si quid de
of-Saxony multitude to-Goslar should-assemble that if anything about
communibus regni negotiis agi dignum emergeret,
the-common of-the-kingdom affairs to-be-treated worthy should-arise
hoc ipse communi principum consilio tractaret. Omnes
this he-himself by-common of-the-princes counsel might-handle all
illuc alacres festinabant, quia calamitatum, quas Saxonia
thither eager hastened because of-the-calamities which Saxony
iam diu tolerabat, aliquem terminum fore sperabant. Igitur
now long had-borne some end to-be they-hoped therefore
festivitate celebriter celebrata, cum dies ad causas agendas
the-feast solemnly celebrated when the-day for causes to-be-pleaded
statuta venisset, episcopi duces comites ceterique ad palatium
appointed had-come bishops dukes counts and-the-others at the-palace

diluculo primo congregantur; ibique sedentes, donec ad se
at-dawn first are-gathered and-there sitting until to them
rex egrediatur vel ad se iubeat eos intrare, nequicquam
the-king should-come-out or to himself should-bid them to-enter in-vain
operiuntur. Nam ille cubilis sui foribus clausis, intus
they-wait for he of-chamber his the-doors having-been-shut within
cum suis parasitis aleis vel ceteris rebus nugatoriis operam
with his parasites to-dice or to-other things trifling attention
dabat, et tot magnos homines ad suam ianuam excubare,
gave and so-many great men at his door to-keep-watch
quasi mancipia vilissima, nichili pendebat. Tota dies illa
like slaves most-vile at-nothing he-valued whole day that
transiit; nec ipse nec aliquis vera portans nuntius ad eos
passed nor he-himself nor any true bearing messenger to them
exivit. Cum iam nox facta fuisset, quidam de parasitis
came-out when now night fallen had a-certain-one of parasites
eius egressus, principibus irrisorie dixit, quamdiu ibi
his having-come-out to-the-princes mockingly said how-long there
vellent expectare, cum rex per aliam ianuam egressus,
they-wished to-wait since the-king by another door having-gone-out
ad urbem suam veloci cursu properaret? Ibi sunt omnes
to city his with-swift course was-hastening there were all
adeo turbati, qui tanto fuerant habiti a regis superbia
so disturbed who in-such had-been held by of-the-king the-pride
contemptui, ut nisi Dedi marchio eorum furorem sua
contempt that unless Dedi the-margrave their fury by-his
prudentia compesceret, eadem hora regi pariter omnes,
prudence had-checked in-the-same hour to-the-king together all
omni proiecto timore, manifeste renuntiarent.
every having-been-cast-off fear openly would-have-renounced(-allegiance)
Illa dies et haec causa bellum primitus incepit; illa dies
that day and this cause the-war first began that day

principium omnium quae sequuntur malorum fuit. Eadem
the-beginning of-all which follow evils was the-same
namque nocte principes omnes parum pransi, cum singulis
for night the-princes all little having-eaten with individuals
quibus optime credebant, in unam ecclesiam, cum omnes
whom best they-trusted into one church when all
ceteri iam dormirent, ex condicto convenerunt; ibique non
the-rest now were-sleeping by agreement came-together and-there not
paucis prius lacrimis effusis, melius sibi fore mortem
few first tears having-been-shed better for-themselves to-be death
quamlibet pati, quam talem vitam in tantis calamitatibus et
any-whatever to-suffer than such life in so-great calamities and
contumeliis vivere dixerunt. Constituto itaque die et loco
insults to-live they-said appointed and-so a-day and place
quo omnes cum omnibus Saxonibus convenirent, et de
at-which all with all the-Saxons should-assemble and about
libertate communi, quam sibi videbant ereptum iri,
liberty common which from-themselves they-saw snatched-away to-be-going
communiter agerent, ita sunt singuli ad sua reversi,
in-common should-treat thus they-have individually to their-own returned
quasi numquam amplius ad regis servitium venturi.
as-if never more to of-the-king the-service about-to-come

The Saxons gather in great numbers at Normeslovo. From a hill Otto, the deposed duke, sets out the castles and the outrages of their garrisons, warns that the king means to make them all slaves of strangers, and argues that his oath bound him only while Henry acted as a king. Each prince then recounts his own wrongs, from Werner's twice-plundered Magdeburg to Otto's lost Bavaria, and all swear to defend their liberty and that of Saxony.

Igitur non longo tempore transacto, magni parvique, sicut
therefore not long time having-passed great and-small as
constitutum fuerat, ad villam quae Normeslovo vocatur,
appointed it-had-been to the-village which Normeslovo is-called
omnes convenerunt; cur autem tam magnus conventus in parvo
all came-together why moreover so great an-assembly in a-small
loco factus fuisset, non omnes agnoverunt. Tunc Otto, qui dux
place made had-been not all knew then Otto who duke
olim fuerat sed adhuc ducis nomen habebat, omni congregata
formerly had-been but still of-duke the-name had all assembled
multitudine collem, a quo loquens ab omnibus audiri
the-multitude a-hill from which speaking by all to-be-heard
posset ascendens, fieri silentium postulavit; quo facto, cum
he-could ascending to-be-made silence he-demanded which done when
omnes arrectis starent auribus, huiusmodi sermonem incepit:
all with-pricked-up stood ears of-this-kind a-speech he-began
'Quare vos, o milites optimi, principes vestri tam frequentes
why you O soldiers excellent princes your so in-numbers
in hunc locum convenire rogassent, licet omnes fere singuli
to this place to-assemble had-asked although all nearly individually
cognovistis, tamen ut nullus vestrum sit, qui se nescium
you-have-learned yet that none of-you may-be who himself ignorant
possit asserere, visum est nobis, ut universi causam pariter
can to-declare seemed-good it-has to-us that all the-cause together

agnoscatis. Calamitates et contumeliae, quas singillatim vobis
you-may-learn the-calamities and insults which one-by-one to-you
omnibus rex noster iam per multa tempora fecit, magnae
all king our now for many times has-done great
sunt et intolerabiles; sed quas adhuc, si Deus omnipotens
are and intolerable but those-which still if God almighty
permittet, facere disponit, multo maiores sunt et graviores.
will-permit to-do he-arranges much greater are and heavier
Castella fortia, sicut vos scitis, in locis natura munitis
castles strong as you know in places by-nature fortified
plurima construxit, ibique suorum fidelium multitudinem non
very-many he-has-built and-there of-his-own faithful a-multitude not
modicam universis armorum generibus instructam collocavit.
moderate with-all of-arms kinds equipped has-placed
Quae castella cum non contra paganos, qui nostram terram
which castles since not against the-pagans who our land
quae sibi confinis est totam vastaverunt, sint fabricata,
which to-them bordering is all have-laid-waste have-been built
sed in medio terrae nostrae, ubi nemo ei unquam
but in the-middle of-land our where no-one on-him ever
bella cogitabat inferre, tanto molimine sint munita, quid
wars thought to-bring with-such effort have-been fortified what
portendant, et ex parte plurimi estis experti, et nisi
they-portend both in part very-many-of-you have experienced and unless
misericordia Dei vestraque virtus prohibuerit, cito omnes
the-mercy of-God and-your valor shall-have-prevented soon all
experiemini. Bona vestra, qui iuxta manetis, vobis invitis
you-will-experience goods your you-who nearby remain you unwilling
in ipsa castella deportantur; filiabus vestris et uxoribus
into the-very castles are-carried-off daughters your and wives
pro sua libidine, quando volunt, abutuntur; vestros servos et
for their lust when they-wish they-abuse your servants and

iumenta, quicquid volunt sibi servire praecipiunt; immo
beasts whatever they-wish to-themselves to-serve they-order nay
et vos ipsos in liberis humeris vestris quaelibet onera, licet
and you yourselves on free shoulders your any burdens though
foeda, portare compellunt. Sed quando ea quae futura
foul to-carry they-compel but when those-things which about-to-be
sunt mente concipio, ista quae nunc toleratis, tolerabilia puto.
are in-mind I-conceive these which now you-bear bearable I-think
Postquam enim sua castella per totam terram nostram
after for his castles through all land our
pro sua voluntate construxerit, et ea militibus armatis et
at his will he-shall-have-built and them with-soldiers armed and
rebus ceteris ad hoc negotium pertinentibus impleverit,
with-things other to this business pertaining shall-have-filled
tunc non amplius iam bona vestra particulatim diripiet; sed
then not more now goods your piecemeal he-will-plunder but
universa quae possidetis vobis simul eripiet, et hominibus
all-things which you-possess from-you at-once he-will-snatch and to-men
advenis vestra bona largiens, vos ipsos, liberos et ingenuos,
strangers your goods bestowing you yourselves free and freeborn
ignotorum hominum servos praecipiet esse. Quae omnia
of-unknown men servants he-will-order to-be which all-things
numquid in vos fieri patiemini, fortissimi viri? Nonne
surely-not on you to-be-done will-you-suffer most-brave men not
emori per virtutem praestat, quam vitam miseram
to-die-outright through valor is-it-better than life wretched
et inhonestam, ubi illorum superbiae ludibrio fueritis,
and dishonorable where of-those to-the-pride a-mockery you-shall-have-been
per dedecus amittere? Servi aere parati iniusta imperia
through disgrace to-lose slaves with-money bought unjust the-commands
dominorum non perferunt, et vos in libertate nati, aequo
of-masters not endure and you in liberty born with-even

animo servitutem tolerabitis? Fortasse quia christiani estis,
mind slavery will-you-bear perhaps because Christians you-are
sacramenta regi facta violare timetis. Optime, sed regi.
the-oaths to-the-king made to-violate you-fear very-well but to-a-king
Dum michi rex erat, et ea quae sunt regis faciebat,
while to-me king he-was and those-things which are of-a-king he-was-doing
fidelitatem quam ei iuravi, integram et impollutam servavi;
the-fealty which to-him I-swore whole and unpolluted I-kept
postquam vero rex esse desivit, cui fidem servare deberem,
after but king to-be he-ceased to-whom faith to-keep I-should
non fuit. Itaque non contra regem, sed contra iniustum
not there-was and-so not against a-king but against the-unjust
meae libertatis ereptorem; non contra patriam, sed pro
of-my liberty snatcher not against the-fatherland but for
patria et pro libertate mea, quam nemo bonus nisi cum
the-fatherland and for liberty my which no-one good except with
anima simul amittit, arma capio, et ut vos ea mecum
life together loses arms I-take and that you them with-me
capiatis expostulo. Igitur expergiscimini, et hereditatem vobis
may-take I-demand therefore awake and the-inheritance to-you
a parentibus vestris relictam, liberis vestris relinquite; nec
by parents your left to-children your leave nor
vestra socordia vel desidia vos et liberos vestros exulum
by-your sloth or idleness you and children your of-exiled
hominum servos fieri permittite. Sed ne cuiquam vestrum
men slaves to-become allow but lest to-any of-you
causa non satis vehemens videatur, qua adversus regem
the-cause not enough vehement may-seem for-which against the-king
arma capiamus, praecipue nos, qui ab infantia eum in terra
arms we-should-take especially we who from infancy him in land
nostra maxime nutrivimus et ei prae ceteris gentibus
our most have-nurtured and to-him beyond other peoples

suae ditioni subiectis fideles magis extitimus, unusquisque
to-his rule subject faithful more have-proved each-one
suas, quas ab eo passus est iniurias, coram omnibus
his-own which from him suffered he-has injuries before all
vobis exponat; et tunc, utrum satis magna necessitas nos
you let-him-set-forth and then whether enough great necessity us
ad iniurias repellendas cogat, iudicium commune decernat'.
to injuries to-be-repelled compels the-judgment common may-decide
Ergo Werinherus Magedaburgensis archiepiscopus, civitatem
therefore Werner of-Magdeburg archbishop city
suam bis a rege caedibus et praedationibus invasam
his twice by the-king with-slaughters and plunderings invaded
dicebat; et praeterea communes iniurias se non minus
said and moreover the-common injuries himself not less
dolere quam suas asserebat, et eis, quasi solus omnes fuisset
to-grieve than his-own asserted and them as-if alone all he-had
passus, obviaturum se promittebat. Burchardus praesul
suffered about-to-oppose himself promised Burchard prelate
Halberstatensis querebatur, quia praedia cuiusdam nohilis viri
of-Halberstadt complained that the-estates of-a-certain noble man
cui nomen Bodo, quae iure suae deberent esse ecclesiae,
to-whom the-name Bodo which by-right of-his ought to-be church
rex sibi abstulisset iniuste. Otto dux querimoniam
the-king from-him had-taken-away unjustly Otto the-duke complaint
fecit, quia ducatum Bawariae, quem diu iuste possederat, rex
made that the-duchy of-Bavaria which long justly he-had-possessed the-king
sibi in nullo crimine convicto, fraude quadam excogitata,
from-him in no crime convicted by-fraud a-certain devised
iniuste rapuerit. Dedi marchio de praediis ad se iure
unjustly had-seized Dedi the-margrave about the-estates to himself by-right
pertinentibus, sibi per iniuriam ablatis, fecit querelam.
belonging from-him through injury taken-away made complaint

Herimannus comes quod nuper erat factum narravit,
Hermann the-count what lately had-been done told
quia urbem suam Liuniburg, hereditate relictam, callide
that city his Lüneburg by-inheritance left craftily
rex occupavit; et si eam retinere potuisset, totam illam
the-king occupied and if it to-retain he-had-been-able all that
regionem, quam sibi parentes iure dimiserant, non regia
region which to-him the-forebears by-right had-left not by-royal
potestate sed iniusta possidere voluit. Fridericus comes palatii
power but by-unjust to-possess he-wished Frederick count of-the-palace
conquestus est, quia beneficium quod de abbatia Heroldesfelde
complained has that the-benefice which from the-abbey of-Hersfeld
magnum habuerit, iniusta sibi iussione regis ablatum,
great he-had by-unjust from-him command of-the-king taken-away
centum mansis agrorum a rege redimere volebat, nec
with-a-hundred manses of-fields from the-king to-redeem he-wished nor
valebat. Fridericus de Monte et Willehalmus, rex agnomine,
was-able Frederick of the-Mount and William king by-surname
quorum priori libertatem, alteri rex eripere voluit
of-whom from-the-former liberty from-the-other the-king to-snatch wished
hereditatem, uterque pro se querelam faciebat, quae cunctos
inheritance each for himself complaint made which all
plus aliis querimoniis ad misericordiam commovebat, quia
more than-other complaints to pity moved because
in illis duobus quid universis facere cogitabat aestimabant; quia
in those two what to-all to-do he-planned they-judged because
scilicet omnibus, si posset, libertatem simul et possessiones
namely from-all if he-could liberty at-once and possessions
auferre disponebat. Deinde ceteri suas quisque proferebat,
to-take-away he-arranged then the-others his-own each set-forth
quas erat passus iniurias; ad quas commemorandas nec pagina
which he-had suffered injuries for which to-be-recounted neither page

sufficit nec memoria. Omnes ergo qui ibi convenerant —
suffices nor memory all therefore who there had-assembled
convenerat autem maximus exercitus — singillatim iuraverunt,
had-assembled moreover a-very-great army one-by-one swore
episcopi quidem ut, quantum salvo ordine suo possent,
the-bishops indeed that as-much-as saving order their they-could
totis viribus ecclesiarum suarum necnon et totius Saxoniae
with-all strength of-churches their and also of-all Saxony
libertatem contra omnes homines defenderent; laici vero, ut
the-liberty against all men they-would-defend the-laymen but that
quamdiu viverent libertatem suam non amitterent, terramque
as-long-as they-lived liberty their not they-would-lose and-land
suam nullum deinceps violenter praedari permitterent.
their none henceforth violently to-plunder they-would-allow

HENRY'S FLIGHT FROM THE HARZBURG

The Saxons camp before the Harzburg, and Otto tells Henry's envoys they will serve him if he destroys his castles. He will not, and slips away by night to eastern Franconia. The Saxons besiege the castle from one of their own, set out to destroy the others, and bind the Thuringians to them by oath. The princes will help Henry only if an assembly finds him blameless, so he offers the Saxons favor, and Otto his lost honor, if they let him return in peace.

Nec multo post recta via ad Hartesburg, ubi rex
nor much later by-straight road to Harzburg where the-king
erat, cum magno exercitu perrexerunt, et contra urbem
was with a-great army they-went and opposite the-city
ita, ut inde possent videri, castra posuerunt. Quos cum
so that thence they-could to-be-seen camp they-pitched whom when
rex vidisset, subito quidem stupore perculsus expavit;
the-king had-seen by-sudden indeed amazement struck he-took-fright

sed ut erat dissimulator, quasi nichil timens nuntios misit,
but as he-was a-dissembler as-if nothing fearing messengers he-sent
qui dicerent se non parum mirari, quid vellet tanta
who should-say himself not a-little to-wonder what wished so-great
congregatio populi; se non putare, quod quicquam contra
a-gathering of-people himself not to-think that anything against
eos tantum meruisset, quare merito civile bellum incipere
them so-much he-had-deserved why deservedly civil war to-begin
debuissent. Discedere eos ab armis. Si quid querendum
they-should-have to-depart them from arms if anything to-be-complained-of
habeant, se paratum animo pacato cognoscere, et si
they-had himself ready with-mind peaceful to-hear and if
quid sit corrigendum, consilio principum et amicorum
anything be to-be-corrected by-the-counsel of-the-princes and of-friends
suorum corrigere. Nuntii autem erant Fridericus episcopus,
his to-correct the-messengers moreover were Frederick the-bishop
Bertholdus dux, Sigifridus regis capellanus. Nam mortuus
Berthold the-duke Siegfried of-the-king the-chaplain for dead
iam nuper erat Adalbertus Bremensis episcopus. Quibus
now lately was Adalbert of-Bremen bishop to-whom
omnium Saxonum dedit dux Otto responsum: se non
of-all the-Saxons gave duke Otto answer that-they not
hostili animo, nec ut civile bellum vellent incipere, ibi
with-hostile mind nor that civil war they-wished to-begin there
esse congregatos; se regi, si rex esse vellet, omni
to-be assembled themselves to-the-king if king to-be he-wished with-all
fidelitate servituros; se petere ut castella, quae non
fealty about-to-serve themselves to-ask that the-castles which not
ad munitionem regni sed ad destructionem fabricaverat,
for the-fortification of-the-kingdom but for destruction he-had-built
vellet destruere; si vero nollet, tunc se intelligere
he-would-wish to-destroy if but he-would-not then themselves to-understand

quare constructa fuissent; se libertatem suam sive bona
why built they-had-been themselves liberty their or goods
sua contra omnium hominum violentiam cum divinae pietatis
their against of-all men the-violence with of-divine mercy
auxilio velle defendere. Cumque nuntii reversi regi
the-help to-wish to-defend and-when the-messengers returned to-the-king
talia retulissent, ipsique quamvis multum temptarent,
such-things had-reported and-they-themselves although much they-tried
ei quo rogata faceret persuadere non potuissent;
him that the-things-asked he-should-do to-persuade not they-had-been-able
ipse iam nec amicis familiaribus, quia non ut volebat sibi
he-himself now neither to-friends intimates because not as he-wished to-him
consilium dederant, fidem habuit, sed omnibus semotis
counsel they-had-given trust had but all having-been-removed
solus secum quid ageret deliberans, cum nec honestum
alone with-himself what he-should-do deliberating since neither honorable
putaret, ut quasi vi coactus subito castella sua per
he-thought that as-if by-force compelled suddenly castles his through
multos annos constructa destrueret, nec tutum crederet ut
many years built he-should-destroy nor safe he-believed that
cum paucis, quibus etiam iam minus credere coeperat, cum
with a-few whom even now less to-trust he-had-begun with
tanto exercitu ad omnia parato placitum aliquod adiret:
so-great an-army for all-things ready a-parley any he-should-go-to
paucis quibus ipsum castellum commendabat scientibus noctu
with-a-few to-whom the-very castle he-was-entrusting knowing(-it) by-night
Saxoniam deseruit, et per confraga silvarum, quae saepe
Saxony he-deserted and through the-thickets of-the-forests which often
dum locos castellis quaereret peragraverat, fugiens ad Franciam
while places for-castles he-was-seeking he-had-wandered fleeing to Francia
orientalem paucis comitantibus venit. Cuius fugam ut
eastern with-a-few accompanying(-him) came whose flight when

principes qui cum eo fuerant agnoverunt, male se desertos
the-princes who with him had-been learned badly themselves deserted
dicentes, ad sua quisque simili fuga festinaverunt. Haec
saying to their-own each with-like flight hastened this
autem fuga facta est anno ab incarnatione Domini 1073.
moreover flight made was in-the-year from the-incarnation of-the-Lord 1073
Postquam vero regis fugam, quae diu celari non poterat,
after but of-the-king the-flight which long to-be-concealed not could
Saxones agnoverunt, nil morantes eos qui hoc castellum,
the-Saxons learned not-at-all delaying those who this castle
quod facile destrui non poterat, obsiderent ibi reliquerunt;
which easily to-be-destroyed not could should-besiege there they-left
ceteri vero ad cetera destruenda, quae non adeo erant
the-others but to the-other-ones to-be-destroyed which not so were
fortia, perrexerunt. Quidam autem ex ipsis ad Thuringos
strong went some moreover of them to the-Thuringians
transierunt, et eis totam rei seriem innotescentes,
crossed-over and to-them the-whole of-the-matter course making-known
ipsos in suam societatem sacramentis datis et acceptis
them into their alliance oaths having-been-given and received
adiunxerunt. Quicunque etiam prius, dum rex erat in
joined whoever also before while the-king was in
provincia, secum iurare non ausi fuerant, eos iam rege
the-province with-them to-swear not dared had them now the-king
fugato aut e terra sua fugiendo regem sequi, aut secum
put-to-flight either from land their by-fleeing the-king to-follow or with-them
pro terra sua contra regem iurare compellebant.
for land their against the-king to-swear they-compelled
His omnibus rite peractis, brevi tempore, cum Hartespurg
these all-things duly accomplished in-a-short time since Harzburg
castellum capere fuisset difficillimum — nam si in loco
the-castle to-take had-been most-difficult for if in a-place

competenti staret, regali palatio locus idoneus esset —
suitable it-stood for-a-royal palace the-place fit would-be
et illud dimittere fuisset omni Saxoniae periculosum, quia
and it to-leave-alone had-been for-all Saxony dangerous because
si illic escae tantum comportatae essent, quamlibet ingenti
if there food only brought-in had-been to-however huge
exercitui insuperabile maneret, aliud castellum aeque firmum
an-army unconquerable it-would-remain another castle equally strong
construxerunt, in quo positis per vices praesidiis, hostibus
they-built in which placed in turns garrisons to-the-enemies
auxilia vel alimenta venire prohibuerunt. Sed illi nonnumquam
aids or provisions to-come they-prevented but they sometimes
dum Saxonibus ad novum castellum deferrentur alimenta,
while for-the-Saxons to the-new castle were-being-carried provisions
subito eruperunt et intra suos muros ea deportari
suddenly burst-out and within their-own walls them to-be-carried-off
fecerunt. Verum haec faciendo damnum quidem aliquod sive
caused but these-things by-doing loss indeed some or
contumeliam suis hostibus intulerunt, sed exinde magis cautos
insult to-their enemies they-brought but thence more cautious
eos et industrios esse docuerunt. Ergo ex utraque parte paene
them and diligent to-be they-taught therefore from each side almost
singulis diebus fortiter pugnatur; sed Saxones inde fortiores
on-each days bravely it-is-fought but the-Saxons in-that stronger
erant, quia et castellum suum in altiori monte positum erat,
were because both castle their on a-higher mountain placed was
ita ut in illo inferius constituto nullus nisi sub tectis tutus
so that in that-one lower placed no-one except under roofs safe
esset a iactibus lapidum, et fatigatis novi milites succedebant,
was from the-throws of-stones and to-the-weary new soldiers succeeded
et eis alimenta copiose veniebant; quae omnia hostibus
and to-them provisions copiously came which all-things to-the-enemies

erant econtra. Nam neque facile lapides in altiora mittebant,
were contrary for neither easily stones to higher(-places) they-sent
neque fessos ipsos alii sublevabant, et fames, acerrimus
nor the-weary themselves others relieved and hunger most-bitter
hostis, eos non parum affligebat; quae eos dudum devictos ad
enemy them not a-little afflicted which them long-ago overcome to
deditionem coegisset, nisi eis cibos quidam ex Saxonibus
surrender would-have-compelled unless to-them foods some of the-Saxons
furtim ministrarent, qui prius eis familiares fuerant.
secretly were-supplying who formerly to-them intimates had-been
Interea rex singulos Teutonici regni principes supplex
meanwhile the-king one-by-one of-the-Teutonic kingdom the-princes as-a-suppliant
adivit, se de regno Saxoniae, quod cum paterna
approached himself from the-kingdom of-Saxony which both by-paternal
hereditate tum eorum omnium electione suscepisset, iniuste
inheritance and of-them of-all by-the-election he-had-received unjustly
depulsum flebiliter indicavit, in qua re non tam sibi
driven-out tearfully he-indicated in which matter not so-much to-himself
dedecus factum, quam illis omnibus, qui in se fuissent
disgrace done as to-those all who in himself had-been
despecti, narravit; ab omnibus auxilium, quo et suam
despised he-related from all help by-which both his-own
et illorum vindicaret iniuriam, suppliciter postulavit. Sed
and their he-might-avenge injury suppliantly he-requested but
non multos ipsorum sermones eius movebant, quia quantas
not many of-them speeches his moved because how-great
calamitates Saxonibus intulisset, paene omnes noverant:
calamities on-the-Saxons he-had-brought almost all knew
praesertim quia eadem mala etiam Suevis et orientalibus
especially because the-same evils also on-the-Swabians and the-eastern
Francis inferre voluerat. Tamen suo magis quam illius
Franks to-bring he-had-wished nevertheless their-own more than his

honori prospiciunt, eique se venturos in auxilium hac
honor they-look-to and-to-him themselves about-to-come to help on-this
ratione promittunt, ut Saxonibus ad placitum convocatis,
condition promise that the-Saxons to a-parley having-been-summoned
utriusque partis causas diligenter agnoscerent; et si quidem
of-each party the-causes diligently they-should-learn and if indeed
eum sine culpa violenter eiecissent, totis eum viribus in
him without fault violently they-had-cast-out with-all him strength into
regnum suum restituere laborarent; si vero culpa sua terram
kingdom his to-restore they-would-labor if but by-fault his a-land
omnibus opulentiis plenam stultorum consiliis credulus
with-all riches full of-fools to-the-counsels credulous
amisisset, ei si se vellet audire suaderent, quatenus
he-had-lost him if himself he-were-willing to-hear they-would-persuade that
furore deposito subiectis sibi nationibus iustus et pius,
fury laid-aside to-the-subjected to-himself nations just and dutiful
quod esset proprium regis, existeret, nec eos quorum
which would-be proper to-a-king he-should-be nor those whose
malo consilio deceptus erat, amplius audiret. Se
by-evil counsel deceived he-had-been any-longer should-hear themselves
contra homines christianos, innocentes sibique cognatione
against men Christian innocent and-to-themselves by-kinship
propinquos, gratis omnino pugnare denegant. Quos sermones
near for-nothing altogether to-fight they-refuse which speeches
rex ideo quasi gratos accepit, quia quod intendebat
the-king therefore as-if welcome received because what he-was-intending
fieri non posse cognovit, scilicet ut sine placito
to-be-done not to-be-able he-learned namely that without a-parley
Saxoniam cum exercitu violentus intraret, et eos invitos
Saxony with an-army violent he-should-enter and them unwilling
suae ditioni subiectos ex liberis omnes servos faceret.
to-his rule subjected from free-men all slaves he-should-make

Misit itaque nuntios ad principes Saxoniae, omnia bona
he-sent and-so messengers to the-princes of-Saxony all good-things
promittens, si se permitterent in regnum suum cum pace
promising if him they-would-allow into kingdom his with peace
redire; Ottoni duci, de quo sciebat omnium consilia pendere,
to-return to-Otto the-duke on whom he-knew of-all the-counsels to-hang
honorem iniuste ablatum pollicetur cum magno augmento
the-honor unjustly taken-away he-promises with great increase
restituere, si se vellet in honorem pristinum reducere.
to-restore if him he-would-be-willing into honor former to-bring-back

THE PEACE AND THE HARZBURG RAZED

Henry's army, facing a Saxon host twice as large, will not fight, and he makes peace, promising to destroy his castles and rule by Saxon counsel; the treaty leaves out the Swabians, who turn enemy. At Goslar he has only the Harzburg's top taken down, but the peasants brought in raze it and its church and dig up his brother and son. Hiding his rage, which he saves for the Saxon nobles, he orders the other castles razed and leaves, vowing not to return until he can do as he pleases there.

Igitur exercitu quidem magno, sed non ad praeliandum
therefore with-an-army indeed great but not for fighting
parato nisi magna necessitas cogeret, congregato, Kal.
prepared unless great necessity should-compel assembled on-the-Kalends
Februar. cum dominicae incarnationis annus 1074. nuper
of-February when of-the-Lord's incarnation the-year 1074 lately
inceptus ageretur, Saxoniam ingredi disposuit. At Saxones
begun was-running Saxony to-enter he-arranged but the-Saxons
adventu praecognito, terram suam defensuri cum maximo
the-arrival foreknown the-land their about-to-defend with a-very-great
exercitu apud oppidum quod Nachan appellatur, occurrunt, et
army at the-town which Nachan is-called meet(-him) and

a rege non longius, quam ut uterque exercitus alterum
from the-king not farther than that each army the-other
videre potuisset, castra constituunt. Tamen invicem missi
to-see could camp they-pitch nevertheless mutually sent
speculatores exercitus utriusque virtutem diligenter explorant,
scouts of-army each the-strength diligently explore
et utrique suis quod viderant certissime renuntiant.
and each to-their-own what they-had-seen most-surely report
Erat autem Saxonum tam magnus exercitus, ut duplo
was moreover of-the-Saxons so great the-army that twofold
crederetur esse maior quam regis exercitus. Ergo qui
it-was-believed to-be greater than of-the-king the-army therefore those-who
erant ex parte regis, audita Saxonum multitudine simul
were on the-side of-the-king having-heard-of of-the-Saxons the-multitude together
et armorum instructione — nam rex suis dixerat, illos
and of-arms the-equipment for the-king to-his-men had-said them
nec equos habere nec usum militiae, sed rusticanos homines
neither horses to-have nor practice of-warfare but rustic men
bellicarum rerum imperitos — cum prius ad praeliandum
of-warlike things unskilled since before for fighting
fuissent incerti quia dignam non videbant causam pugnandi,
they-had-been uncertain because worthy not they-saw a-cause of-fighting
nunc ad non pugnandum facti sunt certi quia cum causa
now for not fighting made they-were certain because with the-cause
deerant eis copiae, quibus tantae multitudini tuto possent
were-lacking to-them forces with-which so-great a-multitude safely they-could
obviare. Missis itaque rex, ut principes sui iubebant,
to-meet sent and-so the-king as princes his bade
ad Saxones legationibus promisit, se facturum omnia
to the-Saxons embassies promised himself about-to-do all-things
quae vellent ipsi praescribere, dummodo paternam
which they-wished they-themselves to-prescribe provided-that the-paternal

dignitatem, quam pueritiae suae malorumque consiliariorum
dignity which of-boyhood his and-of-evil counselors
culpa se fatebatur amisisse, nollent sibi denegare.
by-the-fault himself he-confessed to-have-lost they-would-not to-himself to-deny
Tunc Otto dux et ceteri quibus magna fuerant promissa,
then Otto the-duke and the-others to-whom great(-things) had-been promised
persuadent aliis, quatenus hac eum conditione reciperent:
persuade the-others that on-this him condition they-should-receive
Castella sua destrueret nec ulterius ea restauraret;
castles his he-should-destroy nor further them he-should-restore
depraedationes amplius in sua terra nullas exerceret; in
plunderings more in their land none he-should-practice in
Saxonia Saxonum consilio cuncta disponenda disponeret
Saxony of-the-Saxons by-the-counsel all-things to-be-arranged he-should-arrange
nullumque extraneae gentis hominem suis rebus agendis
and-no of-foreign race man in-his affairs to-be-transacted
consiliatorem admitteret; et hanc sui expulsionem numquam
as-counselor should-admit and this his expulsion never
in aliquo eorum vindicaret. Cumque rex omnia haec et
on any of-them should-avenge and-when the-king all these-things and
his maiora se facturum fidelissime promitteret, exercitu
than-these greater himself about-to-do most-faithfully promised the-army
suo dimisso cum paucis ad Saxones transivit, et cum
his dismissed with a-few to the-Saxons he-crossed and with
laudibus et gaudio triumphali deductus Goslariam usque
praises and joy triumphal escorted to-Goslar all-the-way
pervenit. Huius foederis inconsulta compositio Saxonibus
he-came of-this treaty the-ill-advised composition for-the-Saxons
maximorum malorum fuit origo. Nam Suevorum, qui
of-the-greatest evils was the-origin for of-the-Swabians who
foederis iam pridem cum Saxonibus facti non inmemores
of-the-treaty already long-before with the-Saxons made not unmindful

cum rege contra Saxones venire noluerant, ipsi Saxones,
with the-king against the-Saxons to-come had-refused the-very Saxons
dum foedus cum rege facerent, fuerunt obliti; et ob
while a-treaty with the-king they-made were forgetful and on-account-of
hoc illis Suevi facti sunt ex amicis fidelibus hostes
this to-them the-Swabians made were from friends faithful enemies
atrocissimi. Quod si aut illud non fecissent, aut in illo
most-cruel which if either that not they-had-done or in that
faciendo Suevos sibi associassent, et perfidiae nota
doing the-Swabians to-themselves they-had-associated both of-treachery the-brand
carerent, et non tam multos hostes saevissimos haberent.
they-would-lack and not so many enemies most-savage they-would-have
Eodem tamen tempore maximam circa nos clementiam Dei
at-the-same yet time very-great toward us the-clemency of-God
cognovimus, quam numquam tradere oblivioni debemus.
we-learned which never to-hand-over to-oblivion we-ought
Nam cum tanta esset hiemis asperitas, ut omnes fluvii
for when so-great was of-the-winter the-harshness that all rivers
vel paludes transire volentibus iter terrestre praeberent, et
or marshes to-cross to-those-wishing a-path by-land afforded and
cum viris omnibus contra regem congregatis, solae mulieres
when the-men all against the-king gathered alone the-women
cum parvulis domi relictae fuissent, pagani semper nobis
with little-children at-home left had-been the-pagans always to-us
infesti totam Saxoniam mulieribus et parvulis abductis
hostile all Saxony the-women and little-children carried-off
poterant in cinerem convertere, nisi Deus eos mirabili
could into ashes to-turn unless God them by-wonderful
sua pietate, velut genuinae crudelitatis oblitos, intra proprios
his mercy as-if of-innate cruelty forgetful within their-own
fines quasi clausos iuberet quiescere.
borders as-if shut-in had-bidden to-keep-quiet

Igitur cum rex exercitu Saxonum comitante Goslariam
therefore when the-king with-the-army of-the-Saxons accompanying(-him) to-Goslar
venisset, sui non oblitus coepit occasiones quaerere, ne sicut
had-come himself not forgetting he-began occasions to-seek lest as
promiserat, deberet in praesenti castella sua destruere. Quem
he-had-promised he-should at the-present castles his to-destroy whom
cum moras nectere quidam principes nostri viderent, volentes
when delays to-weave some princes our saw wishing
ei placere suaserunt, ut illud castellum maius, quod manere
him to-please they-persuaded that that castle greater which to-remain
volebat, alicui de principibus Saxoniae quasi in deditionem
he-wished to-someone of the-princes of-Saxony as-if in surrender
traderet, donec populi furor, qui tunc vehementer
he-should-hand-over until of-the-people the-fury which then vehemently
ardebat, aliquantum tepesceret, et tunc castellum, sicut
burned somewhat should-cool and then the-castle as
volebat, integrum permaneret. Nam populus ut dirueretur
he-wished whole should-remain for the-people that it-be-demolished
vehementer instabat; quod nisi fieret, se statim ab
vehemently urged which unless it-were-done themselves at-once from
integro rebellem fore clamabat. Rex vero in multis angustiis
the-start rebellious to-be shouted the-king but in many straits
positus quid faceret nesciebat; quia nec castellum illud
placed what he-should-do knew-not because neither castle that
destruere volebat, nec alicui principum, qui illud, si sibi
to-destroy he-wished nor to-any of-the-princes who it if to-them
quasi traderetur, staturum promittebant, fidem habebat;
as-if it-were-handed-over about-to-stand promised trust he-had
et populum, ne recidiva bella resumeret, valde metuebat.
and the-people lest renewed wars it-should-resume greatly he-feared
Qua enim virtute paene solus in medio exercitu deprehensus
by-what for valor almost alone in the-midst of-the-army caught

se defenderet, vel qua fuga se septus undique saevis
himself he-could-defend or by-what flight himself hemmed-in on-all-sides by-savage
hostibus absconderet? Igitur ad ingenium suum reversus
enemies he-could-hide therefore to his-own ingenuity returned
excogitavit dolum; qui tamen non eum, quem sperabat,
he-devised a-trick which yet not that which he-hoped
tenuit effectum. Nam quibusdam de suis antiquis familiaribus
held effect for to-certain of his old intimates
occulte praecepit, ut eius tantum propugnaculum summatim
secretly he-ordered that its only rampart at-the-top
deponerent, et cum populus hoc viso totum sperans
they-should-take-down and when the-people this seen the-whole hoping
casurum discederet, illi a diruendo cessarent, et sic paucis
about-to-fall should-depart they from demolishing should-cease and thus a-few
ruinis restauratis, integrum sicut volebat permaneret. Sed
ruins restored whole as he-wished it-should-remain but
illi suo labori parcentes vicinos adduxere rusticos, quos
they their-own labor sparing neighboring brought peasants whom
sicut erant iussi, iusserunt summos tantum muros demoliri.
as they-were ordered they-ordered the-highest only walls to-demolish
Rustici vero cum eius loci potestatem nunc accepissent,
the-peasants but when of-that place the-power now they-had-received
quo multa iam pridem mala passi fuissent, non quid
where many already long-before evils suffered they-had not what
iuberentur, sed quid iam diu desiderassent intendebant,
they-were-ordered but what now long they-had-desired they-intended
a diruendo non quiescentes, donec lapidem super lapidem
from demolishing not resting until stone upon stone
non remanere videbant. Ergo regalia aedificia, regali sumptu
not to-remain they-saw therefore the-royal buildings at-royal expense
per multos annos constructa, brevi tempore destruunt,
through many years built in-a-short time they-destroy

et in tantis moenibus nec fundamenta non eruta
and in so-great walls not-even the-foundations not uprooted
relinquunt. Legati regis non audent verbum facere, quia
they-leave the-envoys of-the-king not dare a-word to-make because
et ipsos, si quid contradicerent, minantur interficere. Itaque
even them if anything they-should-object they-threaten to-kill and-so
monasterium laborioso opere perfectum deiciunt usque
the-monastery with-laborious work completed they-throw-down all-the-way
ad fundamentum, totum thesaurum ibi congestum, sive
to the-foundation the-whole treasure there heaped-up whether
regis esset sive ecclesiae, diripiunt, campanas dulcisonas
of-the-king it-was or of-the-church they-plunder the-bells sweet-sounding
confringunt, filium regis et fratrem, quos ibi posuerat,
they-break the-son of-the-king and brother whom there he-had-laid
effodiunt, ossaque eorum velut quaslibet inmunditias
they-dig-up and-the-bones their like any filth
dispergnnt, et nichil penitus eius loci permanere permittunt.
they-scatter and nothing at-all of-that place to-remain they-allow
Sed rex cum castellum suum sic agnovisset adnichilatum,
but the-king when castle his thus he-had-learned reduced-to-nothing
magno quidem dolore cordis intrinsecus conturbatur, sed eum
with-great indeed grief of-heart inwardly is-troubled but it
nullo forinsecus signo protestatur, quia superfluum putabat
by-no outward sign he-declares because superfluous he-thought
his quos habebat odio, dolorem suum monstrare, cum non
to-those whom he-held in-hatred grief his to-show since not
posset in eorum suppliciis ad praesens odium suum pro
he-could in their punishments for the-present hatred his according-to
velle suo saturare. Primates autem Saxoniae, cum regis
will his to-glut the-chief-men moreover of-Saxony since of-the-king
animum scirent non inmerito, quamvis ipse celaret,
the-mind they-knew not undeservedly although he-himself concealed(-it)

valde turbatum, omnibus modis eum mitigare quaerebant,
greatly disturbed by-all means him to-soften sought
se ipsos a consilii sive voluntatis crimine, quocunque
them themselves from of-counsel or of-will the-charge in-whatever
modo iuberet ipse purgando; et eos qui crimine
way he-should-bid he-himself by-clearing and those who in-the-crime
erant involuti, quacunque vellet poena cruciando; sed nil
were involved with-whatever he-wished penalty by-torturing but nothing
proficiebant. Nam rex non tantum illis qui scelus
they-availed for the-king not so-much with-those who the-crime
confessi fecerant, quantum istis qui se a perpetrato
confessedly had-done as with-these who themselves from the-committed
scelere purgabant, irascitur; et dedignans irasci in rusticos,
crime were-clearing is-angry and disdaining to-be-angry with peasants
in maximos huius regionis homines furorem suum, si
against the-greatest of-this region men fury his if
quando tempus haberet, accendere meditatur. Interea tamen
ever time he-should-have to-kindle he-meditates meanwhile nevertheless
non quantum volebat, sed quantum in praesenti valebat,
not as-much-as he-wished but as-much-as at the-present he-was-able
suum castellum vindicat, et omnia castella vel quaslibet
his castle he-avenges and all castles or any
huius terrae munitiones praeter antiquas urbes ad honorem
of-this land fortifications except the-old cities for the-honor
regni constructas dirui imperat. Quod imperium
of-the-kingdom built to-be-demolished he-commands which command
non ex tranquillo rigore iustitiae, sed ex iracundi pectoris
not from tranquil rigor of-justice but from of-a-wrathful breast
commotione turbida processisse, hinc praecipue cognosci
agitation turbid to-have-proceeded hence especially to-be-known
potuit, quia castella quaedam de nullo malo infamata
could because castles certain of no evil defamed

destrui, plurima vero de praedis et latrociniis convicta, si
to-be-destroyed very-many but of plunders and robberies convicted if
pecunia data fuisset, intacta manere praecepit. His ita patratis
money given had-been untouched to-remain he-ordered these thus accomplished
non quasi ullo dolore commotus vel quicquam mali Saxoniae
not as-if by-any grief moved or anything of-evil for-Saxony
cogitans, Martio mense nondum peracto Saxoniam reliquit, et
planning March the-month not-yet completed Saxony he-left and
ad habitatores Rheni ceterarumque Franciae partium male
to the-dwellers of-the-Rhine and-of-the-other of-Francia parts badly
laeta mente transivit. Fertur vero a finibus nostris discedens
glad with-mind he-crossed it-is-said but from borders our departing
cum iuramento dixisse, quod numquam vellet amplius
with an-oath to-have-said that never he-would-wish further
in Saxoniam redire, nisi prius eam virtutem contraxisset,
into Saxony to-return unless first that strength he-had-gathered
qua posset in Saxonia facere quicquid sibi libuisset.
by-which he-could in Saxony to-do whatever to-him should-have-pleased

HENRY SEEKS ALLIES

Weeping at the princes' feet, Henry tells how the Saxons razed his church, scattered his brother's and son's bones, and cast out the relics, but a year passes before Rudolf of Swabia, offended by the treaty, promises to invade. Abroad only the Bohemians, bought with Meissen, join him; the Liutizi, the Danes, the French, the English, and his uncle of Poitou fail him. So he divides Saxony, summoning its princes one by one and binding them, their knights, and even their servants to help him in secret.

Congregatis itaque illarum partium principibus nunc singulis
assembled and-so of-those parts the-princes now singly
nunc universis humiliter se prosternens querimoniam fecit,
now all-together humbly himself prostrating complaint he-made
dicens, quod priores suae expulsionis iniuriae sibi nunc
saying that the-earlier of-his expulsion injuries to-him now
leves essent, istas sibi magnas et insanabiles videri; in
light were these to-him great and incurable to-seem in
prioribus se cum suis principibus fuisse despectum,
the-earlier himself with his princes to-have-been despised
in istis vere suo suorumque despectui coniunctum esse
in these truly to-his and-his-men's contempt joined to-be
coelestis militiae, et quod esset his maius, maiestatis
of-the-heavenly host and what was than-these greater of-the-majesty
divinae contemptum. Nam narravit eis lacrimans, quia dum
divine the-contempt for he-related to-them weeping that while
ipsorum consiliis contra suam voluntatem cedens Saxonibus
of-them to-the-counsels against his will yielding to-the-Saxons
suum castellum regali sumptu constructum traderet
his castle at-royal expense built he-handed-over
demoliendum, illi non solum, quod eis permissum erat,
to-be-demolished they not only what to-them permitted was
illud inhumano more destruerent, sed insuper monasterium
it in-inhuman fashion destroyed but besides the-monastery

Deo sanctisque consecratum, paganis omnibus crudeliores
to-God and-the-saints consecrated than-pagans all more-cruel
funditus diruerent, campanas, calices et cetera ad
from-the-foundations demolished bells chalices and the-other-things for
honorem Dei collecta velut profana confringerent vel hostili
the-honor of-God collected as-if profane broke or with-hostile
praedatione diriperent, fratrem filiumque suum, utrumque
plundering carried-off brother and-son his both
prolem regiam, miserabiliter a sepulcris eiectos in ventum
offspring royal wretchedly from their-tombs cast-out into the-wind
membratim dispergerent, et quod his omnibus magis
limb-by-limb scattered and what than-these all more
esset nefandum, sanctorum reliquias ab altaribus sacris
was unspeakable of-the-saints the-relics from altars sacred
execrandis manibus erutas velut inmunditias quasdam per
with-accursed hands torn-out like filth some through
profana loca dissiparent. His omnibus non sine largo
profane places dispersed these all not without abundant
fletu peroratis singulorum pedes osculans oravit, ut si
weeping having-been-fully-told of-each-one the-feet kissing he-prayed that if
non suam curarent vindicare iniuriam, saltem contumeliam
not his-own they-cared to-avenge injury at-least the-insult
Deo Deique sanctis illatam remanere non paterentur
to-God and-of-God to-the-saints brought to-remain not they-should-allow
inultam. Ait Saxones non dicendos esse christianos, qui
unavenged he-says the-Saxons not to-be-called to-be Christians who
cum supradicta scelera in domo Christi facerent, se
when the-above-said crimes in the-house of-Christ they-did themselves
Christum nec amare nec timere monstrarent. Illos vero
Christ neither to-love nor to-fear showed them but
debere per hoc esse se Christi fideles ostendere, si
to-be-bound by this to-be themselves of-Christ faithful to-show if

zelo Christi ferventes eius iniurias non dubitarent ipso
with-zeal for-Christ burning his injuries not they-hesitated he-himself
adiuvante vindicare. Has querimonias et supplicationes, dum
helping to-avenge these complaints and supplications while
quotiens fieret principum conventus repeteret, annus
as-often-as there-took-place of-the-princes an-assembly he-repeated a-year
integer evolvitur, antequam sua voluntas, ut in Saxoniam
whole rolls-by before his will that into Saxony
ducere posset exercitum compleretur. Namque omnes qui
to-lead he-could an-army was-fulfilled for all who
miserias miserabiles, quas intulerat Saxoniae sciebant, cum
the-miseries miserable which he-had-brought-on Saxony knew since
omne bellum res sit aspera nec huius belli satis pateret
every war a-thing is harsh nor of-this war enough was-plain
idonea causa, ad differendum hoc bellum quaslibet occasiones
a-fit cause for postponing this war any occasions
quaerebant. Quod nisi Rodulfum ducem Suevorum, quando
sought which unless Rudolf the-duke of-the-Swabians when
cum rege foedus inibant, ut supra dictum est, Saxones
with the-king a-treaty they-entered as above said it-is the-Saxons
offendissent, adhuc forsitan rex copias contra Saxoniam non
had-offended still perhaps the-king forces against Saxony not
haberet. Ille enim a Saxonibus, quorum confidebat auxilio
would-have he for by the-Saxons whose he-trusted in-the-help
deceptus, regi quomodo poterat reconciliatur, et ei
deceived to-the-king as he-could is-reconciled and to-him
primus se cum suis omnibus Saxones hostiliter invasurum
first himself with his all the-Saxons hostilely about-to-invade
pollicetur. Sed hoc, ut dixi, post annum fiet integrum.
promises but this as I-said after a-year will-happen whole

Interea missis vero in omnes circumquaque gentes legatis,
meanwhile sent but to all round-about peoples envoys
donando, maiora promittendo, cunctos si posset homines
by-giving greater-things by-promising all if he-could men
Saxonibus voluit hostes efficere, quia non tam eos suae
to-the-Saxons he-wished enemies to-make because not so-much them to-his
potestati, quod leviter fieret sine bello, subicere, quam
power which easily would-be-done without war to-subject as
funditus ab hominum numero quaerebat adimere. Duci
utterly from of-men the-number he-sought to-take-away to-the-duke
Boemiorum Wrotizlao Misnam civitatem cum omnibus ad eam
of-the-Bohemians Vratislav Meissen the-city with all-things to it
pertinentibus promisit, et sic eum ut suis partibus adiutor
belonging he-promised and thus him that to-his side a-helper
esset ascivit. Liuticensibus paganis crudelitatis quam semper
he-might-be he-enlisted to-the-Liutizi pagans of-the-cruelty which always
in Saxones habuerant frena laxavit, et quantum Saxoniae
against the-Saxons they-had-had the-reins he-loosened and as-much of-Saxony
suis finibus possent adiungere concessit. Illi vero dixerunt,
to-their borders they-could to-add he-granted they but said
se Saxones multis bellorum tempestatibus expertos
themselves the-Saxons in-many of-wars storms tried
agnovisse, et se raro vel numquam de bellis eorum
to-have-known and themselves rarely or never at wars their
gavisos fuisse; sibi suam terram sufficere, seque si
rejoiced to-have to-themselves their-own land to-suffice and-themselves if
suos terminos defendere valeant contentos esse. Regem
their boundaries to-defend they-should-be-able content to-be the-king
Danorum promissionis iuramento confirmatae commemorat,
of-the-Danes of-the-promise by-oath confirmed he-reminds
seque illi daturum cuncta quae sit pollicitus affirmat.
and-that-he to-him about-to-give all-things which he-has promised affirms

Philippum, Latinae Franciae rectorem, multis pollicitationibus
Philip of-Latin Francia the-ruler with-many promises
sollicitat, ut antiquae memor amicitiae sibi quandocunque
he-solicits that of-old mindful friendship to-him whenever
vocatus fuerit in auxilium veniat. Sed ille similiter a
summoned he-shall-have-been to help he-may-come but he likewise by
suis accusatus et paene paterno solio depositus, vix
his-own accused and almost from-the-paternal throne deposed scarcely
suum honorem, cui adhuc haerebat, se dixit retinere;
his-own honor to-which still he-clung himself said to-retain
nedum isti suum, a quo penitus ceciderat, temptaret
much-less for-him his from which utterly he-had-fallen he-should-try
reponere. Willehalmum gentis Anglicae regem hac condicione
to-restore William of-the-people English the-king on-this condition
suum vocavit in auxilium, ut ei vicem redderet aequam,
his he-called into help that to-him the-favor he-would-render equal
si se unquam haberet necessarium. Ille vero respondit,
if him ever he-should-have necessary he but answered
se terram illam bellorum violentia pervasisse, et ideo
himself land that of-wars by-the-violence to-have-seized and therefore
si reliquerit eam, ne posthac recipiatur in ea formidare.
if he-should-leave it lest thereafter he-be-received in it to-dread
Willehalmum ducem Pictavorum, matris suae germanum, sororis
William duke of-the-Poitevins of-mother his the-brother of-sister
suae filio rogavit misereri, sibique ferre auxilium, quo
his on-the-son he-asked to-have-pity and-to-him to-bring help by-which
posset in regnum patris sui, quo careret iniuste, restitui.
he-might-be-able into the-kingdom of-father his which he-lacked unjustly to-be-restored
At ille tantas Francigenarum, Nortmannorum, vel Aquitanorum
but he such of-the-French of-the-Normans or of-the-Aquitanians

virtutes inter se et illum esse respondit, ut nullo ingenio
forces between himself and him to-be answered that by-no contrivance
per tantam fortitudinem cum exercitu transire potuisset.
through such strength with an-army to-cross he-could-have
His omnibus praeter Boemios fraudatus, cum de gentibus
of-these all except the-Bohemians cheated since from peoples
exteris vires satis magnas contra Saxones non haberet,
foreign forces enough great against the-Saxons not he-had
pessimum quod optime sciebat consilium invenit, ut Saxoniam
the-worst which best he-knew counsel he-found that Saxony
divideret et Saxonibus contra Saxones pugnaret, ut quaelibet
he-should-divide and with-Saxons against Saxons he-should-fight that whichever
pars victa iaceret, ipse victor exultans triumpharet.
part conquered should-lie he-himself victor exulting might-triumph
Principes igitur Saxoniae singillatim iubet ad se venire,
the-princes therefore of-Saxony one-by-one he-orders to himself to-come
causam fingens aliquam grandem, quam dicebat eorum consilio
a-cause feigning some great which he-said by-their counsel
se velle terminare. Illi nil dubitantes quo sunt
himself to-wish to-settle they not-at-all hesitating whither they-were
vocati venerunt, quo nec venire cessarent, si nullius
summoned came whither not-even to-come would-they-have-ceased if of-no
causae interpositione simplici praecepto regem adire iussi
cause by-the-interposition by-simple command the-king to-approach ordered
fuissent. Sed venientes singulos primo blandus accipiebat,
they-had-been but those-coming one-by-one at-first flattering he-received
cumque iam secum aliquamdiu starent, animum suum eis
and-when now with-him some-while they-stood mind his to-them
aperuit, et eos ut se ad opprimendam Saxoniam pro
he-opened and them that him for oppressing Saxony according-to
viribus suis adiuvarent et hoc ipsum nulli proderent,
strength their they-should-help and this very-thing to-no-one they-should-betray

iurare cogebat; quod nisi statim facerent, ab eo recedere
to-swear he-compelled which unless at-once they-did from him to-withdraw
non valebant. Inde factum est, ut in nostra parte pater,
not they-were-able thence done it-was that on our side the-father
in adversa filius esset; hinc frater unus, illinc staret
on the-opposing the-son was on-this-side brother one on-that-side stood
alius. Multi etiam de maioribus qui bona in utrisque
the-other many also of the-greater-men who goods in both
regionibus habebant, ut utraque servarent, sponte sua hic
regions had that both they-might-keep of-will their-own here
relicto filio sive fratre ad regem transibant, vel ipsi
left the-son or brother to the-king crossed-over or they-themselves
hic remanentes, fratres vel filios ad regem transibant,
here remaining brothers or sons to the-king crossed-over
vel ipsi hic remanentes, fratres vel filios ad regem
or they-themselves here remaining brothers or sons to the-king
transmittebant. Plerosque militaris ordinis ad se eodem
sent-across most of-military rank to himself in-the-same
modo vocabat, et prout cuiusque animum cognoscebat,
way he-called and according-as of-each-one the-mind he-learned
minis sive promissionibus ad bellum civile sollicitabat. Etiam
by-threats or promises to war civil he-solicited even
famulos ad se vocatos non dedignatur orare, ut vel
servants to himself called not he-disdains to-beg that either
interficiendo vel deserendo dominos, mererentur libertate
by-killing or by-deserting masters they-should-merit with-liberty
donari vel etiam domini dominorum suorum fieri. Sed
to-be-rewarded or even masters of-masters their to-become but
haec omnia occulta erant adhuc; quia si quis ei suum
these all-things hidden were still because if anyone to-him his
iurabat adiutorium, iurare cogebatur eiusdem fidele silentium.
swore help to-swear he-was-compelled of-the-same faithful silence

Henry sends Archbishop Werner poison, which kills a puppy. The nobles despair of their strength, for gold has bought the Westphalians and the men of Meissen, and all but four bishops waver or defect; signs foretell the war: croziers run with water, a crucifix sweats, wine turns to blood. Ignored by the king, Werner begs Siegfried of Mainz to win the Saxons a judgment before the princes, pleads their innocence of the Harzburg's razing, and asks him at least not to serve the king's fury.

Quid dicam quod episcopis, quos in suas partes trahere non
what shall-I-say that to-the-bishops whom to his side to-draw not
poterat, huiusmodi dona mittebat, quibus illis episcopatum
he-could of-this-kind gifts he-sent by-which from-them the-bishopric
pariter et vitam adimeret, quatenus his personis
together and life he-might-take-away so-that to-those persons
daret episcopatum, qui suae voluntati praeberent ad omnia
he-might-give the-bishopric who to-his will would-offer in all-things
consensum. Per quendam fallacem monachum Werinhero
consent through a-certain deceitful monk to-Werner
Magedaburgensi archiepiscopo pulverem pigmentarium munus
of-Magdeburg archbishop a-powder spiced a-gift
egregium misit, quem contra multas aegritudines salubrem
excellent he-sent which against many sicknesses healthful
sibi ab Italia a matre sua transmissum esse mandavit.
to-himself from Italy by mother his sent to-have-been he-sent-word
Cuius partem crustae panis insertam catulo dari
of-which a-part into-a-crust of-bread inserted to-a-puppy to-be-given
praecepit; eumque sine mora mori vidimus, et quia
he-ordered and-it without delay to-die we-saw and because
episcopus talem medicinam non gustaverat laetati sumus.
the-bishop such medicine not had-tasted glad we-were

Sed postquam haec omnia famae loquacitas per Saxoniam
but after these all-things of-rumor the-talkativeness through Saxony
coepit praedicare, et mala futura eodem quo postea
began to-proclaim and the-evils to-come in-the-same in-which afterward
veniebant ordine praedicere, plebs quidem, quae causas
they-came order to-foretell the-common-people indeed which causes
nescit pensare, laetatur et omnes qui suas terras invaserint,
knows-not to-weigh rejoices and all who their lands shall-have-invaded
impetu primo prosternere minatur; at nobilitas magnis
at-the-onset first to-lay-low threatens but the-nobility with-great
angustiis afficitur, dum robur regis praevalidum suumque
straits is-affected while the-strength of-the-king very-mighty and-its-own
perexiguum subtili rationis examine metitur. Illinc namque
very-slight with-subtle of-reason examination it-measures on-that-side for
venturos ad pugnam Francos utrumque litus Rheni tenentes,
about-to-come to the-fight the-Franks both bank of-the-Rhine holding
Suevos, Bawarios, Lotharingos et Boemios aspiciunt; hinc
the-Swabians the-Bavarians the-Lotharingians and the-Bohemians they-see on-this-side
vero non nisi Saxoniae vix tertiam partem inveniunt, quia
but not except of-Saxony scarcely a-third part they-find because
omnes Westfali et omnes circa Misnam habitantes, regis
all the-Westphalians and all around Meissen dwelling of-the-king
auro corrupti a nobis defecerunt. Ipsa quoque pars
by-the-gold corrupted from us defected the-very also part
tertia vix secum fida manebat, quia singulos in ea regia
third scarcely with-itself faithful remained because individuals in it royal
promissa assidue sollicitabant. Omnes etiam episcopi praeter
promises constantly solicited all also the-bishops except
quatuor, Magedaburgensem, Halberstatensem, Merseburgensem,
four he-of-Magdeburg he-of-Halberstadt he-of-Merseburg
Patharbrunensem, aut aperte ad regem transierunt, aut
he-of-Paderborn either openly to the-king crossed-over or

animo nutanti nobiscum steterunt, ut in quamcunque partem
with-mind wavering with-us stood that to whichever side
res prospere cederent, illic securi declinare potuissent.
matters prosperously should-turn there secure to-turn-aside they-could
Eodem tempore multa per Saxoniam signa fieri vidimus,
at-the-same time many through Saxony signs to-occur we-saw
ex quibus mala quae post venerunt praescire potuimus.
from which the-evils which afterward came to-foreknow we-could
Quod enim in Magedaburgensi prato vidimus corvos tam
that for in the-Magdeburg meadow we-saw ravens so
acriter inter se pugnantes, ut alii alios iacere dimitterent
fiercely among themselves fighting that some others to-lie let
exanimes, narrare supersedeo, quia sacratiora non minus
lifeless to-relate I-forbear because more-sacred-things not less
futurorum praesaga narranda habeo. Episcoporum nostrorum
of-things-to-come presaging to-be-related I-have of-bishops our
virgae pastorales, aere sereno, nimio aestivo calore perusto,
the-staves pastoral in-air clear by-excessive summer heat parched
stantes in capellis ita madescebant, ut aqua sua manum
standing in chapels so grew-wet that with-water their the-hand
suam implerent, si quis eas accipiebat. In Stidaraburg erat
his they-filled if anyone them took at Stidaraburg there-was
lignea Christi in cruce pendentis imago, quae eodem tempore
a-wooden of-Christ on the-cross hanging image which at-the-same time
tanto sudoris in aestivis diebus manabat fluvio, ut nec
with-so-great of-sweat on summer days flowed a-river that not-even
mappulis tersa sudare quiesceret et vascula nonnulla suscepto
with-napkins wiped to-sweat it-ceased and vessels several with-the-received
sudore impleret. Werinherus Merseburgensis episcopus dum
sweat it-filled Werner of-Merseburg the-bishop while
sacra missarum solemnia celebraret et more solito
the-sacred of-the-masses solemnities he-was-celebrating and in-the-manner usual

sanguini dominico partem corporis Christi imponeret, fundum
into-the-blood of-the-Lord a-part of-the-body of-Christ was-placing the-bottom
calicis pars illa petebat, ac si caro Christi in plumbum versa
of-the-chalice part that sought as if the-flesh of-Christ into lead turned
fuisset. Quidam presbyter in episcopatu Magedaburgensi in
had-been a-certain priest in the-bishopric of-Magdeburg in
villa Weddinge, in neutra parte conversationis egregius, qui
the-village Weddinge in neither direction of-way-of-life outstanding who
nec vitiorum labe nec virtutum laude clareret eximius,
neither of-vices by-the-stain nor of-virtues by-the-praise shone eminent
dum in sacramentorum confectione venisset ad communionem,
while in of-the-sacraments the-confecting he-had-come to the-communion
calice levato vidit vinum non solum spiritualiter, sed et
the-chalice raised saw the-wine not only spiritually but also
visibiliter in sanguinem conversum; cuius rubore pariter
visibly into blood turned whose by-the-redness alike
et densitate perterritus nichil inde sumere praesumpsit, sed
and thickness terrified nothing from-it to-take he-presumed but
in Magedaburg civitatem, ubi adhuc venerabiliter servatur,
into Magdeburg the-city where still venerably it-is-kept
cum magno timore portavit. Quae omnia quid significasse
with great fear carried(-it) which all-things what to-have-signified
putemus, nisi laborem, quem post experti sumus?
should-we-think except the-toil which afterward experienced we-have
Ergo cum regis ira longitudine temporis in nos nimis
therefore when of-the-king the-anger by-length of-time against us too-much
accensa diutius latere non posset, certisque signis quae mala
kindled longer to-lie-hidden not could and-by-sure signs what evils
nobis cogitabat facere, pateret; tunc principes nostri singuli
to-us he-was-planning to-do was-plain then the-princes our singly
et universi pariter legationes assiduas nunc cum litteris nunc
and all together embassies constant now with letters now

sine litteris ipsi regi fecerunt, quibus hoc solum ab eo
without letters to-the-very king made by-which this only from him
multa supplicatione petierunt, ut coetu principum suorum
with-much supplication they-sought that an-assembly of-the-princes his
collecto se coram eis aut culpabiles ostenderet et
having-been-gathered them before them either guilty he-should-show and
convictos eorum iudicio puniret, aut ipsi suam
convicted of-them by-the-judgment he-should-punish or they-themselves their
innocentiam iudicio quolibet ostenderent et in eius gratia,
innocence by-judgment any should-show and in his favor
sicut hactenus erant, permanerent. Verum cum ab eo nullum
as hitherto they-were should-remain but when from him no
pietatis responsum accepissent et eum de sua tantum
of-mercy answer they-had-received and him about their only
perditione modis omnibus tractare cognovissent, ad eos qui
ruin in-ways all to-be-treating they-had-learned to those who
cum eo principes erant legationes dirigunt, et eos ut animum
with him princes were embassies they-direct and them that the-mind
regis sibi placare velint, humiliter petunt. Ex quibus
of-the-king to-them to-placate they-would-be-willing humbly they-ask of which
unam, quam Magedaburgensis archiepiscopus Magontino misit
one which of-Magdeburg the-archbishop of-Mainz sent
archiepiscopo, placuit epistolam supponere, ut ex hac omnes
to-the-archbishop it-has-pleased the-letter to-place-below that from this all
alias, quia omnes unius modi erant, quilibet possit agnoscere.
the-others since all of-one kind were anyone may-be-able to-recognize
Domno Sigifrido Christi sanctissimo sacerdoti, Werinherus
to-lord Siegfried of-Christ most-holy priest Werner
licet indignus sanctae Magedaburgensis ecclesiae archiepiscopus,
although unworthy of-the-holy Magdeburg church archbishop
et cum eo omnes Saxoniae praesules duces comites, et
and with him all of-Saxony prelates dukes counts and

universi simul clerici vel laici, magni vel parvi, orationem
all together clerics or laymen great or small prayer
devotam pariter et servitutem subiectam. Multiplices et
devout together and service subject manifold and
magnae tribulationes, quae nos nostris peccatis exigentibus
great tribulations which us with-our sins demanding
inremediabiliter nisi pietas divina subvenerit affligunt,
irremediably unless the-mercy divine shall-have-come-to-aid afflict
omnium qui vel Deum timent vel se homines esse
of-all who either God fear or themselves men to-be
cognoscunt, misericordiam suppliciter quaerere nos compellunt.
know the-mercy suppliantly to-seek us compel
Unde quia vestram excellentiam Deum timere pariter
whence because your excellence God to-fear alike
et amare cognoscimus, specialiter ad almitatis vestrae
and to-love we-know especially to of-graciousness your
misericordiam confugimus, humiliter orantes, ut pro ipso
the-mercy we-flee humbly praying that for the-very
Dei timore causam nostram iuste pensetis, et si iusta
of-God fear cause our justly you-may-weigh and if just
fuerit inventa, misericordiae vestrae nobis auxilium
it-shall-have-been found of-mercy your to-us the-help
ipsius amore iustitiae, quae Christus est, tribuatis. Dominus
of-the-very for-love of-justice which Christ is you-may-grant lord
noster rex, postquam factus adolescens abiecto
our the-king after having-become a-young-man having-cast-aside
principum suorum consilio sui iuris esse coepit, et
of-the-princes his the-counsel of-his-own right to-be he-began and
eorum qui nec aequum nec bonum considerant, magisterio
of-those who neither the-fair nor the-good consider to-the-teaching
se subdidit, semper nos insolito more quaerebat
himself he-subjected always us in-unaccustomed manner he-sought

opprimere, bona nostra nobis eripere suisque familiaribus ea
to-oppress goods our from-us to-snatch and-to-his intimates them
contradere, non ob aliam culpam, nisi quia illi domi parum
to-hand-over not for other fault except because they at-home little
vel nichil habebant et terram nostram fructuosam videbant.
or nothing had and land our fruitful they-saw
Itaque munitiora nostrae regionis loca fortissimis castellis
and-so the-more-fortified of-our region places with-very-strong castles
occupavit, in quibus armatos non paucos constituit, qui
he-occupied in which armed-men not few he-set who
nos aut serviliter sibi servire compellerent aut libertatem
us either slavishly to-himself to-serve should-compel or liberty
defendere volentes occiderent. Ibi quanta pericula, quantas
to-defend wishing should-kill there how-great dangers how-great
contumelias, quanta damna in nostris corporibus, in nostris
insults how-great losses in our bodies in our
uxoribus, in nostris possessionibus passi sumus, et qualiter
wives in our possessions suffered we-have and how
inde nos ad tempus misericordia Dei liberavit, quia vobis
thence us for a-time the-mercy of-God freed because to-you
notum esse credimus praeterimus. Postquam vero tempestate
known to-be we-believe we-pass-over after but the-tempest
tanta misericordia Dei sedata pacem et gratiam suam
so-great by-the-mercy of-God having-been-calmed peace and favor his
nobis reddidit, nichil nos scimus contra eum fecisse, unde
to-us he-restored nothing we know against him to-have-done whence
merito debeat in nos recidiva bella movere. Praedia quae
deservedly he-should against us renewed wars to-stir-up the-estates which
querebatur ablata, legatis ipsius reddidimus, donec ipsi
he-complained taken-away to-the-envoys his we-returned until the-very
legati dixerunt, nichil esse reliquum quod reddere deberemus.
envoys said nothing to-be left which to-return we-should

Castella vel ceteras munitiones quas in nostris partibus
the-castles or other fortifications which in our parts
destrui praecepit, omnes confregimus, nisi quas ipse
to-be-destroyed he-ordered all we-broke except those-which he-himself
nobis nolentibus stare permisit. De monasterio suo destructo
with-us unwilling to-stand allowed about the-monastery his destroyed
vel de sepulcris filii vel fratris sui violatis et ossibus eorum
or about the-tombs of-son or of-brother his violated and the-bones their
disiectis cum qualiter factum sit audieritis, quia nos
scattered when how done it-was you-shall-have-heard that we
sumus innocentes agnoscetis. Ipsius castelli ubi haec acta
are innocent you-will-recognize of-the-very castle where these-things done
sunt destructionem nulli nostrum credere voluit, sed hanc
were the-destruction to-none of-us to-entrust he-was-willing but this
operam suis famulis et familiaribus iniunxit; qui negligentes
task to-his servants and intimates he-enjoined who negligent
et pigri, quo citius quod erant iussi peragerent,
and lazy so-that more-quickly what they-were ordered they-might-accomplish
omnes rusticos qui in illa vicinia erant convenire fecerunt,
all the-peasants who in that neighborhood were to-assemble caused
et eis demoliendi castelli potestatem dederunt. Rustici
and to-them of-demolishing the-castle the-power gave the-peasants
vero, sicut rustici imperiti et ab eodem castello multa mala
but as peasants unskilled and from the-same castle many evils
perpessi, cum nullus adesset qui castigaret, nichil in ipso
having-suffered since no-one was-present who might-restrain nothing in it
voluere relinqui, quo iterum deberet renovari. Postea saepius
wished to-be-left by-which again it-should to-be-renewed afterward often
domino nostro regi legationem sicut humiles servi cum
to-lord our the-king an-embassy as humble servants with
multa supplicatione misimus, ut si quid in illa vel qualibet
much supplication we-sent that if anything in that or any

causa contra eum fecisse videremur, principum suorum
cause against him to-have-done we-seemed of-the-princes his
iudicio vel negando vel emendando satisfaceremus. Quam
by-the-judgment either by-denying or by-amending we-might-satisfy which
legationem quia adhuc ut accipere vellet nullius auxilio
embassy because still that to-receive he-would of-no-one by-the-help
obtinere potuimus, vestrae sanctitati simul omnes pedibus
to-obtain we-could to-your holiness together all at-feet
vestris advoluti supplicamus, ut nobis iram domini nostri
your rolled-down we-beseech that for-us the-anger of-lord our
regis mitigare velitis, eique suadere, ut quod uni
the-king to-soften you-would-wish and-him to-persuade that what for-one
faceret homini, facere dignetur universae genti, scilicet
he-would-do man to-do he-would-deign for-the-whole nation namely
ne prius nos furore bellico devastare quaerat, quam nos
lest first us with-fury warlike to-lay-waste he-seek than us
coram principibus suis criminosos et crimen emendare
before princes his criminals and the-crime to-amend
nolentes ostendat. Securitatem quam vos et alii principes
unwilling he-show the-security which you and other princes
eius iusseritis, a nobis accipiat, ut ad nos sine bello
his shall-have-ordered from us let-him-accept that to us without war
veniat, et vestro nos iudicio vel puniat, si meruimus,
he-may-come and by-your us judgment either let-him-punish if we-have-deserved
vel in pace cum gratia sua dimittat, si innocentes inventi
or in peace with favor his let-him-dismiss if innocent found
fuerimus. Sin hoc noluerit, in qualibet regni
we-shall-have-been but-if this he-shall-have-been-unwilling in any of-kingdom
sui parte principes suos convenire iubeat, et quoscunque
his part princes his to-assemble let-him-bid and whomever
ex nobis adesse voluerit, eis eundi redeundi
of us to-be-present he-shall-have-wished to-them of-going (and)-of-returning

securitatem tribuat, et quicquid vos iudicaveritis de nobis
security let-him-grant and whatever you shall-have-judged about us
faciendum, faciat. Hoc igitur domino nostro suggerite, et ei
to-be-done let-him-do this therefore to-lord our suggest and him
pro Dei timore suadete, ut nos homines esse cogitet, ne
for of-God fear persuade that us men to-be he-may-reflect lest
ad periculum animae suae nos innocentes perdere desideret.
to the-danger of-soul his us innocent to-destroy he-desire
Si vestra sublimitas pigra vel minus pia in his agendis
if your highness slothful or less dutiful in these-things to-be-done
fuerit, districtum Dei iudicium nostras animas a vobis
shall-have-been strict of-God judgment our souls from you
exigere habebit. Quod si vestrum pium consilium rex
to-demand will-have which if your dutiful counsel the-king
forsitan audire noluerit, rogamus vos et obsecramus,
perhaps to-hear shall-have-been-unwilling we-ask you and beseech
ut saltem vos et vestros instrumentum sui furoris habere
that at-least you and yours as-an-instrument of-his fury to-have
non possit; ne dum furori eius ministratis, vitae vestrae
not he-may-be-able lest while to-the-fury his you-minister of-life your
et animae periculum incurratis. Valete.
and of-soul the-danger you-incur farewell

Henry will pardon the Saxons only if they surrender unconditionally, and they refuse. At Easter their messenger expounds their letter to the people, and Rudolf urges the king to war. Henry demands Burchard, Otto, and Frederick, whom the Saxons will offer only for judgment, and William and Frederick desert to him. His army surprises the Saxons near Behringen on 9 June 1075; a few fight bravely, the rest flee. Henry ravages Saxony, his men burn women in churches, and the Saxon princes beg for mercy.

Eundem sensum continentes vel litteris vel verbis legationes
the-same sense containing either in-letters or in-words embassies
cunctis ex illa parte principibus singuli principes nostri
to-all from that side princes individually princes our
miserunt, et tandem a rege vix, magis importunitate
sent and at-last from the-king scarcely more by-importunity
devicto quam pietate mollito, responsum hoc acceperunt,
overcome than by-mercy softened answer this they-received
quod hoc solo modo gratiam suam habere possent, si se
that in-this only way favor his to-have they-could if themselves
suamque libertatem et omnia quae possidebant, potestati regiae
and-their liberty and all-things which they-possessed to-the-power royal
sine omni condicione tradere voluissent. Quod facere
without any condition to-hand-over they-should-be-willing which to-do
rennuebant, quia nullius eum pietatis esse saepe experti fuerant.
they-refused because of-no him mercy to-be often experienced they-had
Anno igitur et amplius postquam de Saxonia rex
a-year therefore and more after from Saxony the-king
abiit evoluto, cum rex esset Maguntiae, in dominicae
went-away having-rolled-by when the-king was at-Mainz on of-the-Lord's
resurrectionis festo Saxonum nuntius illuc cum litteris venit,
resurrection the-feast of-the-Saxons a-messenger thither with a-letter came

quas Udoni Treverensi archiepiscopo, qui missas eo die
which to-Udo of-Trier archbishop who the-masses on-that day
celebrabat, cum stans in pulpito faceret populo sermonem
was-celebrating when standing in the-pulpit he-was-making to-the-people a-sermon
porrexit, et ut eas omni populo recitaret et exponeret, ex
he-held-out and that it to-all the-people he-should-read and expound from
omnium persona Saxonum pro Dei amore rogavit. Quod cum
of-all the-person of-the-Saxons for of-God love he-asked which when
rex fieri prohiberet, nuntius ipse litterarum sensum
the-king to-be-done forbade the-messenger himself of-the-letter the-sense
cuncto populo brevi sermone fidenter exposuit, et omnes
to-all the-people in-a-brief speech confidently expounded and all
qui Deum timerent, ne Saxoniam priusquam de aliquo crimine
who God feared lest Saxony before of any crime
convicta fuisset, armis invadere vellent, verbis omnium
convicted it-had-been with-arms to-invade they-should-wish in-the-words of-all
Saxonum postulavit. Sed dux Suevorum Rodulfus, foederis
the-Saxons he-demanded but the-duke of-the-Swabians Rudolf of-the-treaty
a Saxonibus cum rege subito compositi non oblitus, regem
by the-Saxons with the-king suddenly made not forgetful the-king
quatenus iniuriam cum Deo tum sibi suisque principibus
that the-injury both to-God and to-himself and-his princes
universis contumeliose factam non sine vindicta dimitteret
all insultingly done not without vengeance he-should-let-go
instigavit, et ei se cum tota virtute quam posset
urged and to-him himself with all the-strength which he-could
habere promisit. Idem ceteri principes universi fecerunt,
to-have promised the-same the-other princes all did
aliqui quidem multis promissionibus allecti, plures autem
some indeed by-many promises enticed more moreover
vicinae mortis necessitate, quam vitare non poterant, adducti.
of-near death by-the-necessity which to-avoid not they-could led

Quod ubi Saxonibus est auditum, tunc frequentes regi
which when by-the-Saxons was heard then frequent to-the-king
cunctisque primatibus legationes miserunt, obsecrantes ut
and-to-all the-chief-men embassies they-sent beseeching that
se cum ferro nollent innocentes invadere; quia si
them with the-sword they-would-not innocent to-invade because if
in aliquo rei maiestatis regiae ostenderentur, ad ipsorum
in anything guilty of-majesty royal they-were-shown at their
arbitrium parati essent poenas dare. Tunc rex archiepiscopo
judgment ready they-were penalties to-pay then the-king to-the-archbishop
Magedaburgensi cum quibusdam aliis suam gratiam mandavit,
of-Magdeburg with some others his favor sent-word
sibique a suis amicis esse consultum, ne totam gentem
and-that-to-himself by his friends to-be counseled lest the-whole nation
sine culpa deleret innotuit; quorum consilium se
without fault he-should-destroy made-known whose counsel himself
velle dixit audire, si isti vellent a suis inimicis discedere
to-wish he-said to-hear if these were-willing from their enemies to-depart
sibique Burchardum Halberstatensem episcopum, Ottonem
and-to-him Burchard of-Halberstadt bishop Otto
ducem, Fridericum praefectum palatii, cum ceteris quos
the-duke Frederick prefect of-the-palace with the-others whom
adhuc quaereret, traderent. Cui legationi cum consensu
still he-might-seek they-should-hand-over to-which embassy with the-consent
ipsorum qui poscebantur est responsum, ut ipsi
of-those-themselves who were-demanded it-was answered that they-themselves
ei hac condicione praesentarentur, quatenus sub utrorumque
to-him on-this condition should-be-presented that under of-both-sides
principum iudicio starent, ut eos illorum sententia
of-the-princes the-judgment they-should-stand that them by-their sentence
vel convictos damnaret, vel innoxios regis gratiae
either convicted he-should-condemn or harmless of-the-king to-the-favor

cum tota Saxonum gente reconciliaret. Sed Willehalmus
with all of-the-Saxons the-nation he-should-reconcile but William
rex agnomine, et Fridericus de Monte, cum viderent aperte
king by-surname and Frederick of the-Mount when they-saw openly
iam bellum coepisse, sacramenti quod cum ceteris Saxonibus
now war to-have-begun of-the-oath which with the-other Saxons
fecerant obliti, multarumque calamitatum quas ipsi
they-had-made forgetful and-of-the-many calamities which they-themselves
fuerant passi, necnon quod ipsi causa principalis
had suffered and-also that they-themselves the-cause principal
erant incipiendi belli, patriam infideles deseruerunt, et
were of-beginning the-war their-fatherland faithless deserted and
infideliores ad hostem patriae regem noctu transfugerunt.
more-faithless to the-enemy of-the-fatherland the-king by-night fled-across
Nam postea nec cives nec hostes eis fidem habebant, et
for afterward neither citizens nor enemies in-them trust had and
apud utrosque viles et infideles, despecti et miseri erant.
with both base and faithless despised and wretched they-were
Ergo rex cum toto quem poterat habere exercitu iuxte
therefore the-king with the-whole which he-could to-have army near
Beringa venit, ibique positis castris consedit. At ex alia parte
Beringa came and-there pitched the-camp encamped but on the-other side
Saxones circa Nechilstedi sua castra locant, et dum rex
the-Saxons around Nechilstedi their camp place and until the-king
eos ad concilium vocet expectant. Cumque verba quibus
them to council should-call wait and-when the-words by-which
suos accusatos volebant expurgare disponerent, aderat
their accused they-wished to-clear they-were-arranging there-was-present
nuntius regis, qui regem cum Saxonibus non verbis sed
a-messenger of-the-king who the-king with the-Saxons not with-words but
ferro disputare velle dicebat, et huic disceptationi diem
with-the-sword to-dispute to-wish said and for-this dispute the-day

crastinum determinabat. Nondum bene nuntius ille verba
following fixed not-yet well messenger that the-words
finierat, cum veniens alter regem cum toto exercitu
had-finished when coming another the-king with the-whole army
adventare dicebat. Quod primo non credentes, ubi nimis
to-be-approaching said which at-first not believing when too
verum esse cognoscunt, quia nec consilii locus erat ineundi
true to-be they-learn because neither of-counsel place was to-be-taken
nec exercitus ad proelium ordinandi, quod ex improviso
nor of-the-army for battle to-be-drawn-up which out-of the-unforeseen
deprensi solent facere, pauci quibus vel animus vel arma
caught they-are-wont to-do a-few to-whom either spirit or arms
fuerunt in promptu, fortiter ibant ad pugnam, plures vero,
were in readiness bravely went to the-fight more but
quibus longe vel animus vel arma erant, vertuntur in
to-whom far either spirit or arms were are-turned into
fugam. Verum ipsi pauci qui ad proelium perstiterunt,
flight but the-very few who in the-battle stood-firm
bene quantum poterant vel suam vel illorum qui fugerant
well as-far-as they-could either their-own or of-those who had-fled
vicem peregerunt. Nam nisi Deus ibi superbiam nostram
the-part performed for unless God there pride our
humiliare decrevisset, paucissimi nostri totum exercitum illum
to-humble had-decreed the-very-few of-us whole army that
in fugam vertissent. Postremi enim illorum nescientes,
into flight would-have-turned the-last for of-them not-knowing
quod nostrorum pars maior fugae se dedisset, coeperunt et
that of-ours part greater to-flight itself had-given began also
ipsi fugae praesidia quaerere, et nisi illi nostrorum fugam
themselves of-flight the-protections to-seek and unless they of-ours the-flight
prius agnovissent, fugiendo nobis victoriam reliquissent.
first had-learned by-fleeing to-us the-victory they-would-have-left

Quem cui belli casus daret occidere, nec ipsis
whom to-whom of-war the-chance granted to-kill not-even to-those-themselves
qui occidebant dabatur agnoscere, quia tanta fuit pulveris
who were-killing it-was-granted to-know because so-great was of-dust
facta commotio, ut cuiquam vix inter civem et hostem
made a-stirring that to-anyone scarcely between citizen and enemy
posset esse discretio. Hoc tamen comperimus, quod
could there-be distinction this nevertheless we-have-learned that
Udo noster marchio consobrinum suum Rodulfum ducem
Udo our margrave cousin his Rudolf the-duke
gladio fortiter percussit in faciem, et nisi nasus
with-the-sword bravely struck in the-face and unless the-nose-piece
galeae dependens fideliter defenderet, partem capitis
of-the-helmet hanging-down faithfully had-defended(-him) the-part of-the-head
ei superiorem penitus abscidisset. Fratres in illo
from-him upper utterly he-would-have-cut-off brothers in that
proelio fuere diversi, patres contra filios, necnon et alii
battle were on-different-sides fathers against sons and-also even other
affectus erant contra se divisi. Sed si quis scelus in suo
affections were against themselves divided but if anyone a-crime on his
propinquo faceret, a nemine poterat sciri. Saevissimum
kinsman did by no-one it-could to-be-known most-savage
quidem fuit illud proelium, sed brevissimo tempore peractum.
indeed was that battle but in-very-brief time accomplished
Nam nostri numero quam pauci sed virtute multi —
for ours in-number how few but in-valor many
ipsi enim hostes numquam tantos ictus gladiorum se
the-very for enemies never so-great blows of-swords themselves
fatebantur audisse — postquam se a suis desertos esse
confessed to-have-heard after themselves by their-own deserted to-be
viderunt et ipsi multos occidendo fatigati fuerunt, ex
they-saw and they-themselves many by-killing wearied had-been from

paucis pauciores paulatim se a periculo subtraxerunt
few fewer little-by-little themselves from danger withdrew
regique victoriae quidem gloriam, sed cum multa suorum
and-to-the-king of-victory indeed the-glory but with much of-his-own
ruina reliquerunt. Nam cum nostris ex partibus ex summis
ruin left for when our from sides from the-highest
principibus Gevehardus comes, ex mediis vero Folcmarus et
princes Gebhard the-count from the-middle but Folcmar and
Suidgerus cecidissent, ex illa parte iacuerunt octo primates,
Swidger had-fallen on that side lay eight chief-men
non minus ipso rege nobiles. Hoc proelium primum
not less than-the-very king noble this battle first
factum est anno Domini 1075, 5. Idus Iunii, feria
fought was in-the-year of-the-Lord 1075 on-the-fifth Ides of-June on-the-day
tertia.
third
Ergo rex adepta cum multo suorum cruore victoria
therefore the-king having-obtained with much of-his-own blood the-victory
aliquot dies intra sua castra manebat, donec eos quos de
some days within his camp remained until those whom of
suis metus disperserat recollegit, et mortuos suos vel
his-own fear had-scattered he-recollected and the-dead his either
sepeliri vel in patriam sepeliendos fecit deportari. Deinde
to-be-buried or to their-homeland to-be-buried caused to-be-carried then
Saxoniam nimis laetus intravit, quam sic prostratam, ut
Saxony exceedingly glad he-entered which thus laid-low that
ulterius non resurgeret aestimavit. Obvia quaeque
further not it-should-rise-again he-thought things-in-the-way each
praedando diripuit aut incendio consumpsit. Si pagani nos ita
by-plundering he-ravaged or by-fire consumed if pagans us so
vicissent, non maiorem in victos crudelitatem exercerent.
had-conquered not greater on the-conquered cruelty they-would-exercise

Feminis nil profuit in ecclesias fugisse vel illuc suas
to-the-women nothing it-availed into churches to-have-fled or thither their
res comportasse. Nam viri per silvas diffugerant, vel
goods to-have-carried for the-men through forests had-scattered or
ubicunque spem salutis invenire latendo potuerant. Feminas
wherever hope of-safety to-find by-hiding they-had-been-able the-women
in ipsis ecclesiis, etiam si fugissent ad altare, corrumpebant,
in the-very churches even if they-had-fled to the-altar they-defiled
suaque libidine barbaro more completa, feminas cum ecclesiis
and-their lust in-barbarous fashion fulfilled the-women with the-churches
comburebant. Principes vero nostri diversas munitiones
they-burned the-princes but our diverse fortresses
intraverunt et inde legationes regis principibus obviam
entered and thence embassies of-the-king to-the-princes to-meet(-them)
miserunt, obsecrantes ut vel nunc Deo de sua gloria
sent beseeching that at-least now to-God for their glory
gratias agerent, et fratribus suis in Christo pro Christi
thanks they-should-give and to-brothers their in Christ for of-Christ
nomine vel victis parcerent. Quarum legationum quasdam
the-name at-least conquered they-should-spare of-which embassies some
supponere complacuit, ut ex his lector ceteras, quia
to-place-below it-has-pleased that from these the-reader the-others because
omnes eundem sensum habebant, agnoscere possit.
all the-same sense had to-recognize he-may-be-able

Werner writes to Siegfried of Mainz and Adalbero of Würzburg, asking them to plead with Henry for mercy: he came not to fight but to present the accused for judgment, and he asks for a place to meet them and the dukes and abide by their verdict. To other bishops he writes that he is punished without being accused, and that those who consent share the guilt of burning churches. Frederick of Münster urges him to make peace on any terms, and Werner replies.

Sigifrido Magontino et Adalberoni Wirceburgensi, praesulibus
to-Siegfried of-Mainz and to-Adalbero of-Würzburg prelates
sanctissimis, Werinherus solo nomine Magedaburgensis
most-holy Werner only in-name of-Magdeburg
episcopus, quicquid humilius potest et devotius. Quia vos
bishop whatever more-humbly can-be and more-devoutly because you
duos duorum praeceptorum Dei flamma plus aliis
two of-the-two commandments of-God with-the-flame more than-others
fervere non dubito, specialiter ad vos duos supplex confugio,
to-burn not I-doubt especially to you two a-suppliant I-flee
rogans et obsecrans, ut in hoc perfectam Dei caritatem,
asking and beseeching that in this the-perfect of-God charity
sicut confido vos habere, probetis, ut in miseros fratres
as I-trust you to-have you-may-prove that toward wretched brothers
misericordiae viscera misericorditer habeatis. Cogitate quia,
of-mercy the-bowels mercifully you-may-have think that
sicut vos melius quam ego novistis, quicquid alicui gratia
as you better than I know whatever to-anyone grace
divina largitur, hoc ei vice talenti de quo rationem
divine bestows this to-him in-place of-a-talent for which account
venturo iudici reddat imputatur. Itaque quia vobis
to-the-coming judge he-must-render is-reckoned and-so because to-you
familiaritatem coram domino nostro rege regis coelestis
familiarity before lord our the-king of-the-king heavenly

misericordia voluit concedere, sic ipsam familiaritatem facite
the-mercy wished to-grant so the-very familiarity make
cunctis qui vestro indigent auxilio prodesse, ut et omnis
to-all who your need help to-be-of-use that both everyone
qui vestro sublevatus fuerit auxilio, de vestra felicitate
who by-your relieved shall-have-been help over your happiness
gaudeat, et ipse Deus aeternam mercedem vobis pro lucro
may-rejoice and the-very God eternal reward to-you for the-gain
talenti tribuat. Inprimis igitur meam causam cum domino
of-the-talent may-grant first therefore my cause with lord
nostro dignetur misericordia vestra misericorditer tractare,
our may-deign mercy your mercifully to-handle
scilicet quia semper volui et volo pro viribus meis, et
namely that always I-have-wished and I-wish with strength my and
ultra vires, eius honori servire. Quod si me forte maiestas
beyond strength his honor to-serve which if me perhaps majesty
eius accusat, quia nuper quasi pugnaturus cum eo venerim,
his accuses because lately as-if about-to-fight with him I-came
hoc quod ipsa veritas, quae Christus est, novit verum esse
this which the-very truth which Christ is knows true to-be
respondete, me nulla pugnandi causa venisse, sed ob
answer me for-no of-fighting cause to-have-come but on-account-of
hoc solum, sicut coram legatis eius fuerat constitutum, ut
this only as before envoys his had-been agreed that
eos quos in nostris partibus suos vocaverat inimicos, volentes
those whom in our parts his he-had-called enemies willing
sive nolentes ei praesentarem, quatenus vestro aliorumque
or unwilling to-him I-might-present that by-your and-of-the-other
principum iudicio vel in crimine deprehensi iusto supplicio
princes judgment either in crime caught to-just punishment
subiacerent, vel innocentes inventi vobis intercedentibus
they-might-be-subject or innocent found you interceding

gratiam eius reciperent. Quorum causam quia non est
favor his might-receive whose cause because not he-has
dignatus accipere, quid me nisi, sicut feci, decebat abscedere?
deigned to-accept what me except as I-did befitted to-withdraw
Si alias michi quaslibet culpas imponet, ne longum
if other to-me any faults he-will-impute not long
faciam, vestram aliorumque eiusdem ordinis virorum
I-may-make(-it) your and-of-the-other of-the-same order men
patiar sententiam. Deinde domino nostro regi dignetur
I-shall-suffer the-sentence then to-lord our the-king may-deign
almitas vestra suggerere, ut recordetur se coelestis regis
graciousness your to-suggest that he-may-remember himself of-the-heavenly king
vicem simul et nomen habere, qui dicit se misericordiam
the-office together and the-name to-have who says himself mercy
magis velle quam sacrificium, et qui venit non ut
rather to-wish than sacrifice and who came not that
iudicet mundum sed ut salvetur mundus per ipsum;
he-might-judge the-world but that might-be-saved the-world through him
quatenus dum hoc recogitans eum, cuius est membrum
so-that while this reconsidering him whose he-is member
et cuius nomen habet, actibus studet imitari, mereatur
and whose name he-has in-acts he-strives to-imitate he-may-deserve
in regno coelesti beatitudinis aeternae gloria coronari.
in the-kingdom heavenly of-blessedness eternal with-the-glory to-be-crowned
Per totum fere annum litteris aliisque legationibus nostris
through the-whole nearly year by-letters and-other embassies our
omnes fere principes regni suppliciter adivimus, et
all nearly the-princes of-the-kingdom suppliantly we-approached and
ut nobis copiam coram veniendi acquirerent oravimus,
that for-us an-opportunity before(-him) of-coming they-might-acquire we-prayed
quatenus eorum iudicio vel noxii damnaremur vel innoxii
so-that by-their judgment either guilty we-might-be-condemned or guiltless

solveremur. Quod quia numquam impetrare potuimus,
we-might-be-released which because never to-obtain we-could
iterum vos et omnes Dei fideles suppliciter oramus, ut
again you and all of-God the-faithful suppliantly we-pray that
saltem nunc, postquam iram suam nostro cruore satiavit,
at-least now after the-anger his with-our blood he-has-glutted
postquam Deus illi sicut oportebat honorem donavit,
after God to-him as was-fitting honor has-given
furorem deponat, Deo gloriam reddat, et quod ante
the-fury he-may-lay-aside to-God glory he-may-render and what before
sanguinem effusum fecisse poterat, nunc tanto sanguine
the-blood shed to-have-done he-could now so-much blood
fuso faciat. Det nobis locum, ubi vobiscum et cum
shed he-may-do let-him-give to-us a-place where with-you and with
Rodulfo, Berchtaldo, Godefrido ducibus convenire possimus,
Rudolf Berthold Godfrey dukes to-assemble we-may-be-able
et in quacunque re vobis culpabiles esse videbimur, omni
and in whatever matter to-you guilty to-be we-shall-seem all
voluntate nostra deposita vestrae prudentiae iudicium
will our having-been-laid-aside of-your prudence the-judgment
volentes patiemur. Nulla fuit unquam in quolibet pagano tanta
willing we-shall-suffer none was ever in any pagan so-great
crudelitas, ut quos sine omni periculo vel labore suae
cruelty that those-whom without any danger or labor to-his
dominationi subdere potuisset, non sine suo suorumque
dominion to-subject he-could-have not without his-own and-of-his-men
periculo sibi subicere vellet. Quod si nostrum
danger to-himself to-subject he-would-wish which if our
sanguinem, dum nichil eius supersit, laborat effundere,
blood until nothing of-it remain he-labors to-shed
cogitet hoc non facile fieri posse sine suorum
let-him-reflect this not easily to-be-done to-be-able without of-his-own

aliqua commixtione. Itaque si nobis nullam misericordiam
some mingling and-so if to-us no mercy
facere disponit, saltem suorum manibus et gladiis parcere
to-show he-arranges at-least of-his-own the-hands and swords to-spare
velit. Haec igitur et si qua potueritis
let-him-be-willing these-things therefore and if any you-shall-have-been-able
aptiora, domino nostro suggerite, eique ut Deum timeat,
more-fitting to-lord our suggest and-him that God he-may-fear
populumque cui rector est datus, non perdat sed
and-the-people to-which as-ruler he-is given not he-may-destroy but
custodiat suadete: ut et ille si vos audierit, et vos
may-guard persuade that both he if you he-shall-have-heard and you
si bene suaserititis, aeternam mercedem recipiatis.
if well you-shall-have-persuaded eternal reward you-may-receive
Domnis N. et N. sacerdotibus sanctis ceterisque viris eiusdem
to-lords N and N priests holy and-to-the-other men of-the-same
virtutis et ordinis, Werinherus plenus omni miseria, aeterna
virtue and order Werner full of-all misery in-eternal
participari misericordia. Quamvis omnes supplicationes, quas
to-share mercy although all supplications which
vestrae paternitati verbis vel litteris feci, nichil michi adhuc
to-your paternity by-words or by-letters I-have-made nothing to-me yet
videam profuisse, tamen iterum vestrae pietati non cesso
I-see to-have-profited yet again to-your piety not I-cease
supplicare, ut si vos nec mea innocentis calamitas, nec
to-make-supplication that if you neither my of-an-innocent calamity nor
quae vel nocentibus solet misereri, flectit ulla pietas, saltem vos
which even on-the-guilty is-wont to-have-pity bends any mercy at-least you
taedio suo mea vincat importunitas. Per omnipotentis
by-the-weariness its my may-overcome importunity by of-almighty
igitur Dei clementiam vos rogo pariter et moneo, praesules
therefore God the-clemency you I-ask alike and I-admonish prelates

sanctissimi, ut in me vos ipsos considerare dignemini, et
most-holy that in me you yourselves to-consider you-may-deign and
me non solum in nullo crimine convictum, sed nec de ullo
me not only in no crime convicted but not-even of any
crimine compellatum, condemnari ne patiamini. Culpa michi
crime accused to-be-condemned not you-should-allow let-a-fault on-me
prius imponatur, defensionis michi locus donetur, ubi vel
first be-imposed of-defense to-me let-a-place be-given where either
nocens vestro iudicio dignum cogar subire supplicium,
guilty by-your judgment the-deserved I-may-be-compelled to-undergo punishment
vel innocens vestrum sub gratia domini nostri merear
or innocent your under the-favor of-lord our I-may-merit
habere consortium. Quis enim fuit unquam iuste prius
to-have fellowship who for was ever justly before
damnatus, quam de aliquo crimine fuisset accusatus? Nondum
condemned than of some crime he-had-been accused not-yet
michi cognovi culpam quamlibet imponi, et iam quasi
on-me I-have-learned a-fault any to-be-imposed and already as-if
criminum plurimorum convictus poenas saevissimas dedi.
of-crimes very-many convicted penalties most-savage I-have-paid
Quod si me quisquam domino meo fuisse vel esse perfidum
which if me anyone to-lord my to-have-been or to-be faithless
criminatur, non minus quam qui dixit Domino: 'Demonium
accuses not less than he-who said to-the-Lord a-demon
habes' mentitur. Haec igitur cum domino nostro clementer
you-have lies these-things therefore with lord our clemently
tractate, et ut se regem esse recogitet suadete, et unde
handle and that himself king to-be he-may-reflect persuade and whence
rex sit appellatus edocete. Vestra quoque sapientia dignetur
king he-is called teach your also wisdom may-deign
secum pensare, cuius vel quanti criminis sit, ecclesiarum
with-itself to-weigh of-what or how-great crime it-is of-churches

bona vastare, ipsas ecclesias polluere vel incendere; et si
the-goods to-lay-waste the-very churches to-pollute or to-burn and if
ullum vel magnum crimen esse videatur, in hoc vos domino
any or great crime to-be it-seem in this you to-lord
nostro fideles esse probate, ut dum eum ab iniusto revocatis,
our faithful to-be prove that while him from the-unjust you-recall
eius animam ab incendio gehennae liberetis; ne dum ille
his soul from the-burning of-Gehenna you-may-free lest while he
externa sanctorum bona iniuste devastat, internis bonis
the-outward of-the-saints goods unjustly lays-waste of-the-inward goods
sanctorum gratia privatus iuste careat. Recordetur
of-the-saints of-the-grace deprived justly he-may-be-without may-remember
etiam prudentia vestra, quia mortem minatur apostolus non
also prudence your that death threatens the-apostle not
solum morte digna facientibus sed etiam consentientibus.
only of-death worthy(-things) to-those-doing but also to-those-consenting
Fridericus vero, Monasterii praesul venerandus, quia de
Frederick but of-Münster prelate venerable because from
nostris partibus erat oriundus et Magedaburgensis ecclesiae
our parts he-was sprung and of-the-Magdeburg church
fuerat olim canonicus, archiepiscopo Magedaburgensi litteras
had-been formerly canon to-the-archbishop of-Magdeburg a-letter
misit, quibus eum commonuit, ut quocunque modo potuisset,
sent by-which him he-admonished that in-whatever way he-could
pacem facere cum rege satageret. Quibus litteris has
peace to-make with the-king he-should-busy-himself to-which letter this
litteras Magedaburgensis archipraesul remisit:
letter of-Magdeburg the-archbishop sent-back

Werner answers that the Saxons were never heard before being punished, but that they will accept any peace that does them no further harm. The relics of Saint Sebastian keep Henry out of the bishopric of Magdeburg. Famine drives the king from Saxony, but he returns in October and meets the Saxon army at Everha. Rudolf and Berthold, who have vowed not to fight the Saxons again, promise the princes a short, mild captivity; the princes surrender, and the people go home in sorrow.

Sacerdoti Dei Friderico sanctissimo, Werinherus eo quod
to-the-priest of-God Frederick most-holy Werner in-that which
vocatur indignus, devotos fraternae servitutis affectus. Quamvis
he-is-called unworthy devoted of-brotherly service affections although
eo moerore, quem nova tribulatio genuit, ita sim plenus,
with-that grief which a-new tribulation has-begotten so I-am full
ut in penetralibus cordis mei nullus ulli gaudio possit
that in the-inmost-recesses of-heart my no for-any joy can
inveniri locus, consolationis tamen vestrae litteras ut accepi,
to-be-found place of-consolation yet your letter when I-received
non parum lacrimas moeroris repressi, quia nonnullum
not a-little the-tears of-grief I-held-back because some
lenimen doloris habeo, cum vel unum fratrem fraterno
solace of-pain I-have when even one brother with-brotherly
dolore dolere video. Tunc autem solido gaudio gauderem, si
pain to-grieve I-see then moreover with-solid joy I-would-rejoice if
vos sicut tribulationem quam sumus experti, sic innocentiam
you as the-tribulation which we-have experienced so the-innocence
nostram considerare viderem, vel si consilium, quod michi
our to-consider I-saw or if the-counsel which to-me
de facienda pace datis, ut ipsa re fieret adiuvare
about to-be-made peace you-give that in-the-very fact it-might-happen to-help

possetis. Ut enim a rege nostro cunctisque regni
you-could that for by king our and-all of-the-kingdom
principibus, maximeque ab episcopis nostris confratribus, igni
the-princes and-especially by bishops our fellow-brothers with-fire
ferroque terra nostra vastaretur, quod crimen nostrum tale
and-sword land our should-be-laid-waste what crime our such
praecessit? Vel si ullum fuit, in quo concilio sacerdotum, in
went-before or if any there-was in what council of-priests in
quo placito principum declaratum patuit? Quando vocati
what assembly of-princes declared it-was-shown when summoned
ad satisfactionem venire contempsimus? A quibus accusati et
to satisfaction to-come did-we-scorn by whom accused and
convicti sumus? Immo postquam domini nostri regis iram,
convicted were-we nay after of-lord our the-king the-anger
licet sine causa, in nos exarsisse cognovimus, singulos
although without cause against us to-have-flared we-learned individual
principes, sacerdotes et laicos, scriptis et dictis suppliciter
princes priests and laymen in-writings and words suppliantly
oravimus, ut coram veniendi copiam nobis impetrarent,
we-prayed that before(-him) of-coming the-opportunity for-us they-should-obtain
quatenus aut criminosi ipsorum iudicio damnaremur,
that either criminal by-their judgment we-might-be-condemned
aut sine crimine cum pace et gratia domini nostri
or without crime with peace and the-favor of-lord our
dimitteremur. Quod cum nobis nichil prodesse videremus,
we-might-be-dismissed which when to-us nothing to-profit we-saw
ipsi domino nostro legationem sicut humiles servi saepe
to-the-very lord our an-embassy as humble servants often
fecimus, supplicantes ut nos vel in crimine deprehensos
we-made beseeching that us either in crime caught
iudicio principum palam damnaret, vel sine crimine
by-the-judgment of-the-princes openly he-should-condemn or without crime

repertos gratiae suae serenitate donaret. Hac igitur
found of-favor his with-the-serenity he-should-present this therefore
de culpa terram nostram saevus vastator invasit, igni
on-account-of fault land our the-savage devastator invaded with-fire
ferroque paene desertam reddidit. Quod si soli laici in
and-sword almost deserted he-rendered(-it) which if alone laymen in
illo exercitu fuissent, forsitan ecclesiis et ecclesiasticis rebus
that army had-been perhaps the-churches and ecclesiastical things
pepercissent. Nunc vero quia plurimi sacerdotes aderant,
they-would-have-spared now but because very-many priests were-present
nulli rei sacrae parcebant, sed ecclesias quas vel ipsi
no thing sacred they-spared but the-churches which either they-themselves
vel fratres eorum consecraverant, igne nefario succendi
or brothers their had-consecrated with-fire impious to-be-set-ablaze
videbant, nec contradicebant. Quid igitur tunc laici facerent,
they-saw nor objected what therefore then the-laymen were-to-do
cum episcopos ut talia fierent consentire vel etiam instigare
when the-bishops that such-things be-done to-consent or even to-urge
viderent. Sed ut haec gesta sint, quamvis ante simus
they-saw but though these-things done have-been although before we-have-been
ultra modum puniti quam aliquo modo in culpa qualibet
beyond measure punished than in-any way in fault any
inventi, quamvis ab illis simus caede et incendio sine
found although by those we-have-been by-slaughter and fire without
culpa vastati, a quibus nos oporteret vel in aperto crimine
fault laid-waste by whom us it-behooved even in open crime
defendi; tamen de facienda pace consilio vestrae pietatis
to-be-defended yet about to-be-made peace in-the-counsel of-your piety
acquiescimus, si eam fieri posse sine maiore damno nostro
we-acquiesce if it to-be-done to-be-able without greater loss our
viderimus. Illarum partium principes in aliquem locum,
we-shall-have-seen of-those parts the-princes to some place

quo nos tuti possimus occurrere veniant, nosque sua
whither we safely may-be-able to-meet let-them-come and-us by-their
sapientia quid nunc acturi simus edoceant; quia quicquid
wisdom what now about-to-do we-are let-them-teach because whatever
eis placuerit, dummodo nobis vel posteris nostris
to-them shall-have-pleased provided-that to-us or to-descendants our
non noceat, noster consensus concorditer implebit. Quod si
not it-harm our consent harmoniously will-fulfill which if
paternitas vestra suscipiens hanc operam opere complebit, cum
paternity your undertaking this work by-deed will-complete with
coelesti praemio nos omnes fideles semper amicos habebit.
heavenly reward us all faithful always friends it-will-have
Ipso tempore Deus omnipotens urbi Magedaburgensi
at-that-very time God almighty to-the-city of-Magdeburg
per sanctorum merita, qui ibi plures habentur, magnam
through of-the-saints the-merits who there many are-kept great
misericordiam ostendit, et ipsam urbem totumque illud
mercy showed and the-very city and-all that
episcopium a crudeli regis invasione ita mirabiliter
bishopric from the-cruel of-the-king invasion so wonderfully
defendit, ut nulli qui hoc cognovit liceat dubitare,
defended that to-none who this learned be-it-allowed to-doubt
ipsorum meritis sanctorum tunc illam civitatem incolumem
of-the-very by-the-merits of-the-saints then that city unharmed
permansisse. Nam cuidam ancillae Dei ante proelium per
to-have-remained for to-a-certain handmaid of-God before the-battle through
visionem fuerat revelatum, si caput sancti Sebastiani, quod
a-vision it-had-been revealed if the-head of-Saint Sebastian which
in eadem civitate cum multa veneratione habetur, circa
in the-same city with much veneration is-kept around
terminos episcopii fuisset portatum, eosdem terminos nullus
the-boundaries of-the-bishopric had-been carried the-same boundaries none

posset intrare hostium. Quod cum ipsa Meginfrido, eiusdem
could to-enter of-the-enemies which when she to-Meginfrid of-the-same
urbis praefecto, et praefectus, antequam exirent ad bellum,
city prefect and the-prefect before they-went-out to war
nobis audientibus archipraesuli nostro retulisset, peracto iam
in-our hearing to-archbishop our had-reported ended now
proelio caput ipsum omnes terminos nostros, antequam
the-battle the-head itself all boundaries our before
rex veniret, circuire fecimus; et ita esse sicut ancilla
the-king came to-go-around we-caused and so to-be as the-handmaid
Dei praedixerat, ex ipso rerum eventu comperimus. Nam
of-God had-foretold from the-very of-things outcome we-learned for
ubicunque rex ad ipsos terminos venit, divino nutu
wherever the-king to those boundaries came by-divine nod
perterritus rediens, nusquam illud episcopium intravit.
terrified returning nowhere that bishopric did-he-enter
Sed cum rex exercitu comitante venisset Goslariam,
but when the-king with-the-army accompanying(-him) had-come to-Goslar
ibique a quibusdam nostris episcopis triumphali susceptus
and-there by some of-our bishops with-triumphal received
esset gloria, ab amicis suis quid sibi foret agendum
had-been glory from friends his what for-himself would-be to-be-done
quaesivit, et vix quod sibi utile esset invenire potuit. Nam
he-asked and scarcely what to-himself useful would-be to-find he-could for
consilium quod ei dederunt paene omnes, ut Deo de victoria
the-counsel which to-him they-gave almost all that to-God for victory
sua gratiam ageret et Saxones in pacem et gratiam suam
his thanks he-should-give and the-Saxons into peace and favor his
sicut rex christianus reciperet, non accepit; quod vero ipse
as a-king Christian should-receive not he-accepted what but he-himself
solus volebat, ut statim cunctos suae servituti subiceret, ad
alone wished that at-once all to-his service he-should-subject for

praesens implere non potuit. Nam nec principes omnes capere
the-present to-fulfill not he-could for neither the-princes all to-capture
valebat, quia per diversa dispersi fuerant, nec diu cum
he-was-able because through different-places dispersed they-had-been nor long with
exercitu in hac terra manere potuit, quia fames in illo anno
the-army in this land to-remain he-could because famine in that year
nobis tunc utilis fuerat, et Iulius mensis fruges adhuc maturas
to-us then useful had-been and July the-month crops yet ripe
non exhibebat; nec vero tutum putabat sine exercitu tunc
not was-showing nor indeed safe he-thought without an-army then
in Saxonia remanere. Abiit ergo cum toto exercitu, et
in Saxony to-remain he-went-away therefore with the-whole army and
Saxoniam sicut prius habuit in incerto. Nam postquam recessit,
Saxony as before he-held in uncertainty for after he-withdrew
Saxones iterum congregantur, Deumque quod eos misericorditer
the-Saxons again are-gathered and-God because them mercifully
castigans non penitus opprimi permiserit, humili devotione
chastising not utterly to-be-crushed he-had-allowed with-humble devotion
collaudant, et se invicem quatenus unanimiter pro
they-praise and themselves mutually that with-one-mind for
sua libertate tota virtute pugnent adhortantur; Deique
their liberty with-all strength they-should-fight exhort and-of-God
misericordiam non ex toto sibi sublatam inde
the-mercy not from the-whole from-themselves removed thence
coniectant, quia quasi paterna pietate flagellati, ad recipiendam
they-infer because as-if with-paternal mercy scourged for recovering
virtutem discessu regis oportunum tempus acceperant.
strength by-the-departure of-the-king a-fitting time they-had-received
Interea rex totum exercitum iterum congregabat, ut
meanwhile the-king the-whole army again was-gathering that
Octobri mense Saxoniam ingressus fruges, quas Iulio mense
in-October the-month Saxony having-entered the-crops which in-July the-month

multas in agris viderat, aut utendo aut comburendo
many in the-fields he-had-seen either by-using or by-burning
consumeret populumque totum vel rebellem gladio
he-might-consume and-the-people whole either rebellious to-the-sword
devorandum daret, vel humilem perpetuae servituti
to-be-devoured he-might-give or humble to-perpetual servitude
subiceret. Econtra Saxones magno iam periculo facti
he-might-subject on-the-other-hand the-Saxons by-great now danger made
prudentes, cum non minore venerunt exercitu, iam non sicut
prudent with not smaller came an-army now not as
antea fugaces terga daturi, sed fortiter pro sua libertate
before fleeing their-backs about-to-turn but bravely for their liberty
pugnaturi, ita ut eam vel Dei auxilio firmiter retinerent,
about-to-fight so that it either of-God by-the-help firmly they-might-retain
vel cum vita simul amitterent. Ergo ambo exercitus in loco
or with life together they-might-lose therefore both armies in the-place
qui dicitur Everha convenerunt, et a se non loco sed
which is-called Everha came-together and from each-other not in-place but
animo longe fuerunt. Tamen exercitus regis ad proelium
in-mind far were nevertheless the-army of-the-king for battle
non ut antea promptus erat, quia non sicut audierat inbelles
not as before ready was because not as it-had-heard unwarlike
esse Saxones expertus fuerat; et magna sibi pars de priori
to-be the-Saxons found it-had and a-great to-itself part of the-former
multitudine deerat. Nam Bertholdus et Rodulfus duces
multitude was-lacking for Berthold and Rudolf the-dukes
postquam a priori sunt proelio reversi, divina pietate
after from the-former they-have battle returned by-divine mercy
compuncti quadragesimas publice ieiunaverunt, et amplius
pricked Lents publicly they-fasted and further
se pro rege contra Saxonum innocentiam non esse
themselves for the-king against of-the-Saxons the-innocence not to-be

pugnaturos, fideliter Deo voverunt. Tunc illi ad Saxones
about-to-fight faithfully to-God vowed then they to the-Saxons
miserunt; et accepta dataque fide, ad secretum consilium
sent and received and-given faith to a-secret council
principes ex utraque parte convenerunt. Ibi illi nostris in sua
the-princes from each side came-together there they to-ours on their
fide promiserunt, quod si se sponte tradendo regi
faith promised that if themselves voluntarily by-surrendering to-the-king
vellent honorem facere, et tota Saxonia quieta staret in
they-would-wish honor to-do and all Saxony quiet should-stand in
pace, et ipsi nec in dura nec in longa forent captivitate.
peace also they-themselves neither in harsh nor in long would-be captivity
Fama quoque testante comperimus, quod rex suis iurasset
report also testifying we-learned that the-king to-his had-sworn
principibus, ut si hoc ad honorem suum perficerent, in
princes that if this for honor his they-should-accomplish at
principio Novembris proximi omnes ad sua cum pace et
the-beginning of-November next all to their-own with peace and
gratia sua dimitteret. Igitur omnes episcopi nostri, duces,
favor his he-would-dismiss therefore all the-bishops our dukes
comites ceterique maiores, manu fidei ab illis accepta
counts and-the-other greater-men the-hand of-faith from them received
regiae potestati se sponte tradiderunt, totumque
to-the-royal power themselves voluntarily surrendered and-the-whole
populum suum valde tristem in patriam redire iusserunt.
people their very sad into the-homeland to-return they-ordered

Henry ignores his promises, scatters the captive princes into custody, gives Ekbert's lands to his favorite Udalric, and garrisons Saxony. At Christmas he plans to murder Duke Otto, who seizes a guard's sword, rouses his keeper the bishop, and is spared, then becomes the king's trusted counselor. The clergy and people of Magdeburg write to Udo to thank him for his kindness to their captive archbishop and to beg for his release.

Distributis ergo per custodias principibus nostris rex
distributed therefore among places-of-custody princes our the-king
omisso exercitu Saxoniam cum magna gloria ingreditur,
having-dismissed the-army Saxony with great glory enters
et ab his qui domi erant cum maiore gloria suscipitur. Nam
and by those who at-home were with greater glory is-received for
sperabant eum, sicut promiserat, cum pace et pietate venire,
they-hoped him as he-had-promised with peace and mercy to-come
omnesque suas iniurias oblivioni perpetuae tradere. At ille, suae
and-all their injuries to-oblivion perpetual to-hand-over but he of-his
promissionis oblitus, nec Deo pro victoria, quam sic leviter
promise forgetful neither to-God for the-victory which thus lightly
acceperat, dignas laudes humiliter reddidit, nec illam quam
he-had-received worthy praises humbly rendered nor that which
tunc habebat gloriam unquam se disperditurum credidit.
then he-had glory ever himself about-to-lose believed
Quod si regi regum se tunc humiliter substerneret et
which if to-the-king of-kings himself then humbly he-had-submitted and
in victos misericordiam Dei ostenderet, non solum quos
toward the-conquered the-mercy of-God had-shown not only whom
vicerat Saxones, sed omnes quibus imperabat gentes,
he-had-conquered the-Saxons but all over-whom he-ruled nations
timere se pariter et amare faceret, et ad illas etiam
to-fear him alike and to-love he-would-have-made and to those even

nationes quae sibi non subiacebant, gloriae suae famam cunctis
nations which to-him not were-subject of-glory his the-fame by-all
laudandam transmitteret. Quia vero crudelitatis antiquae non
to-be-praised would-have-sent because but of-cruelty old not
immemor, timeri tantum nec amari curabat, nec Saxones
unmindful to-be-feared only nor to-be-loved he-cared neither the-Saxons
sibi fideles nec alias sui regni nationes devotas habebat,
to-himself faithful nor the-other of-his kingdom nations devoted he-had
et ingentem apud exteras gentes laudem, quam posset habere,
and the-huge among foreign peoples praise which he-could to-have
perdebat. Amicis enim non minus quam hostibus crudelis fuit,
he-was-losing to-friends for not less than to-enemies cruel he-was
nisi quod in amicos crudelitatem prius exercebat, ut hostes
except that on friends cruelty first he-practiced that enemies
ex hoc cognoscerent, quid sibi futurum sperarent.
from this might-learn what for-themselves about-to-be they-should-expect
Ekkiberti denique marchionis, qui Saxonibus nullum fecerat
of-Ekbert finally the-margrave who to-the-Saxons no had-given
auxilium, sed regi, utpote valde propinquo genere, toto
help but the-king as-being very near in-kin with-whole
animo favebat, possessiones prius invadit easque Othelrico,
mind favored the-possessions first he-invades and-them to-Udalric
cuidam de suis consiliariis, donavit. Hic Othelricus de
a-certain of his counselors he-gave this Udalric of
Godesheim oriundus fuit, et quia Dei timorem penitus
Godesheim sprung was and because of-God the-fear utterly
abiecerat, Godeshaz agnomen habebat, quia vere ex odio
he-had-cast-off Godeshaz as-surname he-had because truly from hatred
Dei venerat, quod ille regi familiariter adhaerebat
of-God he-had-come that he to-the-king familiarly clung
regisque mentem pro suo velle disponebat. Deinde
and-of-the-king the-mind according-to his-own will arranged then

nostrorum bona captivorum, quae ipsis manere debebant
of-our the-goods captives which to-themselves to-remain ought
integra si fides fuisset ei integra, suis parasitis largitur;
whole if faith had-been in-him whole to-his parasites he-lavishes
et quae suis principibus in nos bona promisit, cuncta
and what to-his princes against us goods he-promised all
mentitur. Tunc urbes et castella vel quascunque munitiones
he-lies-about then the-cities and castles or whatever fortifications
adhuc habebat Saxonia, suis sequacibus commendavit; et ut
still had Saxony to-his followers he-entrusted and that
per totam regionem tyrannidem exercerent imperavit.
through the-whole region tyranny they-should-practice commanded
Natalis dominici festivitatem, ubi 1076. annus ab
of-the-Nativity of-the-Lord the-feast when 1076 the-year from
incarnatione Domini inchoatur, convocatis ad se suarum
the-incarnation of-the-Lord is-begun having-summoned to himself of-his-own
partium episcopis, animo non festivo Goslariae celebravit,
side the-bishops with-mind not festive at-Goslar he-celebrated
quia festum salutis humanae principium Ottonis occisione
because the-feast of-salvation human the-beginning of-Otto by-the-slaying
nefanda contaminare disposuit; quem Christus ad honorem
unspeakable to-defile he-arranged whom Christ for the-honor
suae nativitatis eadem gratia mirabiliter eripuit, qua
of-his nativity with-the-same grace wonderfully snatched-away with-which
ad liberandum genus humanum ipso tempore Deus homo
for freeing the-race human at-that-very time God man
fieri voluit. Nam ipsum ducem Roperto Babenbergensi
to-become wished for the-very duke to-Rupert of-Bamberg
episcopo servandum commiserat, et episcopus eum in castello
bishop to-be-kept he-had-committed and the-bishop him in castle
quodam, dum ipse pergeret ad curtem regiam, militibus suis
a-certain while he-himself went to the-court royal to-soldiers his

custodiendum tradiderat. At rex illuc episcopo nesciente
to-be-guarded had-handed-over but the-king thither the-bishop not-knowing
misit ducemque ad se duci praecepit, ita ut temporum
sent and-the-duke to himself to-be-led ordered so that of-the-times
vicibus mutatis per noctes irent et per dies noctium
the-turns changed by nights they-should-go and by days of-nights
vice quiescerent. Cumque in media nocte a quatuor
in-place rest and-when in the-middle-of the-night by four
armatis inermis ipse ductus Goslariam venisset, et illi per
armed-men unarmed he-himself led to-Goslar had-come and they through
curtem ad silvam tendere voluissent, tunc primum intellexit
the-court to the-forest to-make-for had-wished then first he-understood
quod in silva se occidere iussi fuissent. Igitur eos rogat,
that in the-forest him to-kill ordered they-had-been therefore them he-asks
ut sibi ad monasterium orare liceat. Quod ei cum
that to-him at the-monastery to-pray it-may-be-allowed which to-him when
fuisset negatum, subito unius ipsorum gladium comprehendit
it-had-been refused suddenly of-one of-them the-sword he-seized
per capulum, et cum ense nudo invitis illis ad episcopi sui
by the-hilt and with sword naked unwilling they to of-the-bishop his
custodis cubiculum pervenit, et cum magno strepitu episcopo
guardian the-chamber came and with great din the-bishop
expergefacto, rem quae secum agebatur innotuit, eumque
awakened the-matter which with-him was-being-done made-known and-him
ut se a furtivae casu mortis eriperet oravit. Quod
that him from of-a-stealthy the-chance death he-should-rescue begged which
cum per oppidum divulgatum fuisset, rex eum sicut
when through the-town spread-abroad had-been the-king him as
voluerat non praesumpsit perdere, sed eum libere per
he-had-wished not he-presumed to-destroy but him freely through
curiam quo vellet ire permisit. Sed ille, sicut erat vir
the-court whither he-would to-go allowed but he as he-was a-man

in omnibus prudens, ad consilia regis frequenter accessit,
in all-things prudent to the-counsels of-the-king frequently came
et sapientia sua brevi tempore promeruit, ut quicquid ad
and by-wisdom his in-brief time deserved that whatever to
honorem regis pertineret, eius consilio maxime rex ipse
the-honor of-the-king pertained his by-counsel chiefly the-king himself
disponeret. Denique quem nuper habebat hostem saevissimum,
arranged finally whom lately he-had as-enemy most-savage
eum nunc coepit habere consiliatorem fidelissimum.
him now he-began to-have as-counselor most-faithful
Nos autem ubi principes illos, qui nostros habebant in custodia,
we moreover when the-princes those who our-men held in custody
Goslariae esse comperimus, litteras eis supplicationum
at-Goslar to-be we-learned letters to-them of-supplications
pro principum nostrorum liberatione transmisimus, quaeque
for of-princes our the-liberation we-sent each
civitas sive provincia pro sui episcopi sive primatis ereptione.
city or province for of-its bishop or chief the-rescue
Ex quibus unam tantum placuit epistolam subnectere:
of which one only it-has-pleased letter to-append
Domno Udoni, ovium Christi sanctarum sanctissimo pastori,
to-lord Udo of-the-sheep of-Christ holy most-holy shepherd
clerus et populus Magedaburgensis ecclesiae devotionem
the-clergy and people of-the-Magdeburg church devotion
fidelissimam utriusque hominis. Quod tanti viri notitiam
most-faithful of-the-twofold man that of-so-great a-man the-acquaintance
familiariter et gratiam nulla nobis adhuc nostrae servitutis
familiarly and the-favor by-no for-ourselves yet of-our service
exhibitione quaesivimus, nosmetipsos inter nos vehementer
display we-have-sought ourselves among ourselves vehemently
accusamus, et nulla nos servitute nostra vobis vel notos
we-accuse and by-no us service our to-you even known

esse factos eo magis erubescimus, quo non promeriti
to-have-been made by-that the-more we-blush the-more not having-deserved
tanta pietatis vestrae solatia in multis nostris tribulationibus
such of-piety your consolations in many our tribulations
accepimus. Ex omnibus enim tribulationibus, quas vel
we-have-received of all for tribulations which either
longus iam nos usus ferre patienter edocuit, vel quas
long now us use to-bear patiently has-taught or which
ipsa novitas quo insolitas, eo nobis graviores reddit,
the-very novelty the-more unaccustomed the-more to-us heavier makes
nulla nobis unquam gravior incubuit, quam quod nostro
none on-us ever heavier has-lain than that our
domno archiepiscopo, immo patre piissimo, per tam
lord archbishop nay father most-loving through so
longae captivitatis aerumnam carere contigit, his praecipue
of-long captivity the-hardship to-lack befell(-us) in-these especially
tempestuosis temporibus, in quibus nobis esset maxime
stormy times in which to-us he-would-be most
necessarius. Sed quia, sicut ex ipsius legatione cognovimus,
necessary but because as from his embassy we-learned
multa vestrae pietatis humanitate fruitur, ita ut se non
much of-your piety the-kindness he-enjoys so that himself not
dolore captivitatis affici, sed a labore quo plurimo
by-the-pain of-captivity to-be-affected but from the-labor by-which very-much
fatigatus erat, multa dulcedine vestra refici fateatur,
wearied he-had-been by-much sweetness your to-be-refreshed he-confesses
omnium quas nos patimur afflictionum libenter obliti, dum
of-all which we suffer afflictions gladly forgetful while
caput nostrum gaudere cognoscimus, dolorem membrorum,
head our to-rejoice we-learn the-pain of-the-limbs
vel si magnus sit, nullum putamus. Paternitatis igitur
even if great it-be nothing we-think of-paternity therefore

vestrae pedibus omnes unanimiter devoto corde prostrati,
your at-the-feet all with-one-mind with-devoted heart prostrated
plurimas plurime referimus gratias vestrae pietati, quia
very-many most-abundantly we-render thanks to-your piety because
dum hanc quae maxime nos affligebat curam misericordia
while this which most us was-afflicting care mercy
vestra mitigastis, omnes alias sollicitudines nos ventis in
your you-have-softened all other anxieties us to-the-winds into
Creticum mare portandas tradere fecistis. Quod si divina
the-Cretan sea to-be-carried to-hand-over you-have-caused which if divine
favente clementia solidum nobis hoc gaudium vestra paternitas
favoring clemency solid for-us this joy your paternity
effecerit, et ad sua citius redire dominum nostrum
shall-have-effected and to his-own more-quickly to-return lord our
suis suorumque supplicationibus adiuverit, numquam vos
by-his and-of-his-men supplications shall-have-helped never you
priora nobis beneficia praestitisse poenitebit, dum et
the-earlier to-us benefits to-have-shown will-repent while both
ipsum dominum nostrum vobis amicum semper ad omnia
the-very lord our to-you a-friend always for all-things
paratissimum, nosque omnes non minus devotos habebitis
most-ready and-us all not less devoted you-will-have
et subiectos, quam clerum sive populum proprium. Ad quod
and subject than clergy or people your-own to which
perficiendum si vestra sublimitas eo quo speramus
to-be-accomplished if your highness with-that with-which we-hope
studio voluerit eniti, sine multo labore credimus id
zeal shall-have-wished to-strive without much labor we-believe it
posse fieri, quia hoc certum tenemus, quod ipse tenetur
to-be-able to-be-done because this sure we-hold that he-himself is-held
innocens captivus, et sola suae salus ecclesiae fuit ei
innocent a-captive and alone of-his the-safety church was for-him

causa traditionis suae. Omnipotens igitur Deus diu vos in hac
the-cause of-surrender his almighty therefore God long you in this
vita conservet, ecclesiae suae solatium, et post hanc vitam
life may-he-preserve of-church his as-the-solace and after this life
tribuat vobis sempiternum beatae vitae praemium. Valete.
may-he-grant you everlasting of-blessed life the-reward farewell

PLOTS AGAINST RUDOLF AND THE WORMS LETTERS

Henry, with three armed men at night, makes a knight of Rudolf's swear to kill him, but the knight confesses; the duke escapes two more ambushes and leaves the court for good. A plot to cut down the bishops and princes fails when Anno of Cologne is warned. Henry asks the pope to depose the Saxon bishops, but the pope orders their release and threatens anathema. At Worms Henry makes his bishops renounce Hildebrand, bribes the Romans, and writes ordering the pope to leave his see.

Cum ergo rex urbes et omnes in Saxonia munitiones
when therefore the-king the-cities and all in Saxony fortifications
suorum fidelium praesidiis occupasset, et nichil sibi,
of-his faithful with-garrisons had-occupied and nothing to-him
quominus in Saxonia faceret cuncta quae vellet, putaret
to-prevent-that in Saxony he-should-do all-things which he-wished he-thought
obstare, transivit a nobis in medio quadragesimae,
to-stand-in-the-way he-crossed from us in the-middle of-Lent
obsides multos secum ducens, et apud nos qui tributa de
hostages many with-him leading and among us those-who the-tributes from
regionibus nostris exigerent relinquens. Cumque suos fines
regions our should-exact leaving and-when his-own borders
intrasset, et duces eius ceterique qui fortiter in proelio
he-had-entered and the-dukes his and-the-others who bravely in the-battle
pugnaverant, dona triumphalia expectarent, ille munus quod
had-fought gifts triumphal awaited he the-gift which

fere cunctis fidelibus suis largiri solitus erat, etiam nunc in
nearly to-all faithful his to-bestow wont he-was also now as
praemio virtutis dare parabat; dolensque quod ex principibus
the-reward of-valor to-give was-preparing and-grieving that of the-princes
in proelio non ad votum suum cecidissent, vitam quam
in the-battle not according-to wish his had-fallen the-life which
per ignaviam eos servasse credebat, eis per saevitiam
through cowardice them to-have-saved he-believed from-them through cruelty
auferri cupiebat. Nam ut solus omnium dominus esset,
to-be-taken-away he-desired for that alone of-all lord he-might-be
nullum in regno suo dominum vivere vellet. Itaque cum
no in kingdom his lord to-live he-wished and-so with
tribus fortissimis viris armatis quandam domum desertam
three most-brave men armed a-certain house deserted
medio noctis intravit et illuc unum ex militibus Rodulfi
in-the-middle of-the-night he-entered and thither one of the-knights of-Rudolf
ducis secreto introduxit. Qui visis gladiis sibi timuit,
the-duke secretly brought-in who having-seen the-swords for-himself feared
quia quo effugeret non habuit. Sed cum rex multis eum
because whither he-might-flee not he-had but when the-king with-many him
promissionibus oneraret, si Rodulfum ducem ubi primum
promises loaded if Rudolf the-duke when first
sibi daretur oportunitas occideret, non amore promissorum
to-him should-be-given the-opportunity he-should-kill not from-love of-the-promises
sed timore gladiorum praesentium, hoc se facturum quasi
but from-fear of-the-swords present this himself about-to-do as-if
laetus promisit, suamque promissionem iuramento confirmavit.
glad promised and-his promise with-an-oath confirmed
Mane autem facto cum dux de virtute et fide multum
morning moreover come when the-duke for valor and faith much
laudatus a rege cum multa suavitate dimissus abiret,
praised by the-king with much sweetness dismissed was-going-away

ille correptis armis velociter insequitur, et lancea protensa
he having-seized arms swiftly follows and with-lance stretched-out
per mediam turbam festinans, alto clamore se ducem
through the-middle-of the-crowd hastening with-loud shout himself the-duke
occidere minitatur. A militibus vero circumdatus et causam
to-kill threatens by the-knights but surrounded and the-cause
terroris interrogatus, totam seriem negotii quod in nocte
of-the-terror asked the-whole course of-the-business which in the-night
gestum fuerat exponit, armisque proiectis ipsi duci, quid
done had-been he-sets-forth and-arms cast-away to-the-very duke what
et qua vi coactus iurasset, innotescit.
and by-what force compelled he-had-sworn makes-known
Alio tempore, cum idem dux reginam in manu sua a
at-another time when the-same duke the-queen in hand his from
monasterio duceret, rex sagittario cuidam praecepit, ut
the-monastery was-leading the-king an-archer a-certain ordered that
eum iuxta reginam sagitta transfigeret. Sed ab eodem
him beside the-queen with-an-arrow he-should-transfix but by the-same
sagittario praemonitus dux reginam non perduxit, sed
archer forewarned the-duke the-queen not led-through but
inventa qualibet causa festinus ab ea recessit.
found any-whatever cause hastily from her withdrew
Tertia vice cum causae quaedam intra cubiculum regis
a-third time when cases certain within the-chamber of-the-king
agerentur et actionibus illis dux cum paucis suis interesset,
were-being-pleaded and at-proceedings those the-duke with a-few his was-present
nunciatum est ei quod duo regis famuli ianuam cum
announced it-was to-him that two of-the-king servants the-door with
nudis gladiis obsiderent, qui ducem egredientem ex utroque
naked swords were-besieging who the-duke coming-out from each
latere perfoderent. Itaque suos cum gladiis occultis occulte
side should-pierce and-so his-men with swords hidden secretly

fecit advenire, et aliquos ex ipsis cubiculum fecit intrare,
he-caused to-come and some of them the-chamber he-caused to-enter
plurimos vero prae foribus stare. Cumque omnia sicut iusserat
very-many but before the-doors to-stand and-when all-things as he-had-ordered
essent disposita, cum suis accedens ad ianuam: 'Tales', inquit,
were arranged with his-men approaching to the-door such he-said
'ianitores, domne rex, in vestro cubiculo nollem modo vidisse,
doorkeepers lord king in your chamber I-would-not now to-have-seen
nec unquam posthac amplius volo videre.' Haec locutus
nor ever hereafter more I-wish to-see these-things he-spoke
et abiit cum magno furore, et dixit, quod et implevit,
and went-away with great fury and said what also he-fulfilled
quod numquam vellet ulterius ad regis curiam venire.
that never he-would-wish further to of-the-king the-court to-come
Eodem vel simili dolo etiam Bertholdum ducem quaerebat
by-the-same or a-similar trick also Berthold the-duke he-sought
perdere, quia hi duo magis videbantur eius malitiae
to-destroy because these two more seemed to-his malice
obsistere. Et quare de duobus tantum eius saevitiam
to-stand-in-the-way and why of two only his savagery
commemoro, qui nullum de principibus possum asserere
I-recall who none of the-princes I-can to-declare
securum tali periculo? Quadam namque die dum ipse
secure from-such danger on-a-certain for day while he-himself
cum suis scurris moraretur in cubiculo et episcopi ceterique
with his buffoons was-lingering in the-chamber and the-bishops and-the-other
primates excubarent in vestibulo, fertur illis dixisse qui
chief-men kept-watch in the-vestibule he-is-said to-those to-have-said who
conscii et fautores erant suae nequitiae: 'Ecce isti sunt,
privy and abettors were of-his wickedness behold these are
qui regni mei divitias habent, et me meosque omnes in
who of-kingdom my the-riches have and me and-mine all in

paupertate reliquerunt. Quod si illi de medio fuissent ablati,
poverty have-left which if they from the-midst had-been removed
ego cunctique mei familiares cito possemus divites fieri.
I and-all my intimates quickly we-could rich to-become
Quapropter si viri estis et divitias habere cupitis, istos nunc
wherefore if men you-are and riches to-have you-desire these now
inermes armati fortiter invadite, et omnia quae illi possident
unarmed armed bravely attack and all-things which they possess
accipite.' Habebat autem in cubili suo semper multas secures
take be-had moreover in chamber his always many axes
lato ferro splendentes, quibus nec clipeus nec galea resistere
with-broad iron gleaming which neither shield nor helmet to-resist
poterat virtute aliqua. Quod nisi Anno Coloniensis praesul ab
could by-strength any which unless Anno of-Cologne prelate by
uno qui cum ceteris facinus erat acturus, paulo ante fuisset
one who with the-others the-crime was about-to-do a-little before had-been
submonitus, ea die fuisset perpetratum miserabile facinus.
secretly-warned on-that day would-have-been perpetrated a-wretched crime
Verum ut ad priora paulisper revertar, ubi primum primates
but that to earlier-things for-a-little I-may-return when first chief-men
nostri deditionem fecerunt, omnes semitas quae per montes
our surrender made all the-paths which through the-mountains
ducunt in Italiam, rex claudi praecepit, nec ulli homini
lead into Italy the-king to-be-closed ordered nor to-any man
viam patere permisit, ne rei veritas ad apostolicum
the-way to-lie-open allowed lest of-the-matter the-truth to the-apostolic(-lord)
prius veniret, quam ipse per legatos in suum favorem
first should-come than he-himself through envoys into his favor
ipsum apostolicum traduceret. Deinde misit Romano pontifici
the-very apostolic(-lord) should-bring-over then he-sent to-the-Roman pontiff
legatos, qui ei intimarent, quod episcopi Saxoniae sui
envoys who to-him should-intimate that the-bishops of-Saxony of-their

ordinis obliti contra se in proelio congressi fuissent, eumque
order forgetful against himself in battle engaged had and-him
rogarent, ut eos sicut infideles, periuros et belli civilis auctores
should-ask that them as faithless perjurers and of-war civil authors
gradu sacerdotali deponeret, quatenus tales per quos ecclesia
from-rank priestly he-should-depose so-that such through whom the-church
pacata regeretur, ipse in eorum locum poneret. Sed regis
pacified might-be-ruled he-himself in their place should-put but of-the-king
legatos ad apostolicum fama praecesserat, eique seriem
the-envoys to the-apostolic(-lord) rumor had-preceded and-to-him the-course
rerum gestarum totam veraciter indicaverat. Misit ergo regi
of-things done whole truthfully had-indicated he-sent therefore to-the-king
litteras, quibus eum de multis aliis criminibus arguebat, et ut
a-letter by-which him of many other crimes he-accused and that
episcopos a captivitate dimissos, ecclesiis bonisque suis integre
the-bishops from captivity released to-churches and-goods their wholly
restitutis, remitteret orabat, et post haec concilium in eo
restored he-should-send-back he-prayed and after this a-council in that
loco quo venire posset apostolicus congregaret, ubi episcopi
place to-which to-come could the-apostolic(-lord) he-should-gather where the-bishops
vel, si digni essent, episcopalem perderent dignitatem, vel
either if worthy they-were the-episcopal should-lose dignity or
iniuriarum quas erant passi canonicam reciperent satisfactionem.
for-the-injuries which they-had suffered canonical should-receive satisfaction
Quod si in his sacris canonibus noluisset rex obediens
which if in these to-the-sacred canons should-be-unwilling the-king obedient
existere et excommunicatos a societate sua repellere, se
to-be and the-excommunicate from fellowship his to-repel himself
eum velut putre membrum anathematis gladio ab unitate
him like a-rotten limb of-anathema with-the-sword from the-unity
sanctae matris ecclesiae minabatur abscindere. Qua legatione
of-holy mother church he-threatened to-cut-off which embassy

suscepta, et venientibus suis quos miserat apostolico
received and on-the-coming of-his-men whom he-had-sent to-the-apostolic(-lord)
confirmata, tristis valde fuit, quia in apostolica dignitate
confirmed sad very he-was because in the-apostolic dignity
malitiae suae, sicut sperabat, auxilium non invenit.
for-malice his as he-hoped help not he-found
Rex igitur cum suis deceptoribus una Wormatiam venit, et
the-king therefore with his deceivers together to-Worms came and
cum singulis vel binis consilium inivit, qualiter dignam vicem
with individuals or pairs counsel entered how worthy return
rependeret illi contumeliae, quam omnes audierant Romanum
he-might-repay to-that insult which all had-heard the-Roman
pontificem sibi fecisse, quod eum se minatus sit
pontiff to-him to-have-done that him himself threatened he-had
excommunicaturum, cum tale quid cunctis temporibus fuisset
about-to-excommunicate though such anything in-all times had-been
inauditum. Cumque multa multis modis diu volutarent,
unheard-of and-when many-things in-many ways long they-were-turning-over
tandem quibusdam eorum placuit, ut episcoporum concilio
at-last to-some of-them it-pleased that of-bishops a-council
facto papam quasi simoniacum communi consensu
having-been-held the-pope as a-simoniac by-common consent
damnaret, eoque deposito, rex in loco eius unum de suis
he-should-condemn and-him deposed the-king in place his one of his
amicis constitueret, qui omnia quae regi fuissent placita,
friends should-establish who all-things which to-the-king had-been pleasing
tota voluntate perficeret. Hoc igitur inito confirmatoque
with-whole will should-carry-out this therefore entered and-confirmed
consilio fecit omnes suos episcopos convenire, et coegit
counsel he-caused all his bishops to-assemble and compelled
eos Hildebrando, qui Romanus pontifex vocaretur et non
them to-Hildebrand who Roman pontiff was-called and not

esset, subiectionem et obedientiam interdicere; et hoc ut
was subjection and obedience to-renounce and this that
post nullus eorum posset negare, fecit unum quemque
afterward none of-them could to-deny he-caused each one
eorum nomine suo praenotato manu propria abnegationem
of-them with-name his written-before with-hand his-own the-renunciation
Hildebrando chartis singulis inscribere hoc modo: Ego
to-Hildebrand in-charters individual to-inscribe in-this way I
N. civitatis N. episcopus Hildebrando subiectionem et
N of-city N bishop to-Hildebrand subjection and
obedientiam ex hac hora et deinceps interdico, et eum
obedience from this hour and henceforth renounce and him
posthac apostolicum nec habebo nec vocabo. Quod quidem
hereafter as-apostolic(-lord) neither shall-I-have nor shall-I-call which indeed
pauci fecerunt ex animo, qui et auctores ipsi fuere
a-few did from the-heart who also authors themselves were
consilio; plures vero litteras quidem abrenunciationis mortis
of-the-counsel more but the-letters indeed of-renunciation of-death
timore scripserunt, sed invitos se fecisse per hoc
from-fear wrote but unwilling themselves to-have-done(-it) by this
ostenderunt, quia cum primum datur eis oportunitas,
showed because when first is-given to-them the-opportunity
apostolico supplices confessionis litteras dirigunt et se
to-the-apostolic(-lord) suppliant of-confession letters they-direct and themselves
reos ei agnoscunt, sed expurgationem necessitatis obtendunt.
guilty to-him acknowledge but the-excuse of-necessity they-plead
Deinde per totam Italiam misit epistolas, magnis donis et
then through all Italy he-sent letters with-great gifts and
maioribus promissis illius terrae principes in favorem suae
greater promises of-that land the-princes into favor of-his
partis inclinans. Itaque nostrates episcopi solummodo scripto,
side inclining and-so our bishops only in-writing

illi renuntiabant etiam iuramento. Romanos etiam quam
those renounced even by-oath Romans also as
plurimos pecunia corrupit, et ut Hildebrandum ab
very-many-as-possible with-money he-corrupted and that Hildebrand from
apostolicae sedis honore deicerent, talibus litteris oravit.
of-the-apostolic see the-honor they-might-cast-down with-such letters prayed
Ipsi quoque apostolico plenas contumeliis litteras direxit,
to-the-very also apostolic(-lord) full of-insults a-letter he-directed
in quibus, ut apostolicum nomen et sedem cito relinqueret,
in which that the-apostolic name and see quickly he-should-leave
minaciter praecepit. Hoc autem exemplum est litterarum:
threateningly he-ordered this moreover the-copy is of-the-letter

HENRY'S LETTERS TO ROME

Bruno copies Henry's letters: one to the Roman clergy and people, enclosing his letter ordering Hildebrand to step down and asking them to rise against him, force him out without bloodshed, and receive a pope Henry chooses; and one to the pope himself, "now not apostolic but false monk," accusing him of trampling bishops and threatening the king's crown, which comes from God alone. It ends, "Descend, descend."

Heinricus Dei gratia rex, universae sanctae Romanae ecclesiae
Henry of-God by-grace king of-the-whole holy Roman church
clero et populo, gratiam, salutem et omne bonum. Haec
to-the-clergy and people favor greeting and every good this
fides firma et inconcussa creditur, quae semper et eadem
faith firm and unshaken is-believed which always both the-same
et praesenti servatur et absenti, nec diuturna eius cui
and to-the-present is-kept and to-the-absent nor by-the-long of-him to-whom
debetur absentia, nec longi temporis taedio immutatur.
it-is-owed absence nor of-long time by-the-weariness is-changed

Quam talem vos nobis servare scimus et gratias agimus,
which such you to-us to-keep we-know and thanks we-give
et ut eadem perseveret petimus, videlicet ut, sicut facitis,
and that the-same may-persevere we-ask namely that as you-do
amicis nostris amici, inimicis nostris inimici iugiter existatis.
to-friends our friends to-enemies our enemies continually you-may-be
Inter quos scilicet Hildebrandum monachum notantes, vos
among whom namely Hildebrand the-monk marking you
in eius inimicitiam excitamus, quia hunc et ecclesiae
to his enmity we-rouse because him both of-the-church
invasorem et oppressorem, et Romanae rei publicae vel
invader and oppressor and of-the-Roman state public or
regni nostri insidiatorem deprehendimus, ut in subsequenti
of-kingdom our plotter we-have-detected as in the-following
epistola sibi a nobis directa pernoscere in promtu est.
letter to-him by us directed to-learn-thoroughly at hand it-is
'Heinricus Dei gratia rex Hildebrando. Cum hactenus ex
Henry of-God by-grace king to-Hildebrand when hitherto from
te ea quae patris sunt expectarem, tibique in omnibus
you those-things which of-a-father are I-expected and-you in all-things
magna fidelium nostrorum indignatione obedirem, percepi
with-great of-faithful our indignation I-obeyed I-received
a te vicissitudinem, qualem oportebat ab eo, qui vitae
from you a-return such-as was-fitting from him who of-life
regnique nostri perniciosissimus hostis esset. Nam cum
and-of-kingdom our most-pernicious enemy was for when
in primis omnem hereditariam dignitatem, quae michi
in the-first-place all hereditary dignity which to-me
ab illa sede debebatur, superbo ausu rapuisses, longius inde
from that see was-owed with-proud daring you-had-seized further thence
progrediens regnum Italiae pessimis artibus alienare temptasti.
advancing the-kingdom of-Italy by-the-worst arts to-alienate you-tried

Nec hoc contentus in reverentissimos episcopos, qui
nor with-this content against the-most-reverend bishops who
nobis velut dulcissima membra uniti sunt, manum mittere
to-us like sweetest limbs united are a-hand to-lay
non timuisti eosque superbissimis iniuriis acerbissimisque
not you-feared and-them with-most-arrogant injuries and-most-bitter
contumeliis contra divina et humana iura, ut ipsi
insults against divine and human laws as they-themselves
aiunt, exagitasti. Quae omnia cum ego quadam patientia
say you-harassed which all-things when I with-a-certain patience
dissimularem, tu hoc non patientiam sed ignaviam aestimans,
was-overlooking you this not patience but cowardice deeming
in ipsum caput insurgere ausus es, mandans quae
against the-very head to-rise dared you-have sending-word what-things
nosti, scilicet ut tuis verbis utar, quod aut tu morereris
you-know namely that your words I-may-use that either you should-die
aut michi animam regnumque tolleres. Hanc inauditam
or from-me the-life and-the-kingdom you-would-take this unheard-of
contumaciam ego non verbis sed re confutandam diiudicans,
contumacy I not by-words but by-deed to-be-refuted judging
generalem conventum omnium regni primatum ipsis
a-general assembly of-all of-the-kingdom chief-men they-themselves
supplicantibus habui. Ubi cum ea quae hactenus metu
beseeching(-it) I-held where when those-things which hitherto from-fear
et reverentia tacebantur, in medium deducta fuissent, veris
and reverence were-kept-silent into the-midst brought had-been by-the-true
assertionibus illorum, quas ex ipsorum litteris audies,
assertions of-them which from their letters you-will-hear
palam factum est, te nullatenus in apostolica sede posse
plain made it-was you in-no-way in the-apostolic see to-be-able
persistere. Quorum sententiae, quia iusta et probabilis coram
to-persist whose to-the-sentence because just and commendable before

Deo hominibusque videbatur, ego quoque assentiens, omne
God and-men seemed I also assenting every
tibi papatus ius quod habere visus es abrenuntio, atque
to-you of-the-papacy right which to-have seemed you-have I-renounce and
ut a sede Urbis, cuius michi patriciatus Deo tribuente et
that from the-see of-the-City whose to-me the-patriciate God granting(-it) and
iurato Romanorum assensu debetur, ut descendas edico.'
by-the-sworn of-the-Romans assent is-owed that you-descend I-proclaim
Haec series nostrae epistolae ad Hildebrandum monachum.
this the-tenor of-our letter to Hildebrand the-monk
Quam idcirco et vobis scripsimus, ut et vobis nostra
which for-this-reason also to-you we-have-written that both to-you our
voluntas, et nobis, immo Deo et nobis, vestra satisfaciat
will and to-us nay to-God and to-us your may-give-satisfaction
caritas. Exurgite igitur in eum, fidelissimi, et sit
love rise-up therefore against him most-faithful-ones and let-him-be
primus in fide primus in eius damnatione. Non autem
first in faith first in his condemnation not moreover
ut sanguinem eius fundatis dicimus, quippe cum maior
that the-blood his you-should-shed we-say indeed since greater
sibi sit post depositionem poena vita quam mors, sed ut
to-him is after deposition a-penalty life than death but that
eum si nolit descendere cogatis, et alium communi
him if he-be-unwilling to-descend you-may-compel and another by-common
omnium episcoporum et vestro consilio a nobis electum in
of-all the-bishops and by-your counsel by us chosen into
apostolicam sedem recipiatis, qui quod iste in ecclesia
the-apostolic see you-may-receive who what this-man in the-church
vulneravit, curare et velit et possit.
has-wounded to-heal both may-wish and may-be-able

Heinricus, non usurpative sed pia Dei ordinatione
Henry not by-usurpation but by-the-dutiful of-God ordinance
rex, Hildebrando, iam non apostolico sed falso monacho.
king to-Hildebrand now not apostolic(-lord) but false monk
Hanc talem pro confusione tua salutationem promeruisti,
this such for confusion your greeting you-have-deserved
qui nullum in ecclesia ordinem praeteristi, quem confusionis
who no in the-church order have-passed-over which of-confusion
non honoris, maledictionis non benedictionis participem non
not of-honor of-cursing not of-blessing a-sharer not
feceris. Ut enim de multis pauca et egregia loquamur,
you-have-made that for of many-things few and outstanding we-may-speak
rectores sanctae ecclesiae, videlicet archiepiscopos, episcopos,
the-rulers of-holy church namely archbishops bishops
presbyteros, non modo non tangere sicut christos Domini
priests not only not to-touch as anointed of-the-Lord
timuisti, quin sicut servos, nescientes quid faciat dominus
you-have-feared but like servants not-knowing what does lord
eorum, sub pedibus tuis calcasti; in quorum conculcatione
their under feet your you-have-trodden in whose trampling
tibi favorem ab ore vulgi comparasti; quos omnes
for-yourself favor from the-mouth of-the-mob you-have-procured whom all
nichil scire, te autem solum omnia nosse iudicasti. Qua
nothing to-know you moreover alone all-things to-know you-have-judged which
utique scientia non ad aedificationem, sed ad destructionem
surely knowledge not for edification but for destruction
uti studuisti, ut iure beatum Gregorium, cuius nomen
to-use you-have-striven that by-right blessed Gregory whose name
tibi vendicasti, de te prophetasse credamus sic
for-yourself you-have-claimed about you to-have-prophesied we-may-believe thus
dicentem: ‘Ex affluentia subiectorum plerumque animus
saying from the-abundance of-subjects often the-mind

praelati extollitur, et aestimat se plus omnibus nosse,
of-a-prelate is-lifted-up and it-judges itself more than-all to-know
cum se videt plus omnibus posse.' Et nos quidem haec
when itself it-sees more than-all to-be-able and we indeed these
omnia sustinuimus, dum apostolicae sedis honorem servare
all-things have-borne while of-the-apostolic see the-honor to-preserve
studuimus. Sed tu humilitatem nostram timorem fore
we-strove but you humility our fear to-be
intellexisti, ideoque et in ipsam regiam potestatem nobis
have-understood and-therefore even against the-very royal power to-us
a Deo concessam exurgere non timuisti, quam te nobis
by God granted to-rise-up not you-have-feared which you from-us
auferre ausus es minari, quasi nos a te regnum
to-take-away dared you-have to-threaten as-if we from you the-kingdom
acceperimus, quasi in tua et non in Dei manu sit regnum
had-received as-if in your and not in of-God hand were kingdom
vel imperium; qui dominus noster Iesus Christus nos ad
or empire who the-Lord our Jesus Christ us to
regnum, te autem non vocavit ad sacerdotium. Tu enim
kingship you moreover not has-called to priesthood you for
his gradibus ascendisti: scilicet astutia, quod monachica
by-these steps have-ascended namely by-cunning which monastic
professio abhominatur, pecuniam, pecunia favorem, favore
profession abhors money by-money favor by-favor
ferrum, ferro sedem pacis adisti, et de sede pacis
the-sword by-the-sword the-see of-peace you-have-approached and from the-see of-peace
pacem turbasti, dum subditos in praelatos armasti,
the-peace you-have-disturbed while subjects against prelates you-have-armed
dum episcopos nostros, a Deo vocatos, tu, non vocatus,
while bishops our by God called you not called
spernendos docuisti, dum laicis ministerium eorum super
to-be-spurned have-taught while to-laymen ministry their over

sacerdotes usurpasti, ut ipsi deponant vel condemnent,
priests you-have-usurped that they-themselves may-depose or condemn
qui ipsos a manu Domini per impositionem manuum
those-who them from the-hand of-the-Lord through the-imposition of-hands
episcoporum docendos acceperant. Me quoque, qui licet
of-bishops to-be-taught had-received me also who though
indignus inter christos ad regnum sum unctus tetigisti,
unworthy among the-anointed to kingship I-have-been anointed you-have-touched
quem sanctorum patrum traditio soli Deo iudicandum
whom of-the-holy fathers the-tradition alone by-God to-be-judged
docuit, nec pro aliquo crimine, nisi a fide, quod absit,
has-taught nor for any crime unless from the-faith which God-forbid
exorbitaverimus, deponendum asseruit, cum etiam Iulianum
we-shall-have-strayed to-be-deposed has-asserted since even Julian
apostatam prudentia sanctorum episcoporum non sibi sed
the-apostate the-prudence of-holy bishops not to-themselves but
soli Deo iudicandum deponendumque commiserit. Ipse verus
alone to-God to-be-judged and-to-be-deposed committed the-very true
papa beatus Petrus clamat: 'Deum timete, regem honorificate.'
pope blessed Peter cries God fear the-king honor
Tu autem quia Deum non times, me constitutum eius
you moreover because God not fear me appointed his
inhonoras. Unde beatus Paulus, ubi angelo de coelo,
dishonor whence blessed Paul where an-angel from heaven
si praedicaverit alia, non pepercit, te quoque in
if he-should-have-preached other-things not he-spared you also on
terris alia docentem non excepit. Ait enim: 'Si quis,
earth other-things teaching not he-excepted he-says for if anyone
vel ego, vel etiam angelus e coelo, praeter id quod
either I or even an-angel from heaven besides that which
euangelizavimus vobis euangelizaverit, anathema sit.' Tu
we-have-evangelized to-you shall-have-evangelized anathema let-him-be you

ergo hoc anathemate et omnium episcoporum nostrorum
therefore by-this anathema and of-all bishops our
iudicio et nostro damnatus descende, vindicatam sedem
by-the-judgment and by-ours condemned descend the-claimed see
apostolicam relinque! Alius in solium beati Petri ascendat,
apostolic leave another onto the-throne of-blessed Peter let-ascend
qui nulla violentiam religione palliet, sed beati Petri sanam
who with-no violence religion may-cloak but of-blessed Peter the-sound
doctrinam doceat. Ego enim Heinricus rex Dei gratia cum
doctrine may-teach I for Henry king of-God by-grace with
omnibus episcopis nostris tibi dicimus: Descende, descende.
all bishops our to-you say descend descend

HENRY EXCOMMUNICATED

At the Lateran synod the envoy who brought Henry's letter barely escapes with his life. Next day Gregory recounts his patient warnings and, with all assenting, excommunicates Henry. He asks all the faithful to pray, and in a prayer to Saint Peter forbids Henry the kingdom and frees his subjects from their oaths. To the Germans he explains why: Henry swore penance before legates, broke it after his victory over the Saxons, kept company with excommunicates, and split the church. He stands ready to receive him back.

Quae litterae cum domno papae in basilica Lateranensi
which letter when to-lord pope in the-basilica of-the-Lateran
sanctae synodo praesidenti fuissent allatae, et coram synodo
over-the-holy synod presiding had-been brought and before the-synod
palam recitatae, tanta fit in ecclesia commotio, ut idem
openly read so-great arises in the-church commotion that the-same
legatus, nisi inter apostolici pedes defensionem invenisset,
envoy unless between the-apostolic(-lord's) feet defense he-had-found

membratim laniatus interisset miserabiliter. Sequenti
limb-from-limb torn would-have-perished wretchedly on-the-following
vero die domnus papa coram ipsa synodo declaravit, quotiens
but day lord pope before the-very synod declared how-often
et quanta mansuetudine regem de magnis criminibus
and with-how-great gentleness the-king for great crimes
corripuisset, ut episcopos a captivitate solveret quanta
he-had-rebuked that the-bishops from captivity he-should-release with-how-great
suavitate rogasset, apostolica auctoritate iussisset; et pro
sweetness he-had-asked by-apostolic authority had-commanded and for
paterna dulcedine quantam superbiae amaritudinem recepisset.
paternal sweetness how-great of-pride bitterness he-had-received
Deinde cunctis acclamantibus ne talis contumelia remaneret
then all acclaiming lest such insult remain
inulta, omnium consilio et consensu Heinricum synodali
unavenged of-all by-the-counsel and consent Henry by-synodal
iudicio damnavit, regisque nomine et honore privatum
judgment he-condemned and-of-king the-name and honor deprived
anathematis gladio percussit, litterasque in regnum
of-anathema with-the-sword he-struck and-a-letter into the-kingdom
Teutonicorum misit, quarum hic exemplar supponere placuit:
of-the-Teutons sent of-which here the-copy to-place-below it-has-pleased
Gregorius episcopus servus servorum Dei, omnibus qui
Gregory bishop servant of-the-servants of-God to-all who
se cupiunt annumerari inter oves quas Christus beato
themselves desire to-be-numbered among the-sheep which Christ to-blessed
Petro commisit, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem.
Peter committed greeting and apostolic blessing
Audistis, fratres, novam et inauditam praesumptionem,
you-have-heard brothers new and unheard-of presumption
audistis scismaticorum sceleratam et nomen Domini
you-have-heard of-schismatics the-wicked and the-name of-the-Lord

in beato Petro blasphemantium garrulitatem et audaciam;
in blessed Peter blaspheming garrulity and boldness
audistis superbiam ad iniuriam et contumeliam sanctae et
you-have-heard pride to the-injury and insult of-the-holy and
apostolicae sedis elatam, qualem vestri patres nec viderunt
apostolic see raised such-as your fathers neither saw
nec audierunt unquam nec scripturarum series aliquando
nor heard ever nor of-the-scriptures the-course ever
a paganis vel haereticis docet emersam. Cuius mali etsi
by pagans or heretics teaches to-have-arisen of-which evil even-if
quod unquam post fundatam ecclesiam et propagatam
anything ever after the-founding of-the-church and the-spreading
fidem Christi processisset exemplum, omnibus tamen
of-the-faith of-Christ had-gone-before an-example to-all yet
fidelibus pro tanto contemptu et conculcatione apostolicae,
the-faithful for so-great contempt and trampling of-apostolic
immo divinae auctoritatis, dolendum foret et gemendum.
nay of-divine authority to-be-grieved it-would-be and to-be-lamented
Quapropter si beato Petro claves regni coelorum a
wherefore if to-blessed Peter the-keys of-the-kingdom of-the-heavens by
domino nostro Iesu Christo traditas creditis, et vobis per
the-Lord our Jesus Christ handed-over you-believe and to-you through
manus ipsius ad aeternae vitae gaudia introitum patere
the-hands of-him to of-eternal life the-joys entrance to-lie-open
cupitis, cogitandum vobis est, quantum nunc de irrogata
you-desire to-be-thought by-you it-is how-much now over the-inflicted
sibi contumelia dolere debeatis. Nisi enim hic, ubi per
on-him insult to-grieve you-ought unless for here where through
discrimina temptationum vestra fides et corda probantur,
the-perils of-temptations your faith and hearts are-proved
socii passionum efficiamini, procul dubio non estis digni,
companions of-the-sufferings you-are-made beyond doubt not you-are worthy

ut participes futurae consolationis et filii regni, coelestem
that sharers of-future consolation and sons of-the-kingdom the-heavenly
coronam et gloriam sortiamini. Rogamus igitur caritatem
crown and glory you-should-obtain we-ask therefore charity
vestram, ut instanter divinam misericordiam implorare
your that urgently divine mercy to-implore
studeatis, quatenus aut corda impiorum ad poenitentiam
you-strive that either the-hearts of-the-impious to penitence
vertat, aut reprimendo eorum nefanda consilia, quam
he-turn or by-checking their unspeakable counsels how
insipientes et stulti sint qui petram in Christo fundatam
foolish and stupid they-be who the-rock in Christ founded
evertere et divina privilegia violare conantur, ostendat.
to-overturn and divine privileges to-violate try he-may-show
Beate Petre apostolorum princeps, inclina quaeso pias aures
blessed Peter of-the-apostles prince incline I-beseech dutiful ears
tuas nobis, et audi me servum tuum, quem ab infantia
your to-us and hear me servant your whom from infancy
nutristi et usque ad hanc diem de manu iniquorum
you-have-nourished and all-the-way to this day from the-hand of-the-wicked
liberasti, qui me pro tua fidelitate oderunt et odiunt. Tu
have-freed who me for your fidelity have-hated and hate you
michi testis es, et domina mea mater Dei, et beatus
to-me witness are and lady my the-mother of-God and blessed
Paulus, frater tuus, inter omnes sanctos, quod tua sancta
Paul brother your among all the-saints that your holy
Romana ecclesia me invitum ad sua gubernacula traxit, et
Roman church me unwilling to its helm drew and
ego non rapinam arbitratus sum ad sedem tuam ascendere,
I not robbery thought(-it) I-have to see your to-ascend
potiusque volui vitam meam finire in peregrinatione, quam
and-rather I-wished life my to-end in pilgrimage than

locum tuum pro gloria mundi, pro saeculari ingenio arripere.
place your for the-glory of-the-world for worldly ingenuity to-seize
Et ideo ex tua gratia, non ex meis operibus credo, quod
and therefore by your grace not by my works I-believe that
placuit tibi et placet, ut populus christianus tibi specialiter
it-pleased you and pleases that the-people Christian to-you especially
commissus, michi obediat specialiter pro vice tua michi
entrusted me should-obey especially for office your to-me
commissa, et michi tua gratia est potestas a Deo data
committed and to-me by-your grace is the-power by God given
ligandi et solvendi in coelo et in terra. Hac itaque fiducia
of-binding and of-loosing in heaven and on earth by-this and-so trust
fretus, pro ecclesiae tuae honore et defensione, ex parte
relying for of-church your the-honor and defense from the-side
omnipotentis Dei Patris et Filii et Spiritus sancti, per
of-almighty God the-Father and the-Son and the-Spirit holy through
tuam potestatem et auctoritatem Heinrico regi filio Heinrici
your power and authority to-Henry the-king son of-Henry
imperatoris, qui contra tuam ecclesiam inaudita superbia
the-emperor who against your church with-unheard-of pride
insurrexit, totius regni Teutonicorum et Italiae gubernacula
has-risen-up of-the-whole kingdom of-the-Teutons and of-Italy the-government
contradico, et omnes christianos a vinculo iuramenti, quod
I-forbid and all Christians from the-bond of-the-oath which
sibi fecerunt vel facient, absolvo, et ut nullus ei sicut regi
to-him they-have-made or will-make I-absolve and that no-one him as king
serviat interdico. Dignum est enim, ut qui studet honorem
serve I-forbid worthy it-is for that he-who strives the-honor
ecclesiae tuae minuere, ipse honorem amittat, quem videtur
of-church your to-diminish he-himself the-honor should-lose which he-seems
habere. Et quia sicut christianus contempsit obedire, nec ad
to-have and because as a-Christian he-has-scorned to-obey nor to

Deum rediit quem dimisit, participando excommunicatis
God has-returned whom he-abandoned by-sharing with-the-excommunicate
et multas iniquitates faciendo, meaque monita, quae pro
and many iniquities by-doing and-my admonitions which for
sua salute sibi misi, te teste spernendo, seque ab
his salvation to-him I-sent you witness by-spurning and-himself from
ecclesia tua, temptans eam scindere, separando, vinculo eum
church your trying it to-split by-separating with-the-bond him
anathematis vice tua alligo, et sic eum ex fiducia tua
of-anathema in-place your I-bind and thus him from trust your
alligo, ut sciant gentes et comprobent, quia tu es Petrus,
I-bind that may-know the-nations and prove that you are Peter
et super tuam petram filius Dei vivi aedificavit ecclesiam
and upon your rock the-Son of-God living has-built church
suam, et portae inferi non praevalebunt adversus eam.
his and the-gates of-hell not will-prevail against it
Deinde non longo tempore transacto, domnus apostolicus,
then not long time having-passed lord apostolic
ne regem magis iniuriae suae dolore quam zelo iustitiae
lest the-king more of-injury his by-the-pain than by-zeal for-justice
excommunicasse putaretur, has litteras ad regiones
to-have-excommunicated he-might-be-thought this letter to the-regions
Teutonicas misit, quibus se iuste eum excommunicasse
Teutonic sent in-which himself justly him to-have-excommunicated
testatur:
testifies
Gregorius episcopus servus servorum Dei, omnibus episcopis,
Gregory bishop servant of-the-servants of-God to-all bishops
ducibus et comitibus, ceterisque fidelibus in in regno
dukes and counts and-the-other faithful in in the-kingdom
Teutonicorum christianam fidem defendentibus, salutem et
of-the-Teutons the-Christian faith defending greeting and

apostolicam benedictionem. Audivimus quosdam inter vos
apostolic blessing we-have-heard some among you
de excommunicatione, quam in regem fecimus, dubitare,
about the-excommunication which against the-king we-made to-doubt
ac quaerere utrum iuste excommunicatus sit, et si nostra
and to-ask whether justly excommunicated he-be and if our
sententia ex auctoritate legalis censurae ea qua
sentence from the-authority of-legal censure with-that with-which
debuit deliberatione progressa est. Quapropter, qualiter ad
it-ought deliberation proceeded has wherefore how to
excommunicandum illum adducti simus, prout verius potuimus,
excommunicating him led we-were as truly we-could
teste conscientia nostra, oculis et intellectibus omnium
witness conscience our to-the-eyes and understandings of-all
patefacere curavimus, non tam ut singulas causas, quae
to-lay-open we-have-taken-care not so-much that the-single causes which
heu nimium notae sunt, quasi nostro clamore in publicum
alas too known are as-if by-our outcry into public
proiciamus, quam ut eorum opinioni satisfaciamus, qui putant
we-may-cast as that their opinion we-may-satisfy who think
nos spiritualem gladium temere et magis motu animi
us the-spiritual sword rashly and more by-the-impulse of-mind
nostri quam divino metu et iustitiae zelo arripuisse. Cum
our than by-divine fear and of-justice zeal to-have-seized when
adhuc in diaconatus officio positi essemus, perlata ad nos
still in of-the-diaconate the-office placed we-were brought to us
de actionibus regis sinistra et multum inhonesta fama,
about the-actions of-the-king sinister and very dishonorable report
propter imperialem dignitatem et reverentiam patris ac
on-account-of the-imperial dignity and reverence of-the-father and
matris eius, necnon propter spem ac desiderium correctionis
mother his and-also on-account-of the-hope and desire of-amendment

suae saepe eum per litteras et nuntios admonuimus, ut
his often him by letters and messengers we-admonished that
a pravitate sua desisteret, et memor clarissimi generis
from depravity his he-should-desist and mindful of-most-illustrious lineage
ac dignitatis suae, vitam suam moribus, quibus regem
and dignity his life his with-the-character which a-king
et futurum Deo donante deceret imperatorem, institueret.
and future God granting(-it) would-befit an-emperor he-should-order
Postquam vero ad pontificatus apicem licet indigni venimus,
after but to of-the-pontificate the-summit though unworthy we-came
cum illius aetas pariter cresceret et iniquitas, intelligentes
since his age equally grew and iniquity understanding
Deum omnipotentem tanto districtius de manu nostra animam
God almighty the more-strictly from hand our the-soul
illius requisiturum, quanto nobis ad increpandum illum prae
his about-to-require the-more to-us for rebuking him beyond
ceteris libertas data fuisset et auctoritas, multo sollicitius
others liberty given had-been and authority much more-anxiously
eum modis omnibus, arguendo, obsecrando, increpando, ad
him in-ways all by-reproving by-beseeching by-rebuking to
emendationem vitae suae hortati sumus. Qui cum saepe
the-amendment of-life his exhorted we-have who though often
nobis devotas salutationes et litteras mitteret, excusans se
to-us devoted greetings and letters he-sent excusing himself
cum ex aetate quod fluxa esset et fragilis, tum
both on-account-of age because fickle it-was and frail and
quod ab his, in quorum manibus curia erat, multotiens
because by those in whose hands the-court was many-times
sibi male suasum atque consultum sit, monita nostra
to-him ill persuaded and counseled it-had-been admonitions our
de die in diem se promptissime suscepturum verbis
from day to day himself most-readily about-to-receive by-words

quidem promisit, ceterum re et exaggeratione culparum
indeed he-promised but by-deed and by-heaping-up of-faults
penitus conculcavit. Inter haec quosdam familiares suos,
utterly he-trampled(-them) among these-things certain intimates his
quorum consiliis et machinationibus episcopatus et multa
whose by-the-counsels and machinations bishoprics and many
monasteria, inductus per pretium, lupis pro pastoribus
monasteries induced for a-price wolves in-place-of shepherds
simoniaca haeresi foedaverat, ad poenitentiam vocavimus,
with-the-simoniac heresy he-had-defiled to penitence we-called
quatenus et bona ecclesiarum, quae per interventum tam
that both the-goods of-the-churches which through the-intervention of-so
scelerati commercii sacrilega manu susceperant, venerabilibus
wicked a-commerce with-sacrilegious hand they-had-received to-the-venerable
locis ad quae pertinerent, dum adhuc locus esset emendandi,
places to which they-belonged while still room there-was for-amending
redderent, et ipsi pro perpetrata iniquitate per
they-should-return and they-themselves for the-committed iniquity through
lamenta poenitudinis Deo satisfacerent. Quos dum ad
the-laments of-penitence to-God should-make-satisfaction whom when for
haec exequenda datas inducias spernere et in consueta
these-things to-be-carried-out the-given respite to-spurn and in their-accustomed
nequitia pertinaciter stare cognovimus, sicut dignum erat
wickedness obstinately to-stand we-learned as worthy it-was
sacrilegos et ministros ac membra diaboli a communione
sacrilegious and ministers and limbs of-the-devil from the-communion
et corpore totius ecclesiae separavimus, et regem, ut
and body of-the-whole church we-separated and the-king that
eos a domo sua, a consiliis et omni communione sua
them from house his from counsels and all communion his
sicut excommunicatos expelleret, ammonuimus. Interim vero
as excommunicate he-should-expel we-admonished meanwhile but

aggravescente contra regem Saxonum causa, cum vires et
growing-heavier against the-king of-the-Saxons the-cause when the-strength and
praesidia regni ex maxima parte a se deficere velle
garrisons of-the-kingdom from the-greatest part from himself to-fall-away to-wish
videret, iterum nobis direxit epistolam supplicem et omni
he-saw again to-us he-directed a-letter suppliant and with-all
humilitate plenam, in qua omnipotenti Deo et beato Petro
humility full in which to-almighty God and to-blessed Peter
ac nobis valde se culpabilem reddens, preces etiam obtulit,
and to-us very himself guilty rendering prayers also he-offered
ut quod ex sua culpa in ecclesiasticis causis contra canonicam
that what by his fault in ecclesiastical causes against canonical
iustitiam et decreta sanctorum patrum factum esset, nostra
justice and the-decrees of-the-holy fathers done had-been by-our
apostolica providentia et auctoritate corrigere studeremus;
apostolic providence and authority to-correct we-would-strive
atque in eo suam nobis per omnia obedientiam, consensum
and in this his to-us in all-things obedience consent
et fidele promisit adiutorium. Hoc idem etiam postea
and faithful he-promised help this same also afterward
a confratribus et legatis nostris, Humberto Praenestino
by fellow-brothers and envoys our Hubert of-Palestrina
episcopo, et Geraldo Ostiensi episcopo, quos ad illum
bishop and Gerald of-Ostia bishop whom to him
misimus, ad poenitentiam susceptus, in illorum manus
we-sent to penitence received into their hands
per sacratas stolas quas in collo tenebant, repromittendo
by the-consecrated stoles which on the-neck they-held by-promising-again
confirmavit. Deinde post aliquod tempus commisso cum
he-confirmed then after some time having-been-joined with
Saxonibus proelio, rex pro victoria quam adeptus est,
the-Saxons the-battle the-king for the-victory which obtained he-has

tales Deo grates et victimas obtulit, ut vota quae de
such to-God thanks and victims offered that the-vows which about
emendatione sua fecerat continuo frangeret, et nichil
amendment his he-had-made at-once he-broke and nothing
eorum quae promiserat attendens, excommunicatos in
of-those-things which he-had-promised heeding the-excommunicate into
suam familiaritatem et communionem reciperet, et ecclesias
his familiarity and communion he-received and the-churches
in eam quam consueverat confusionem traheret. Qua
into that which he-had-been-accustomed confusion he-dragged which
de re gravi dolore percussi, quamquam post contempta
about matter by-heavy grief struck although after the-scorned
coelestis regis beneficia paene omnis spes correctionis eius
of-the-heavenly king benefits almost all hope of-amendment his
nobis ablata sit, adhuc tamen animum eius temptandum fore
from-us taken-away was still yet the-mind his to-be-tested to-be
decrevimus, magis cupientes eum apostolicam mansuetudinem
we-decided more desiring him apostolic gentleness
audire, quam experiri severitatem. Itaque misimus ei
to-hear than to-experience severity and-so we-sent to-him
epistolas commonitorias, ut meminerit quid et cui
letters of-admonition that he-should-remember what and to-whom
promiserit, ne credat se posse fallere Deum, cuius
he-had-promised lest he-believe himself to-be-able to-deceive God whose
quanto prolixior est patientia, tanto severior est, cum
by-how-much longer is patience by-so-much severer is when
iudicare coeperit, ira; neu inhonoret Deum honorantem se,
to-judge has-begun anger nor dishonor God honoring him
nec potentiam suam ad Dei contemptum et apostolicam
nor power his to of-God the-contempt and apostolic
temptet extendere contumeliam, sciens quod superbis Deus
attempt to-extend insult knowing that the-proud God

resistit, humilibus autem dat gratiam. Praeterea misimus
resists to-the-humble moreover gives grace moreover we-sent
ad eum tres religiosos viros, suos utique fideles, per
to him three religious men his-own surely faithful-ones through
quos eum secreto monuimus, ut poenitentiam ageret de
whom him secretly we-warned that penitence he-should-do for
sceleribus suis, quae quidem horrenda dictu sunt, pluribus
crimes his which indeed horrible to-tell are to-many
autem nota et in multis partibus divulgata; propter
moreover known and in many parts spread-abroad on-account-of
quae eum non excommunicari solum usque ad condignam
which him not to-be-excommunicated only until to fitting
satisfactionem, sed ab omni honore regni absque spe
satisfaction but from all honor of-the-kingdom without hope
recuperationis debere destitui, divinarum et humanarum
of-recovery to-be-bound to-be-deprived of-divine and human
legum testatur auctoritas. Postremo nisi excommunicatos
laws testifies the-authority finally unless the-excommunicate
a sua participatione divideret, nos nichil aliud de eo
from his participation he-should-divide we nothing else about him
iudicare aut decernere posse, nisi ut separatus ab ecclesia
to-judge or to-decree to-be-able except that separated from the-church
in excommunicatorum consortio foret, cum quibus ipse
in of-the-excommunicate the-fellowship he-should-be with whom he-himself
potius quam cum Christo partem habere elegit. Sane si
rather than with Christ a-part to-have has-chosen truly if
nostra monita suscipere et vitam suam corrigere vellet,
our admonitions to-receive and life his to-correct he-would-wish
Deum testem invocavimus et invocamus, quantum nos de
God as-witness we-invoked and invoke how-much we over
eius salute et honore gauderemus, et cum quanta caritate
his salvation and honor would-rejoice and with how-great charity

eum in gremium sanctae ecclesiae amplecteremur, utpote
him into the-bosom of-holy church we-would-embrace as-being
eum qui princeps populi constitutus et amplissimi regni
him who prince of-the-people established and of-a-most-ample kingdom
gubernacula tenens, catholicae pacis et iustitiae defensor esse
the-helm holding of-catholic peace and justice the-defender to-be
deberet. Verum quanti ipse aut scripta aut per
ought but of-how-much-worth he-himself either in-writing or through
legatos missa nostra verba fecerit, eius facta declarant. Qui
envoys sent our words has-made his deeds declare who
indigne ferens se a quoquam reprehendi aut corripi,
indignantly bearing himself by anyone to-be-reproved or to-be-rebuked
non solum a perpetratis ad emendationem revocari non
not only from things-committed to amendment to-be-recalled not
potuit, sed ampliori conscientiae suae furore arreptus non
he-could but by-ampler of-conscience his fury seized not
prius cessavit, donec episcopos paene omnes in Italia, in
before he-ceased until the-bishops almost all in Italy in
Teutonicis vero partibus quotquot potuit, circa fidem
Teutonic but parts as-many-as he-could concerning the-faith
Christi naufragare fecit, dum eos debitam beato Petro
of-Christ to-suffer-shipwreck he-caused while them the-due to-blessed Peter
et apostolicae sedi obedientiam et honorem a domino
and to-the-apostolic see obedience and honor by the-Lord
nostro Iesu Christo concessum abnegare subegit. Cum igitur
our Jesus Christ granted to-deny he-compelled when therefore
iniquitatem eius ad summum prodisse vidimus, pro his
the-iniquity his to the-height to-have-come-forth we-saw for these
causis, videlicet primum, quod ab eorum communione, qui
causes namely first that from their communion who
pro sacrilegio et reatu simoniacae haeresis excommunicati
for sacrilege and the-guilt of-simoniac heresy excommunicated

sunt, se abstinere noluit; deinde quod pro criminosis
are himself to-abstain he-would-not then that for the-criminal
actibus suae vitae poenitentiam non dico suscipere sed nec
acts of-his life penitence not I-say to-undertake but not-even
promittere quidem voluit, mentita ea fide quam in manus
to-promise indeed he-would having-belied that faith which into the-hands
legatorum nostrorum promiserat; necnon quod corpus Christi,
of-envoys our he-had-promised and-also that the-body of-Christ
id est unitatem sanctae ecclesiae, scindere non expavit: pro
that is the-unity of-holy church to-split not he-dreaded for
his, inquam, culpis synodali iudicio eum excommunicavimus,
these I-say faults by-synodal judgment him we-have-excommunicated
ut quem mites non potuimus, vel severi ad viam salutis
that whom gentle not we-could at-least severe to the-way of-salvation
Deo adiuvante revocare valeamus, aut si, quod absit, nec
God helping to-recall we-may-be-able or if which far-be-it nor
districtionis quidem censuram pertimuerit, nostra saltem
of-strictness indeed the-censure he-shall-have-dreaded our at-least
anima negligentiae aut timoris discrimini non succumbat.
soul of-negligence or of-fear to-the-peril not may-succumb
Si quis igitur hanc sententiam iniuste vel irrationabiliter
if anyone therefore this sentence unjustly or irrationally
prolatam esse putaverit, si talis est ut sacris regulis
pronounced to-be shall-have-thought if such he-is that to-the-sacred rules
intelligentiae sensum praebere velit, nobiscum inde agat,
of-understanding the-sense to-offer he-wish with-us about-it let-him-treat
et non quid nos sed quid divina auctoritas doceat, quid
and not what we but what divine authority teaches what
decernat, quid consona vox sanctorum patrum iudicet,
decrees what the-harmonious voice of-the-holy fathers judges
patienter audiens acquiescat. Nos tamen non aestimamus
patiently hearing let-him-acquiesce we yet not judge

quemquam fidelium, qui ecclesiastica statuta noverit, hoc
any of-the-faithful who the-ecclesiastical statutes knows by-this
errore teneri, ut non hoc, et si publice affirmare non
error to-be-held that not this even if publicly to-affirm not
audeat, vel in corde suo recte factum esse perhibeat;
he-dare at-least in heart his rightly done to-be he-declares
quamquam et si nos, quod Deus avertat, non satis gravi
although even if we which God avert not enough grave
de causa aut minus ordinate eum huiusmodi vinculo
for cause or less properly him of-this-kind with-a-bond
ligaverimus, sicut sancti patres asserunt, non idcirco
should-have-bound as the-holy fathers assert not for-that-reason
spernenda esset sententia, sed absolutio cum omni humilitate
to-be-spurned would-be the-sentence but absolution with all humility
quaerenda. Vos autem, dilectissimi, qui iustitiam Dei non
to-be-sought you moreover most-beloved who the-justice of-God not
pro regia indignatione, non pro aliquo periculo deserere
for royal indignation not for any danger to-desert
voluistis, fatuitatem eorum qui de execratione et mendacio
have-wished the-folly of-those who of execration and lying
annuntiabuntur in consummatione, parvipendentes, viriliter
will-be-announced at the-consummation making-light-of manfully
state et confortamini in Domino, scientes quod illius partem
stand and be-strengthened in the-Lord knowing that his side
defenditis, qui insuperabilis rex et magnificus triumphator
you-defend who unconquerable king and magnificent triumpher
iudicaturus est vivos et mortuos, reddens unicuique
about-to-judge is the-living and the-dead rendering to-each
secundum opus suum. De cuius multimoda retributione
according-to work his of whose manifold recompense
et vos certi esse poteritis, si usque in finem fideles et
also you sure to-be will-be-able if all-the-way to the-end faithful and

inconcussi in eius veritate perstiteritis. Propter quod et
unshaken in his truth you-shall-have-persevered on-account-of which also
nos incessanter pro vobis rogamus Deum, ut det vobis
we unceasingly for you ask God that he-may-give you
virtutem corroborari per Spiritum sanctum in nomine
strength to-be-strengthened through the-Spirit holy in name
eius, et convertat cor regis ad poenitentiam, ut et
his and may-turn the-heart of-the-king to penitence that also
ipse aliquando agnoscat, nos et vos multo verius amare
he-himself sometime may-recognize us and you much more-truly to-love
eum, quam qui nunc suis iniquitatibus obsequuntur et
him than those-who now to-his iniquities defer and
favent. Qui si Deo inspirante voluerit resipiscere,
favor who if God inspiring(-him) he-shall-have-wished to-come-to-his-senses
quicquid contra nos moliatur, semper tamen nos ad
whatever against us he-may-contrive always nevertheless us for
recipiendum eum in sanctam communionem, prout vestra
receiving him into holy communion as your
caritas nobis consuluerit, paratos inveniet.
charity to-us shall-have-counseled ready he-will-find

Gregory answers those who say that a king cannot be excommunicated or his subjects freed from their oath. The keys given to Peter except no one; Gelasius and Julius taught the Roman see's primacy; Gregory the Great, Innocent, and Ambrose condemned kings and emperors, and a pope deposed a Frankish king and freed the Franks from their oath. The priesthood, instituted by God, stands above kingship, which pride founded; few kings have been saints, against nearly a hundred popes, so kings must rule in humility. Bishops must not fear to tell princes the truth.

Postea vero, ut excommunicationem quam fecerat amplius
afterward but that the-excommunication which he-had-made further
confirmaret, has litteras misit in Teutonicas regiones:
he-might-confirm this letter he-sent into the-Teutonic regions
Gregorius episcopus servus servorum Dei, dilecto in Christo
Gregory bishop servant of-the-servants of-God to-beloved in Christ
fratri N. episcopo salutem et apostolicam benedictionem.
brother N bishop greeting and apostolic blessing
Quod ad perferendos labores ac pericula pro defensione
that for enduring labors and dangers for the-defense
veritatis te paratum intelligimus, divini muneris esse non
of-truth you ready we-understand of-divine gift to-be not
dubitamus, cuius haec est ineffabilis gratia et mira
we-doubt whose this is ineffable grace and wonderful
clementia, quod numquam electos suos penitus aberrare
clemency that never elect his utterly to-stray
permittit, numquam funditus labefactari aut deici
he-permits never from-the-foundation to-be-shaken or to-be-cast-down
sinit, dum eos persecutionis tempore quadam utili probatione
he-allows while them of-persecution in-the-time by-a-certain useful testing
discussos, etiam post trepidationem aliquam semet ipsis
tried even after alarm some than-them themselves

fortiores facit. Quoniam autem, sicut inter ignavos alium,
stronger he-makes since moreover as among cowards one
quo turpius alio fugiat, timor exanimat, ita etiam
so-that more-shamefully than-another he-flees fear unnerves so also
inter strennuos alium, quo fortius alio agat, quo
among the-vigorous one so-that more-bravely than-another acts so-that
ardentius prorumpat, virile pectus inflammat: hoc caritati
more-ardently bursts-forth the-manly breast inflames this to-charity
tuae exhortationis voce curavimus commendare, ut
your of-exhortation by-the-voice we-have-taken-care to-commend that
eo magis in acie christianae religionis stare te
by-that the-more in the-battle-line of-the-Christian religion to-stand you
delectet inter primos, quo eos non dubitas victori
may-delight among the-first in-that them not you-doubt to-the-victor
Deo proximos atque dignissimos. Quod autem postulasti,
God nearest and most-worthy that moreover you-have-asked
te quasi nostris scriptis iuvari ac praemuniri contra
you as-if by-our writings to-be-helped and to-be-forearmed against
illorum insaniam, qui nefando ore garriunt, auctoritatem
their madness who with-unspeakable mouth chatter the-authority
sanctae apostolicae sedis non potuisse regem Heinricum,
of-the-holy apostolic see not to-have-been-able king Henry
hominem christianae legis contemptorem, ecclesiarum videlicet
a-man of-the-Christian law a-despiser of-the-churches namely
et imperii destructorem atque haereticorum auctorem
and of-the-empire destroyer and of-heretics author
et consentaneum, excommunicare, nec quemquam a
and fellow-partisan to-excommunicate nor anyone from
sacramento fidelitatis eius absolvere, non adeo necessarium
the-oath of-fealty to-him to-absolve not so necessary
nobis videtur, cum huius rei tam multa ac certissima
to-us it-seems since of-this matter so many and most-certain

documenta in sacrarum scripturarum paginis reperiantur.
proofs in of-the-sacred scriptures the-pages are-found
Neque enim credimus eos, qui ad cumulum suae damnationis
nor for do-we-believe them who to the-heap of-their damnation
veritati impudenter detrahunt et contradicunt, haec ad
the-truth shamelessly disparage and contradict these-things for
suae defensionis audaciam tam ignorantia quam miserae
of-their defense the-boldness as-much by-ignorance as of-wretched
desperationis vecordia coaptasse. Nec mirum; mos est
despair by-the-madness to-have-fitted nor a-wonder the-way it-is
enim reproborum ob suae nequitiae protectionem
for of-the-reprobate on-account-of of-their wickedness the-protection
consimiles sibi defendere, quia pro nichilo habent
the-like to-themselves to-defend because for nothing they-hold
mendacii perditionem incurrere. Nam ut de multis pauca
of-a-lie the-perdition to-incur for that of many-things a-few
dicamus, quis ignorat vocem domini ac salvatoris nostri
we-may-say who knows-not the-voice of-the-Lord and savior our
Iesu Christi dicentis in euangelio: 'Tu es Petrus, et super
Jesus Christ saying in the-gospel you are Peter and upon
hanc petram aedificabo ecclesiam meam, et portae inferi non
this rock I-shall-build church my and the-gates of-hell not
praevalebunt adversus eam. Et tibi dabo claves regni
will-prevail against it and to-you I-shall-give the-keys of-the-kingdom
coelorum, et quodcunque ligaveris super terram, erit
of-the-heavens and whatever you-shall-have-bound upon earth will-be
ligatum et in coelis, et quodcunque solveris super
bound also in the-heavens and whatever you-shall-have-loosed upon
terram, erit solutum et in coelis?' Numquid hic sunt reges
earth will-be loosed also in the-heavens surely-not here are kings
excepti, aut non sunt de ovibus quas filius Dei beato
excepted or not are-they of the-sheep whom the-Son of-God to-blessed

Petro commisit? Quis, rogo, in hac universali concessione
Peter committed who I-ask in this universal grant
ligandi atque solvendi a potestate Petri se exclusum
of-binding and of-loosing from the-power of-Peter himself excluded
esse existimat, nisi forte infelix ille, qui iugum Domini
to-be thinks unless perhaps unhappy(-man) that who the-yoke of-the-Lord
portare nolens, diaboli se subicit oneri, et in numero
to-carry unwilling of-the-devil himself subjects to-the-burden and in the-number
ovium Christi esse recusat? Cui tamen hoc ad miseram
of-the-sheep of-Christ to-be refuses to-whom yet this for wretched
libertatem minime proficit, quia potestatem Petri divinitus
liberty least-of-all profits because the-power of-Peter divinely
sibi concessam a superba cervice excutit; quoniam quanto
to-him granted from (his)-proud neck he-shakes-off since the-more
eam quisque per elationem ferre abnegat, tanto durius ad
it each through pride to-bear refuses the more-harshly to
damnationem suam in iudicio portat. Hanc itaque divinae
damnation his at the-judgment he-carries this and-so of-divine
voluntatis institutionem, hoc firmamentum dispensationis
will institution this foundation of-the-dispensation
ecclesiae, hoc privilegium beato Petro apostolorum principi
of-the-church this privilege to-blessed Peter of-the-apostles prince
coelesti decreto principaliter traditum atque firmatum,
by-heavenly decree principally handed-down and confirmed
sancti patres cum magna veneratione suscipientes atque
the-holy fathers with great veneration receiving and
servantes, sanctam Romanam ecclesiam tam in generalibus
keeping the-holy Roman church both in general
conciliis, quam etiam in ceteris scriptis et gestis suis
councils and also in other writings and deeds their
universalem matrem appellaverunt; et sicut eius documenta in
the-universal mother have-called and as its teachings in

confirmatione fidei et eruditione sacrae religionis, ita etiam
the-confirmation of-faith and the-instruction of-sacred religion so also
iudicia susceperunt, in hoc consentientes et quasi uno
judgments they-received in this agreeing and as-if with-one
spiritu et una voce concordantes, omnes maiores res
spirit and with-one voice harmonizing all greater matters
et praecipua negotia, necnon omnium ecclesiarum iudicia,
and chief affairs and-also of-all churches the-judgments
ad eam quasi ad matrem et caput debere referri; ab
to it as to the-mother and head to-be-bound to-be-referred from
ea nusquam appellari, iudicia eius a nemine retractari
it nowhere to-be-appealed the-judgments its by no-one to-be-reconsidered
aut refelli debere aut posse. Unde beatus Gelasius papa
or to-be-refuted to-be-bound or to-be-able whence blessed Gelasius pope
Anastasio imperatori scribens, divina fultus auctoritate, quid
to-Anastasius the-emperor writing by-divine supported authority what
et qualiter de principatu sanctae et apostolicae sedis sentire
and how about the-primacy of-the-holy and apostolic see to-think
deberet, hoc modo eum instruxit: 'Etsi, inquit, cunctis
he-ought in-this way him instructed even-if he-says to-all
generaliter sacerdotibus recte divina tractantibus, fidelium
generally priests rightly divine-things handling of-the-faithful
convenit colla submitti, quanto potius sedis illius praesuli
it-befits the-necks to-be-bowed how-much rather of-the-see of-that to-the-prelate
consensus est adhibendus, quem cunctis sacerdotibus et
consent is to-be-given whom over-all priests both
divinitas summa voluit praeminere, et subsequens ecclesiae
the-divinity supreme wished to-be-preeminent and the-subsequent of-the-church
generalis iugiter pietas celebravit? Ubi prudentia tua evidenter
general continually piety has-celebrated where prudence your evidently
advertit, numquam quolibet penitus humano consilio aequare
notices never by-any at-all human counsel to-equal

se quemquam posse illius privilegio vel confessioni, quem
himself anyone to-be-able of-him to-the-privilege or confession whom
Christi vox praetulit universis, quem ecclesia veneranda
of-Christ the-voice preferred to-all whom the-church venerable
semper confessa est et habet devota primatem.' Item
always confessed has and holds devout as-primate likewise
Iulius papa orientalibus episcopis scribens, de potestate
Julius pope to-the-eastern bishops writing about the-power
eiusdem sanctae et apostolicae sedis ait: 'Decuerat vos,
of-the-same holy and apostolic see says it-had-behooved you
fratres, adversus sanctam Romanam et apostolicam ecclesiam
brothers against the-holy Roman and apostolic church
limate, et non ironice loqui, quoniam et ipse dominus
polishedly and not ironically to-speak since even himself the-Lord
noster Iesus Christus eam decenter allocutus ait: "Tu es
our Jesus Christ it fittingly having-addressed says you are
Petrus, et super hanc petram aedificabo ecclesiam meam,
Peter and upon this rock I-shall-build church my
et portae inferi non praevalebunt adversus eam, et tibi
and the-gates of-hell not will-prevail against it and to-you
dabo claves regni coelorum." Habet enim potestatem
I-shall-give the-keys of-the-kingdom of-the-heavens it-has for power
singulari privilegio sibi concessam, aperire et claudere
by-singular privilege to-it granted to-open and to-close
ianuam regni coelestis, quibus voluerit.' Cui ergo
the-gate of-the-kingdom heavenly to-whom it-shall-have-wished to-whom therefore
aperiendi et claudendi coeli data est potestas, de terra
of-opening and of-closing heaven given is the-power about the-earth
iudicare non licet? Absit. Num retinetis, quod ait
to-judge not is-it-allowed far-be-it surely you-remember what says
beatus Paulus apostolus: 'Nescitis quia angelos iudicabimus,
blessed Paul the-apostle know-you-not that angels we-shall-judge

quanto magis saecularia?' Beatus quoque Gregorius papa
how-much more worldly-things blessed also Gregory pope
reges a sua dignitate cadere statuit, qui apostolicae
kings from their dignity to-fall established who of-the-apostolic
sedis decreta violare praesumpserint, scribens ad quendam
see the-decrees to-violate should-presume writing to a-certain
senatorem his verbis: 'Si quis regum, sacerdotum, iudicum
senator in-these words if any of-kings of-priests of-judges
atque saecularium personarum hanc constitutionis nostrae
and of-secular persons this of-constitution our
paginam agnoscens, contra eam venire temptaverit, potestatis
page knowing against it to-come shall-have-tried of-power
honorisque sui dignitate careat, reumque se divino
and-of-honor his of-the-dignity let-him-be-deprived and-guilty himself by-divine
iudicio existere de perpetrata iniquitate cognoscat, et nisi
judgment to-stand for the-perpetrated iniquity let-him-know and unless
ea quae ab illo sunt male ablata restituerit,
those-things which by him have-been wrongly taken-away he-shall-have-restored
vel digna poenitentia illicite acta defleverit, a
or by-worthy penance the-illicitly done-things shall-have-bewailed from
sacratissimo corpore ac sanguine domini redemptoris nostri
the-most-sacred body and blood of-the-Lord redeemer our
Iesu Christi alienus fiat, atque in aeterno examine
Jesus Christ estranged let-him-become and in the-eternal examination
districtae ultioni subiaceat.' Quod si beatus Gregorius,
to-strict vengeance let-him-be-subject which if blessed Gregory
doctor utique mitissimus, reges qui statuta sua super
a-doctor surely most-mild kings who statutes his about
unum xenodochium violarent, non modo deponi, sed etiam
one hospice should-violate not only to-be-deposed but even
excommunicari atque in aeterno examine damnari decrevit;
to-be-excommunicated and in the-eternal examination to-be-condemned decreed

quis nos Heinricum, non solum apostolicorum iudiciorum
who us Henry not only of-apostolic judgments
contemptorem, verum etiam ipsius matris ecclesiae, quantum
the-despiser but also of-the-very mother church as-much-as
in ipso est, conculcatorem, totiusque regni et ecclesiarum
in him is the-trampler and-of-the-whole kingdom and of-the-churches
improbissimum praedonem et atrocissimum destructorem,
most-wicked plunderer and most-atrocious destroyer
deposuisse et excommunicasse reprehendat, nisi forte similis
to-have-deposed and to-have-excommunicated would-blame unless perhaps one-like
eius; sicut beato Petro docente cognovimus in epistola
him as from-blessed Peter teaching we-have-learned in the-letter
de ordinatione Clementis, in qua sic ait: 'Si quis amicus
about the-ordination of-Clement in which thus he-says if anyone friend
fuerit his, quibus ipse' — de eodem Clemente dicens —
shall-have-been to-those to-whom he-himself about the-same Clement saying
'non loquitur, unus est et ipse ex illis, qui exterminare
not speaks one he-is also himself of them who to-exterminate
Dei ecclesiam volunt; et cum corpore nobiscum esse videtur,
of-God the-church wish and while in-body with-us to-be he-seems
mente et animo contra nos est, et est multo nequior hostis
in-mind and spirit against us he-is and is much more-wicked enemy
hic, quam illi qui foris sunt et evidenter inimici. Hic
this-one than those who outside are and evidently enemies this-one
enim per amicitiarum speciem quae inimica sunt gerit,
for under of-friendships the-show what hostile are carries-on
et ecclesiam dispergit ac vastat.' Nota ergo, carissime, si
and the-church scatters and lays-waste note therefore dearest if
eum qui amicitia vel colloquio his, quibus papa pro
him who in-friendship or conversation with-those from-whom the-pope for
actibus suis aversus est, associatur, tam graviter iudicat:
acts their turned-away is associates so gravely he-judges

quanta illum ipsum, cui pro actibus suis aversus est,
with-how-great him himself from-whom for acts his turned-away he-is
animadversione damnat. Sed ut ad rem redeamus, itane
punishment he-condemns but that to the-matter we-may-return so
dignitas a saecularibus et Deum ignorantibus inventa, non
the-dignity by worldly-men and God not-knowing invented not
subicietur ei dignitati, quam omnipotentis Dei providentia
will-be-subjected to-that dignity which of-almighty God the-providence
ad honorem suum invenit mundoque misericorditer tribuit?
for honor his invented and-to-the-world mercifully granted
Cuius filius sicut deus et homo indubitanter creditur, ita
whose Son as God and man undoubtedly is-believed so
summus sacerdos, caput omnium sacerdotum, ad dexteram
the-highest priest head of-all priests at the-right
Patris sedens, et pro nobis semper interpellans habetur,
of-the-Father sitting and for us always interceding is-held
qui saeculare regnum, unde filii saeculi tument, despexit
who the-worldly kingdom whence the-sons of-the-world swell despised
et ad sacerdotium crucis spontaneus venit. Quis nesciat,
and to the-priesthood of-the-cross of-his-own-accord came who knows-not
reges et duces ab his habuisse principium, qui Deum
kings and dukes from those to-have-had beginning who God
ignorantes, superbia, rapinis, perfidia, homicidiis, postremo
not-knowing by-pride by-plunderings by-treachery by-murders finally
universis paene sceleribus, mundi principe videlicet diabolo
by-all almost crimes of-the-world the-prince namely the-devil
agitante, super pares, scilicet homines, dominari caeca
driving(-them) over equals namely men to-lord-it with-blind
cupidine et intolerabili praesumptione affectaverunt? Qui
greed and intolerable presumption have-aspired who
videlicet, dum sacerdotes Domini ad vestigia sua inclinare
namely while the-priests of-the-Lord to the-footprints their to-bow

contendunt, cui rectius comparantur, quam ei qui
strive to-whom more-rightly are-they-compared than to-him who
est caput super omnes filios superbiae, qui ipsum summum
is head over all the-sons of-pride who the-very highest
pontificem, sacerdotum caput, Altissimi filium temptans, et
pontiff of-priests head of-the-Most-High the-Son tempting and
omnia illi mundi regna promittens ait: 'Haec omnia
all to-him of-the-world the-kingdoms promising says these-things all
tibi dabo, si procidens adoraveris me?' Quis dubitet,
to-you I-shall-give if falling-down you-shall-have-worshiped me who would-doubt
sacerdotes Christi regum et principum omniumque fidelium
the-priests of-Christ of-kings and of-princes and-of-all the-faithful
patres et magistros censeri? Nonne miserabilis insaniae
fathers and masters to-be-reckoned is-it-not of-wretched madness
esse cognoscitur, si filius patrem, discipulus magistrum
to-be known if a-son the-father a-pupil the-master
sibi conetur subiugare, et iniquis obligationibus illum suae
to-himself should-try to-subjugate and by-wicked obligations him to-his
potestati subicere, a quo credit non solum in terra, sed
power to-subject by whom he-believes not only on earth but
etiam in coelis se ligari posse et solvi? Haec,
also in the-heavens himself to-be-bound to-be-able and to-be-loosed these-things
sicut beatus Gregorius in epistola ad Mauricium imperatorem
as blessed Gregory in the-letter to Maurice the-emperor
directa commemorat, Constantinus magnus imperator, omnium
directed recalls Constantine the-great emperor of-all
regum et principum fere totius orbis dominus, evidenter
kings and princes nearly of-the-whole world the-lord clearly
intelligens, in sancta synodo Nicena post omnes episcopos
understanding in the-holy synod of-Nicaea after all the-bishops
ultimus residens, nullam iudicii sententiam super eos dare
last sitting no of-judgment sentence over them to-give

praesumpsit, sed illos etiam deos vocans, non suo debere
presumed but them even gods calling not to-his to-be-bound
subesse iudicio, verum se ab illorum pendere arbitrio
to-be-subject judgment but himself on their to-hang decision
iudicavit. Supradicto quoque Anastasio imperatori praelibatus
judged the-above-said also to-Anastasius the-emperor the-aforementioned
papa Gelasius persuadens, ne ille intimatam suis sensibus
pope Gelasius persuading lest he the-intimated to-his senses
veritatem arbitraretur iniuriam, subintulit dicens: 'Duo sunt
truth should-deem an-injury added saying two are
quippe, imperator auguste, quibus principaliter hic mundus
indeed emperor august by-which principally this world
regitur, auctoritas sancta pontificum et regalis potestas;
is-ruled the-authority sacred of-pontiffs and the-royal power
in quibus tanto gravius est pondus sacerdotum, quantum
in which so-much heavier is the-weight of-priests as-much-as
etiam pro ipsis regibus hominum in divino reddituri
even for the-very kings of-men in the-divine about-to-render
sunt examine rationem.' Et paucis interpositis inquit:
they-are examination an-account and few-things interposed he-says
'Nosti itaque inter haec illorum te pendere iudicio,
you-know and-so among these-things their you to-hang on-the-judgment
non illos ad tuam velle redigi voluntatem.' Talibus
not them to your to-wish to-be-brought will by-such
ergo institutis talibusque fulti auctoritatibus, plerique
therefore institutions and-by-such supported authorities very-many
pontificum alii reges, alii imperatores excommunicaverunt.
of-the-pontiffs some kings others emperors have-excommunicated
Nam si speciale aliquod de personis principum requiratur
for if special any of the-persons of-princes be-sought
exemplum, beatus Innocentius papa Archadium imperatorem,
an-example blessed Innocent pope Arcadius the-emperor

quia consensit ut sanctus Iohannes Crisostomus a
because he-consented that saint John Chrysostom from
sede sua pelleretur, excommunicavit. Alius item Romanus
see his should-be-driven excommunicated another likewise Roman
pontifex regem Francorum, non tam pro suis iniquitatibus,
pontiff the-king of-the-Franks not so-much for his iniquities
quam pro eo quod tantae potestati non erat utilis, a
as for this that to-so-great power not he-was useful from
regno deposuit, et Pipinum Karoli Magni imperatoris
the-kingdom deposed and Pippin of-Charles the-Great the-emperor
patrem in eius loco substituit, omnesque Francigenas a
the-father in his place substituted and-all the-Franks from
iuramento fidelitatis, quod illi fecerant, absolvit. Quod
the-oath of-fealty which to-him they-had-made absolved which
etiam ex frequenti auctoritate saepe agit ecclesia sancta, cum
also by frequent authority often does the-church holy when
milites absolvit a vinculo iuramenti, quod factum est
knights it-absolves from the-bond of-the-oath which made has-been
his episcopis, qui apostolica auctoritate a pontificali
to-those bishops who by-apostolic authority from the-pontifical
gradu deponuntur. Et beatus Ambrosius licet sanctus, non
rank are-deposed and blessed Ambrose though a-saint not
tamen universalis ecclesiae episcopus, pro culpa quae aliis
yet of-the-universal church bishop for a-fault which to-other
sacerdotibus non adeo gravis videbatur, Theodosium magnum
priests not so grave seemed Theodosius the-great
imperatorem excommunicans ab ecclesia exclusit. Qui etiam
emperor excommunicating from the-church excluded who also
in suis scriptis ostendit, quod aurum non ita pretiosius
in his writings shows that gold not so more-precious
sit plumbo, quam regia potestate altior sit dignitas
is than-lead as than-the-royal power loftier is the-dignity

sacerdotalis, hoc modo circa principium sui pastoralis
priestly in-this way about the-beginning of-his pastoral(-book)
scribens: 'Honor, fratres, et sublimitas episcopalis nullis
writing the-honor brothers and loftiness episcopal by-no
poterit comparationibus adaequari. Si regum fulgori
will-be-able comparisons to-be-equaled if of-kings to-the-brightness
compares et principum diademati, longe erit inferius,
you-compare and of-princes to-the-diadem far it-will-be inferior
quam si plumbi metallum ad auri fulgorem compares,
than if of-lead the-metal to of-gold the-brightness you-compare
quippe cum videas regum colla et principum submitti
indeed since you-see of-kings the-necks and of-princes to-be-bowed
genibus sacerdotum, et exosculata eorum dextera, eorum
to-the-knees of-priests and having-been-kissed their right-hand their
se credant orationibus communiri.' Et post pauca:
themselves they-believe by-the-prayers to-be-fortified and after a-few-things
'Haec cuncta, fratres, ideo nos praemisisse debetis
these all-things brothers for-this-reason we to-have-put-first you-ought
agnoscere, ut ostenderemus, nichil esse in hoc saeculo
to-recognize that we-might-show nothing to-be in this world
sacerdotibus excellentius, nichil sublimius episcopis reperiri.'
than-priests more-excellent nothing loftier than-bishops to-be-found
Meminisse etiam debet fraternitas tua, quia maior potestas
to-remember also ought fraternity your that greater power
exorcistae conceditur, cum spiritualis imperator ad abigendos
to-an-exorcist is-granted when as-spiritual emperor for driving-away
daemones constituitur, quam alicui laicorum causa saecularis
demons he-is-appointed than to-any of-the-laymen for-the-sake of-worldly
dominationis tribui possit. Omnibus regibus nempe et
lordship to-be-granted can over-all kings surely and
principibus terrae, qui religiose non vivunt, et in actibus
princes of-the-earth who religiously not live and in acts

suis Deum, ut oportet, non metuunt, daemones heu proh
their God as is-fitting not fear demons alas oh
dolor! dominantur, et misera servitute confundunt. Tales
grief lord-it and with-wretched servitude confound such
enim non divino ducti amore, sicut religiosi sacerdotes, ad
for not by-divine led love like religious priests for
honorem Dei et utilitatem animarum praeesse cupiunt, sed
the-honor of-God and the-benefit of-souls to-be-over desire but
ut intolerabilem superbiam ostentent animique libidinem
that intolerable pride they-may-show and-of-the-mind the-lust
expleant, ceteris dominari affectant. De quibus beatus
may-fulfill over-others to-lord-it aspire about whom blessed
Augustinus in libro primo de doctrina christiana dicit:
Augustine in the-book first on doctrine Christian says
'Cum vero etiam eis, qui sibi naturaliter pares sunt,
when but even over-those who to-him naturally equals are
hoc est hominibus, quilibet dominari affectat, intolerabilis
that is over-men anyone to-lord-it aspires intolerable
omnino superbia est.' Porro autem exorcistae, ut diximus,
altogether pride it-is further moreover exorcists as we-said
supra daemones a Deo imperium habent; quanto igitur
above demons from God command have how-much therefore
magis super eos, qui daemonibus subiecti et membra sunt
more over those who to-demons subject and limbs are
daemonum? Si ergo his tantum praeminent exorcistae,
of-demons if therefore over-these so-much surpass exorcists
quanto amplius sacerdotes? Praeterea omnis rex christianus
how-much more the-priests moreover every king Christian
ad exitum veniens, ut carcerem evadat inferni, ut de
to the-end coming that the-prison he-may-escape of-hell that from
tenebris in lucem tendat, ut de peccatorum vinculis in
darkness into light he-may-tend that from of-sins the-bonds in

Dei iudicio absolutus appareat, sacerdotis opem supplex
of-God the-judgment absolved he-may-appear of-a-priest the-help suppliant
ac miserandus requirit. Quis autem non modo sacerdotum,
and pitiable seeks who moreover not only of-priests
verum etiam laicorum in extremis positus, pro suae animae
but also of-laymen in extremity placed for of-his soul
salute terreni regis imploravit auxilium? Quis vero
the-salvation of-an-earthly king has-implored the-help who but
regum aut imperatorum aliquem christianum ex imposito
of-kings or emperors any Christian from the-imposed
sibi officio valet sacro baptismate ex diaboli potestate
on-him office is-able by-sacred baptism from of-the-devil power
eripere et inter filios Dei connumerare sanctoque chrismate
to-snatch and among the-sons of-God to-number and-with-holy chrism
praemunire? Et quod maximum est in christiana religione,
to-fortify and what greatest is in the-Christian religion
quis eorum valet proprio ore corpus et sanguinem
who of-them is-able with-his-own mouth the-body and blood
Domini conficere? vel cui eorum data est potestas ligandi
of-the-Lord to-confect or to-whom of-them given is the-power of-binding
solvendique in coelo et in terra? Ex quibus aperte colligitur,
and-of-loosing in heaven and on earth from which-things openly it-is-gathered
quanta potestate pvaecellat dignitas sacerdotum. Aut quis
with-how-great power excels the-dignity of-priests or who
eorum potest aliquem clericum in sancta ecclesia ordinare?
of-them can any cleric in holy church to-ordain
quanto minus pro aliqua culpa eum deponere? Namque in
how-much less for any fault him to-depose for in
ecclesiasticis ordinibus maioris potestatis est deponere quam
ecclesiastical orders of-greater power it-is to-depose than
ordinare. Episcopi enim possunt alios episcopos ordinare,
to-ordain bishops for can other bishops to-ordain

sed nullo modo sine auctoritate apostolicae sedis deponere.
but in-no way without the-authority of-the-apostolic see to-depose
Quis igitur vel tenuiter sciolus dubitet sacerdotes regibus
who therefore even slightly half-learned would-doubt priests to-kings
anteferri? Quod si reges pro peccatis suis a sacerdotibus
to-be-preferred which if kings for sins their by priests
sunt iudicandi, a quo rectius quam a Romano pontifice
are to-be-judged by whom more-rightly than by the-Roman pontiff
sunt iudicandi? Ad summam quoslibet bonos christianos
they-are to-be-judged in sum any good Christians
multo convenientius quam malos principes reges intelligi
much more-fittingly than bad princes kings to-be-understood
decet. Isti enim gloriam Dei quaerendo semet ipsos
it-befits these for the-glory of-God by-seeking them themselves
strennue regunt; at illi non quae Dei sunt sed sua
vigorously rule but those not what-things of-God are but their-own
quaerentes, sibimet hostes, alios tyrannice opprimunt. Hi
seeking to-themselves enemies others tyrannically oppress these
veri regis Christi, illi vero diaboli corpus sunt. Isti
of-the-true king Christ those but of-the-devil the-body are these
ad hoc sibi imperant, ut cum summo imperatore
to this over-themselves rule that with the-highest emperor
aeternaliter regnent; illorum vero id potestas agit, ut
eternally they-may-reign of-those but this the-power effects that
cum tenebrarum principe, qui rex est super omnes filios
with of-darkness the-prince who king is over all the-sons
superbiae, aeterna damnatione dispereant. Nec valde sane
of-pride by-eternal damnation they-may-perish nor very truly
mirandum est, quod mali pontifices iniquo regi, quem
to-be-wondered-at it-is that bad pontiffs with-a-wicked king whom
adeptis male per eum honoribus diligunt metuuntque,
obtained wrongly through him (their)-honors they-love and-fear

consentiunt; qui simoniace quoslibet ordinando, Deum pro
agree who simoniacally any by-ordaining God for
vili etiam pretio vendunt. Nam sicut electi insolubiliter
a-cheap even price sell for as the-elect indissolubly
suo capiti uniuntur, ita et reprobi maxime contra bonos,
to-their head are-united so also the-reprobate most against the-good
ei qui malitiae caput est, pertinaciter foederantur. Contra
with-him who of-malice head is obstinately are-leagued against
quos profecto non tam disserendum, quam pro eis est
whom surely not so-much to-be-argued as for them is
lacrimosis planctibus ingemendum, ut omnipotens Deus illos
with-tearful laments to-be-groaned that almighty God them
a laqueis sathanae, quibus captivi tenentur, eripiat, et
from the-snares of-Satan by-which captive they-are-held may-snatch and
tandem aliquando vel post pericula ad agnitionem veritatis
at-last sometime even after dangers to the-recognition of-truth
perducat. Haec de regibus et imperatoribus, qui saeculari
may-lead these-things about kings and emperors who with-worldly
gloria nimium tumidi, non Deo sed sibi regnant.
glory too swollen not for-God but for-themselves reign
Sed quia nostri est officii, unicuique secundum ordinem vel
but because of-our it-is of-office to-each according-to the-order or
dignitatem, qua videtur vigere, exhortationem distribuere:
dignity in-which he-seems to-flourish exhortation to-distribute
imperatoribus et regibus ceterisque principibus, ut elationes
for-emperors and kings and-the-other princes that the-swellings
maris et superbiae fluctus comprimere valeant, arma
of-the-sea and of-pride the-waves to-check they-may-be-able the-arms
humilitatis Deo auctore providere curamus. Scimus enim,
of-humility God being-author to-provide we-take-care we-know for
quia mundana gloria et saecularis cura eos permaxime, qui
that worldly glory and secular care those most-greatly who

praesunt, ad elationem trahere solet; qua semper neglecta
are-over(-others) to pride to-draw is-wont by-which always neglected
humilitate, propriam quaerendo gloriam, fratribus cupiant
humility their-own seeking glory over-brothers they-desire
praeminere. Proinde videtur utile maxime imperatoribus et
to-be-preeminent accordingly it-seems useful most for-emperors and
regibus, ut cum mens illorum ad alta se erigere
kings that when the-mind of-them to lofty-things itself to-raise
et pro singulari gloria vult oblectare, inveniat quibus
and in singular glory wishes to-delight it-may-find by-what
se modis humiliet, atque unde gaudebat, sentiat plus
itself ways it-may-humble and whence it-rejoiced it-may-feel more
timendum. Perspiciant ergo diligenter, quam periculosa,
to-be-feared let-them-perceive therefore diligently how dangerous
quamve timenda sit imperatoria vel regia dignitas, in qua
or-how to-be-feared is the-imperial or royal dignity in which
paucissimi salvantur, et illi qui Deo miserante ad salutem
very-few are-saved and those who God having-mercy to salvation
veniunt, non aeque ut multi pauperum, iudicio sancti
come not equally as many of-the-poor by-the-judgment of-the-holy
Spiritus in sancta ecclesia glorificantur. A mundi enim
Spirit in holy church are-glorified from of-the-world for
principio usque ad haec nostra tempora in tota authentica
the-beginning all-the-way to these our times in all authentic
scriptura non invenimus septem imperatores vel reges, quorum
scripture not we-find seven emperors or kings whose
vita fuerit adeo praecipua religione et virtute signorum
life has-been so with-excellent religion and with-the-power of-signs
decorata, sicut universalis multitudinis saeculi contemptorum;
adorned as of-the-universal multitude of-the-world of-the-despisers
licet eorum plures credamus apud omnipotentem Deum
although of-them more we-believe with almighty God

misericordiae salutem invenisse. Namque ut de apostolis
of-mercy salvation to-have-found for that about the-apostles
et martyribus taceamus, quis imperatorum vel regum
and martyrs we-may-keep-silent who of-emperors or kings
aeque ut beatus Martinus, Antonius et Benedictus miraculis
equally as blessed Martin Antony and Benedict by-miracles
claruit? Quis imperator aut rex mortuos suscitavit, leprosos
shone what emperor or king the-dead raised lepers
mundavit, caecos illuminavit? Ecce Constantinum piae
cleansed the-blind gave-light-to behold Constantine of-pious
memoriae imperatorem, Theodosium et Honorium, Carolum
memory the-emperor Theodosius and Honorius Charles
et Ludowicum, iustitiae amatores, christianae religionis
and Louis of-justice lovers of-the-Christian religion
propagatores, ecclesiarum defensores, sancta quidem ecclesia
propagators of-churches defenders holy indeed the-church
laudat et veneratur, non tamen eos fulsisse tanta
praises and venerates not yet them to-have-shone with-so-great
miraculorum gloria iudicat. Praeterea ad quot nomina
of-miracles glory judges moreover to how-many names
regum vel imperatorum basilicas seu altaria dedicari, vel ad
of-kings or emperors basilicas or altars to-be-dedicated or for
eorum honorem sancta ecclesia missas statuit celebrari?
their honor holy the-church masses has-established to-be-celebrated
Timeant reges aliique principes, ne quanto se ceteris
let-fear kings and-other princes lest the-more themselves to-other
hominibus in hac vita praeferri gaudent, tanto amplius
men in this life to-be-preferred they-rejoice the more
aeternis incendiis subiciantur. Unde scriptum est: 'Potentes
to-eternal fires they-be-subjected whence written it-is the-mighty
potenter tormenta patientur.' De tot enim hominibus
mightily torments will-suffer about so-many for men

Deo reddituri sunt rationem, quot suae dominationi
to-God about-to-render they-are an-account as-many-as to-their dominion
subditos habuerunt. Quod si alicui religioso privato non
subject they-have-had which if for-any religious private-person not
parvus labor est unam suam animam custodire, quantus labor
small labor it-is one his-own soul to-guard how-great labor
imminet principibus super multis milibus animarum? Praeterea
hangs-over princes over many thousands of-souls moreover
si iudicium sanctae ecclesiae valde constringit peccatorem
if the-judgment of-holy church greatly binds the-sinner
pro unius hominis interfectione, quid erit de his qui
for of-one man the-killing what will-be about those who
multa milia morti tradunt pro huius mundi honore; qui
many thousands to-death hand-over for of-this world the-honor who
licet ore aliquando dicant: 'Mea culpa!' pro multorum
though with-mouth sometimes they-say my fault for of-many
occisione, tamen in corde gaudent in sui quasi honoris
the-killing yet in heart rejoice in of-their as-it-were honor
extensione, noluntque non fecisse quod egerunt, neque
the-extension and-are-unwilling not to-have-done what they-did nor
dolent quod fratres suos in tartarum compulerunt. Cumque
grieve that brothers their into hell they-drove and-since
ex toto corde eos non poenitet, neque volunt humano
from whole heart them not it-repents nor do-they-wish by-human
sanguine adquisita vel detenta omittere, illorum poenitentia
blood acquired or held to-give-up their penance
apud Deum sine digno poenitentiae fructu manet. Unde
with God without worthy of-penance fruit remains whence
profecto valde est timendum atque ad memoriam eorum
surely greatly it-is to-be-feared and to the-memory their
crebro revocandum, quia sicut praefati sumus, a mundi
often to-be-recalled that as said-before we-have from of-the-world

principio paucissimi per diversa terrarum regna reges
the-beginning very-few through different of-the-earth kingdoms kings
sancti ex innumerabili eorum multitudine reperiuntur;
holy from countless their multitude are-found
cum in una tantum pontificum seriatim succedentium
while in one only of-pontiffs in-series succeeding
sede, videlicet Romana, a tempore beati Petri apostoli
see namely the-Roman from the-time of-blessed Peter the-apostle
fere centum inter sanctissimos computentur. Cur autem
nearly a-hundred among the-most-holy are-counted why moreover
hoc, nisi quia reges terrae et principes vana gloria
this unless because kings of-the-earth and princes by-vain glory
delectati, sicut praelibatum est, quae sua sunt
delighted as mentioned-before it-has-been what-things their-own are
spiritualibus praeferunt; religiosi autem pontifices vanam
to-spiritual-things prefer religious moreover pontiffs vain
gloriam despicientes, quae Dei sunt carnalibus rebus
glory despising what-things of-God are to-carnal things
praeponunt. Illi in se delinquentes facile puniunt,
set-before those against themselves offenders easily punish
in Deum peccantes aequo animo ferunt; isti in se
against God sinning with-even mind bear these against themselves
peccantibus cito ignoscunt, Deum offendentibus non leviter
sinning quickly pardon God offending not lightly
parcunt. Illi terrenis actibus nimium dediti spiritualia parvi
spare those to-earthly acts too given-over spiritual-things at-little
pendunt; isti coelestia sedulo meditantes quae sunt
value these heavenly-things diligently meditating what-things are
terrena contempnunt. Admonendi sunt ergo omnes christiani,
earthly despise to-be-admonished are therefore all Christians
qui cum Christo regnare cupiunt, ne ambitione saecularis
who with Christ to-reign desire lest by-ambition of-secular

potestatis regnare affectent, sed potius prae oculis habeant,
power to-reign they-aspire but rather before eyes let-them-have
quod beatus Gregorius papa sanctissimus in libro pastorali
what blessed Gregory pope most-holy in the-book pastoral
admonet, dicens: 'Inter haec itaque quid sequendum,
admonishes saying among these-things and-so what to-be-followed
quidve timendum, nisi ut virtutibus pollens coactus ad
or-what to-be-feared except that in-virtues strong compelled to
regimen veniat, virtutibus vacuus nec coactus accedat.'
the-government be-come in-virtues empty not-even compelled approach
Quod si ad apostolicam sedem, in qua rite ordinati meritis
which if to the-apostolic see in which duly ordained by-the-merits
beati Petri apostoli meliores efficiuntur, qui Deum
of-blessed Peter the-apostle better are-made those-who God
timent, coacti veniunt cum magno timore: ad regni
fear compelled come with great fear to of-the-kingdom
solium cum quanto timore accedendum, in quo etiam boni
the-throne with how-great fear to-be-approached in which even good
et humiles sicut in Saul et David cognoscitur, deteriores
and humble-men as in Saul and David is-learned worse
fiunt? Nam quod de apostolica sede praelibavimus, in
become for what about the-apostolic see we-have-mentioned-before in
decretis beati Symmachi papae, licet experimento sciamus,
the-decrees of-blessed Symmachus pope though by-experience we-know
sic continetur: 'Ille,' scilicet beatus Petrus, 'perhennem
thus is-contained he namely blessed Peter the-everlasting
meritorum dotem cum hereditate innocentiae misit ad
of-merits endowment with the-inheritance of-innocence sent to
posteros.' Et post pauca: 'Quis enim sanctum dubitet
(his)-successors and after a-few-things who for holy would-doubt
esse, quem apex tantae dignitatis attollit, in qua si
to-be him-whom the-summit of-so-great dignity raises in which if

desint bona acquisita per meritum, sufficiunt quae
be-lacking good-things acquired through merit suffice those-which
a loci decessore praestantur; aut enim claros ad
by of-the-place predecessor are-supplied either for illustrious-men to
haec fastigia erigit, aut eos qui eriguntur illustrat.'
these heights it-raises or those who are-raised it-makes-illustrious
Quapropter quos sancta ecclesia sua sponte ad imperium
wherefore those-whom holy church of-its own-accord to empire
vel regimen deliberato consilio advocat, non pro transitoria
or government with-deliberate counsel calls not for transitory
gloria sed pro multorum salute humiliter obediant, et
glory but for of-many the-salvation humbly let-them-obey and
semper caveant, quod beatus Gregorius in eodem libro
always let-them-beware-of what blessed Gregory in the-same book
pastorali testatur: 'Apostatae quippe angelo similis efficitur,
pastoral testifies to-the-apostate indeed angel like he-is-made
dum homo hominibus esse similis dedignatur. Sic Saul
while man to-men to-be like disdains thus Saul
post humilitatis meritum in tumorem superbiae culmine
after of-humility the-merit into the-swelling of-pride at-the-summit
potestatis excrevit. Per humilitatem quippe praelatus est,
of-power grew-up through humility indeed preferred he-was
per superbiam reprobatus, Domino attestante, qui ait:
through pride rejected the-Lord attesting who says
"Nonne cum esses parvulus in oculis tuis, caput te constitui
was-it-not when you-were little in eyes your head you I-appointed
in tribubus Israel?" Et paulo inferius: 'Miro autem
in the-tribes of-Israel and a-little lower in-a-wonderful moreover
modo cum apud se parvulus, apud Dominum magnus;
manner while with himself little with the-Lord great
cum vero apud se magnus apparuit, apud Dominum
when but with himself great he-appeared with the-Lord

parvulus fuit.' Vigilanter quoque retinendum, quod Dominus
little he-was watchfully also to-be-retained what the-Lord
in euangelio dicit: 'Ego gloriam meam non quaero;' et 'Qui
in the-gospel says I glory my not seek and who
vult inter vos esse primus, sit omnium servus.' Honorem
wishes among you to-be first let-him-be of-all the-servant the-honor
Dei semper suo praeponant; iustitiam, unicuique suum
of-God always to-their-own let-them-prefer justice to-each his-own
servando ius, amplectantur atque custodiant; non eant
by-keeping right let-them-embrace and let-them-guard not let-them-go
in consilio impiorum, sed religiosis semper acquiescendo
into the-counsel of-the-impious but to-religious-men always by-assenting
corde adhaereant; sanctam ecclesiam non quaerant sicut
with-the-heart let-them-cling holy church not let-them-seek like
ancillam sibi subicere vel subiugare; sed permaxime
a-handmaid to-themselves to-subject or to-subjugate but most-greatly
oculos illius, videlicet Domini, sacerdotes, magistros et
the-eyes of-it namely of-the-Lord the-priests as-masters and
patres recognoscendo, decenter studeant honorare. Nam si
fathers by-recognizing fittingly let-them-strive to-honor for if
carnales patres et matres honorare iubemur, quanto magis
carnal fathers and mothers to-honor we-are-ordered how-much more
spirituales? Si ille qui carnali patri vel matri maledixerit,
spiritual if he who carnal father or mother shall-have-cursed
morte mulctandus est; quid ille qui maledicit patri spirituali
with-death to-be-punished is what he who curses father spiritual
vel matri, meretur? Non carnali amore illecti studeant filium
or mother deserves not by-carnal love enticed let-them-strive son
suum gregi, pro quo Christus sanguinem suum fudit,
their to-the-flock for which Christ blood his shed
praeponere, si meliorem illo et utiliorem possunt invenire;
to-prefer if a-better than-him and more-useful they-can to-find

ne plus Deo diligendo filium, maximum sanctae ecclesiae
lest more than-God by-loving the-son the-greatest on-holy church
inferant detrimentum. Patenter enim Deum et proximum,
they-bring harm openly for God and neighbor
sicut christianum oportet, non amare convincitur, qui
as a-Christian ought not to-love is-convicted he-who
tantae utilitati tamque necessariae sanctae matris ecclesiae,
for-so-great usefulness and-so necessary of-holy mother church
prout melius potest, negligit providere. Hac namque virtute,
as best he-can neglects to-provide this for virtue
id est caritate, neglecta, quicquid boni aliquis fecerit,
that is charity neglected whatever of-good anyone shall-have-done
omni fructu salutis carebit. Haec itaque humiliter
of-all fruit of-salvation will-be-without these-things and-so humbly
agendo, et amorem Dei et proximi, sicut oportet, servando,
by-doing and the-love of-God and of-neighbor as is-fitting by-keeping
praesumant de illius misericordia, qui dixit: 'Discite a me,
let-them-presume on his mercy who said learn from me
quia mitis sum et humilis corde.' Quem si humiliter imitati
because gentle I-am and humble in-heart whom if humbly imitated
fuerint, de regno servili et transitorio ad regnum
they-shall-have from the-kingdom servile and transitory to the-kingdom
verae libertatis et aeternitatis transibunt. Amen. Ammonemus
of-true liberty and eternity they-will-pass amen we-admonish
vos fratres et coepiscopos nostros, ne faciem principum
you brothers and fellow-bishops our lest the-face of-princes
trepidantes, veritatem eis dicere timeatis, incurrentes illud
trembling-at the-truth to-them to-speak you-fear incurring that
Gregorii: 'Cum in terra hominem contra veritatem quilibet
of-Gregory when on earth a-man against the-truth anyone
pavet, eiusdem veritatis iram coelitus sustinet.'
fears of-the-same truth the-anger from-heaven he-endures

At Utrecht Bishop William, who has Henry scorn his excommunication, mocks it from the pulpit, then dies in despair, seeing demons around his bed, and after death appears to the abbot of Cluny as damned. The patriarch, Udo of Trier, Eppo of Zeitz, Duke Godfrey, Godebald, Burchard of Meissen, and Leopold all die suddenly or wretchedly. Their keepers release the Saxon captives, and Bishop Burchard of Halberstadt, handed to Solomon, deposed king of Hungary, slips ashore from his boat and comes home in triumph.

Legatus regis reversus, cum regi, qui tunc erat Traiecti,
the-envoy of-the-king returned when to-the-king who then was at-Utrecht
quod erat excommunicatus indicaret, Willehalmi, ipsius
that he-was excommunicated indicated of-William of-the-very
urbis episcopi, consilio rex excommunicationem illam
city of-the-bishop by-the-counsel the-king excommunication that
nichili pendit. Episcopus quoque idem timens, ne si populus
at-nothing values the-bishop also the-same fearing lest if the-people
haec audisset, a rege sicut ab excommunicato
these-things should-have-heard from the-king as from an-excommunicate
discederet, inter missas sermonem faciens ad populum,
it-should-depart during the-masses a-sermon making to the-people
derisorie quod rex esset excommunicatus indicavit, sed hanc
mockingly that the-king was excommunicated indicated but this
excommunicationem nichil valere, quibus poterat verbis,
excommunication nothing to-be-worth with-what he-could words
utpote facundus homo, confirmavit. Sed quantum valeret, in
as-being an-eloquent man he-affirmed but how-much it-was-worth in
se ipso coactus est agnoscere, si liceret ei poenitendo
him himself compelled he-was to-recognize if it-were-allowed to-him by-repenting
a superbia resipiscere. Nam in ipso loco, in quo
from pride to-come-to-his-senses for in the-very place in which

Romano pontifici derogabat eiusque potestatem verbosus
the-Roman pontiff he-was-disparaging and-his power wordy
adnichilare laborabat, ipse mala valetudine corripitur, in
to-bring-to-nothing labored he-himself by-ill health is-seized in
qua usque ad miserandum miserae vitae finem detinetur.
which all-the-way to the-pitiable of-a-wretched life end he-is-held
Itaque morbo magis ac magis ingravescente, dum esset cum
and-so the-disease more and more growing-heavier while there-was with
eo quidam homo regis, eumque rogaret, ut se cum suo
him a-certain man of-the-king and-him asked that him with his
mandato remitteret ad regem: 'Hoc', inquit, 'ei mitto
command he-should-send-back to the-king this he-says to-him I-send
mandatum, quod ipse et ego, et omnes eius iniquitati
command that he-himself and I and all his to-iniquity
faventes, damnati sumus in perpetuum.' Cumque a suis qui
favoring damned are into perpetuity and-when by his who
aderant clericis, ne talia loqueretur esset ammonitus:
were-present clerics lest such-things he-should-say he-had-been admonished
'Quid aliud', inquit, 'loquar, nisi quod verum esse visibiliter
what else he-says should-I-say except what true to-be visibly
intueor. Ecce enim daemones lectum meum circumstant,
I-behold behold for demons bed my surround
quatenus me, mox ut expiravero, rapiant. Itaque cum
that me soon as I-shall-have-expired they-may-seize and-so when
fuero de corpore eductus, rogo vos et omnes fideles,
I-shall-have-been from the-body led-out I-ask you and all the-faithful
ne se fatigent pro me faciendo supplicationes.' Hac
lest themselves they-weary for me by-making supplications this
igitur in desperatione defunctus, nullis orationibus Deo
therefore in despair dead by-no prayers to-God
reconciliatus, diu iacebat insepultus, donec Romam mittitur,
reconciled long he-lay unburied until to-Rome it-is-sent

et inde quaesito consilio, ne populus foetore corrumpatur,
and thence sought counsel lest the-people by-the-stench be-corrupted
apostolico iussu sine commendationibus sepelitur. Non
by-apostolic command without commendations he-is-buried not
longe autem post mortem suam abbati Cloniacensi apparuit,
long moreover after death his to-the-abbot of-Cluny he-appeared
priusquam eum fuisse mortuum cognovisset, et: 'Non sum',
before him to-have-been dead he-had-learned and not I-am
inquit, 'vivus, sed vere defunctus, et in inferno sepultus.'
he-says alive but truly dead and in hell buried
Sic ille sapiens et per omnia vir honestus, si non esset
thus that wise and in all-things man honorable if not he-had-been
avaritiae venenis infectus, stultum et miserabilem finem
of-avarice by-the-poisons infected a-foolish and wretched end
habuit; quia hunc, dum poterat, praecavere noluit. Et
had because it while he-could to-forestall he-would-not and
cur eum solum dico miserabiliter obisse? cum manifestum
why him alone do-I-say wretchedly to-have-died since plain
sit, omnes fere Heinrici familiares et fideles aeque miseras
it-is all nearly of-Henry the-intimates and faithful equally wretched
mortes incurrisse, et eos miseriores, qui fuerant illi
deaths to-have-incurred and those more-wretched who had-been to-him
fideliores; quia fides illa vere erat perfidia.
more-faithful because faith that truly was faithlessness
Ut enim per excessum quaedam vel repetam vel praecurram,
that for by digression certain-things either I-may-repeat or anticipate
patriarcha, qui legatus apostolici maximus auctor
the-patriarch who envoy of-the-apostolic(-lord) the-greatest author
abiurationis extiterat Heinrici et novi regis instituendi,
of-the-abjuration had-been of-Henry and of-a-new king to-be-set-up
postquam exregi quasi regi sociatus retrogradus
after to-the-ex-king as-if to-a-king allied backward-turning

efficitur, repentina morte praeventus, quia communicabat
he-is-made by-sudden death overtaken because he-communicated
excommunicatis, incommunicatus et inconfessus huic vitae
with-the-excommunicate uncommunicated and unconfessed from-this life
subtrahitur. Verum quia tantae dignitatis virum non decebat
is-withdrawn but because of-so-great dignity a-man not it-befitted
ire solum ad infernum, quinquaginta, sicut audivimus, de
to-go alone to hell fifty as we-have-heard of
suis habuit socios, eadem morte repentina correptos;
his-own he-had as-companions by-the-same death sudden seized
ne quos habebat in iniquitate consortes, in retributione
lest those-whom he-had in iniquity as-partners in retribution
non haberet participes.
not he-should-have as-sharers
Udo Treverensis archiepiscopus, omni pietate plenus, dum
Udo of-Trier archbishop with-all piety full while
nimis mansuetus tyrannidi non resistens, Heinrico plus quam
too gentle to-tyranny not resisting to-Henry more than
decebat obsequitur, eius flammeo furori suae consensionis
was-fitting complies his fiery to-fury of-his consent
oleum ministrat, et ut ecclesiae depraedentur licentiam
the-oil supplies and that the-churches be-plundered license
donat; et mox in crastino mane mortuus invenitur, ut
gives and soon on the-morrow in-the-morning dead is-found that
omnibus aperte constaret, ideo tali eum morte obisse,
to-all openly it-might-be-evident therefore by-such him death to-have-died
quia in ecclesiarum praedatione non timuit assensum praebere.
because in of-the-churches the-plundering not he-feared assent to-offer
Eppo Cicensis episcopus, dum in episcopio sancti Kiliani
Eppo of-Zeitz bishop while in the-bishopric of-Saint Kilian
quendam rivum forti sedens in equo transiret, quem quilibet
a-certain stream strong sitting on a-horse was-crossing which any

pedes sine periculo transire posset, ubi nec timor
man-on-foot without danger to-cross could where not-even fear
ullus fuit, equo cadente moriens sic interiit; sancto Kiliano
any was the-horse falling dying thus perished Saint Kilian
sic disponente, ut qui eius urbis violentus incubator iniuste
thus disposing that he-who of-his city violent occupier unjustly
vinum suum bibebat, aquam quoque suam iuste bibens, ultra
wine his drank water also his justly drinking further
vinum non quaerat; et quia nobis inconciliabilis permansit,
wine not should-seek and because to-us irreconcilable he-remained
Deo inreconciliatus ab hac vita migravit.
to-God unreconciled from this life he-departed
Godefridus dux, qui fuit maximus hostis Saxoniae, periit
Godfrey the-duke who was the-greatest enemy of-Saxony perished
in secretiori corporis parte perfossus saevo mucrone, nec
in the-more-secret of-the-body part pierced by-a-savage point neither
purgatus ultima confessione, nec munitus sacra communione.
purged by-last confession nor fortified by-holy communion
Godebaldus dum equo suo noviter ferrato pedem posteriorem
Godebald while of-the-horse his newly shod the-foot hind
levaret, ut an apte ferrum esset impositum perspiceret, ab
was-lifting that whether fittingly the-shoe had-been put-on he-might-see by
ipso pede in fronte percutitur, et sic ab hac vita abstrahitur.
the-very foot on the-forehead is-struck and thus from this life is-drawn-away
Burchardus Misnensis praefectus, dum in quadam sua, cui
Burchard of-Meissen prefect while in a-certain his-own which
praeerat, urbe ab urbanis invaditur, equo cui insidebat frustra
he-governed city by the-townsmen is-attacked the-horse which he-sat-on in-vain
calcaribus vulnerato, fugere molitur, quia equus saepe prius de
with-spurs wounded to-flee he-strives because the-horse often before for
velocitate laudatus, modo, cum maxime maximo cursu opus
speed praised now when most with-greatest running need

erat, fit stationarius, quasi diceret: 'Michi non licet eum
was becomes stationary as-if it-said to-me not it-is-allowed him
nunc a vobis eripere, qui dum sibi licuit, nolebat se
now from you to-snatch who while to-himself it-was-allowed would-not himself
corrigere.' Moritur ergo cum magno animae suae periculo, quia
to-correct he-dies therefore with great of-soul his danger because
saepe consensum praebuit periculoso saevissimi regis consilio.
often consent he-offered to-the-dangerous of-the-most-savage king counsel
Liupoldus, frater Bertholdi regis consiliarii, qui et ipse
Leopold brother of-Berthold of-the-king of-the-counselor who also himself
eius consiliarius erat, dum quadam die iuxta regem equitans,
his counselor was while on-a-certain day beside the-king riding
cum eo quoslibet sermones conferret, accipiter quem sinistra
with him any talks he-exchanged the-hawk which on-the-left
portabat, volitare coepit, quasi capturam peteret. Ille vero
he-carried to-flutter began as-if prey it-sought he but
post avem parumper se inclinans, ab equo gravis cecidit,
after the-bird a-little himself leaning from (his)-horse heavy fell
et ensem quo cinctus erat e vagina lapsum,
and the-sword with-which girt he-had-been out-of the-scabbard slipped
capulo terrae defixo, in pectore medio recepit; et qui
with-the-hilt in-the-earth fixed in (his)-breast middle received and who
saepe pravi consilii consors vel auctor fuit, sine consilio
often of-wicked counsel partner or author was without the-counsel
perpetuae salutis ab hac vita recessit. His ex parte tractatis,
of-perpetual salvation from this life withdrew these in part treated
multa his similia praeteriens, ad iter inceptum volo
many to-these like passing-over to the-journey begun I-wish
reverti, quod non aberrando sed sponte deviando deserui.
to-return which not by-straying but willingly by-turning-aside I-left

Igitur comperta legatione pontificis et excommunicatione
therefore learned the-embassy of-the-pontiff and the-excommunication
sive depositione Heinrici regis, omnes qui nostros captivos
or deposition of-Henry the-king all who our captives
habebant, quia nullam apud regem misericordiam, dum rex
held because no with the-king mercy while king
erat, invenire poterant, et ei nullam modo, cum rex
he-was to-find they-could and to-him none now since king
non esset, fidem vel subiectionem debebant, omnes eos in
not he-was faith or subjection they-owed all them into
patriam gratis, Heinrico nesciente, dimiserunt.
the-homeland freely Henry not-knowing released
Sed Burchardus Halberstatensis episcopus quam mirabiliter a
but Burchard of-Halberstadt bishop how wonderfully from
miserabili damnatione sit divina pietate liberatus, ad Dei
wretched damnation he-was by-divine mercy freed to of-God
laudem et ad omnium miserorum consolationem referam.
the-praise and to of-all the-wretched the-consolation I-shall-relate
Dum Heinricus esset iuxta Danubium et secum haberet
while Henry was beside the-Danube and with-him had
sororis suae maritum Salomonem, similiter ab Ungriae
of-sister his the-husband Solomon likewise from of-Hungary
regno depulsum, quia temporibus illis vigebat depositio
the-kingdom driven-out because in-times those flourished the-deposition
regum; genero suo iam redituro in patriam, in cuius
of-kings to-brother-in-law his now about-to-return into the-homeland on whose
extremitate paucas urbes habendo vix haerebat, episcopum
edge a-few cities by-having scarcely he-clung bishop
Burchardum commendavit eumque multum, ut numquam in
Burchard he-entrusted and-him much that never in
Teutonicis finibus videretur, obsecravit; quod et ille promisit.
Teutonic territories he-be-seen besought which also he promised

Quod cum episcopus praesensisset, amicos quos habebat
which when the-bishop had-sensed the-friends whom he-had
ibi paucos, paucis, sicut tempus monebat, verbis allocutus,
there few with-few as time warned words having-addressed
rogavit omnes pro Dei nomine, quatenus de sua cogitarent
he-asked all for of-God the-name that about his they-should-think
ereptione. Tunc Othelricus quidam dixit ei, stare quandam
rescue then Udalric a-certain said to-him to-stand a-certain
domum desertam non longe a littore, monuitque eum
house deserted not far from the-shore and-advised him
ut hanc arte qualibet temptaret intrare. Episcopus ergo
that this by-art any he-should-try to-enter the-bishop therefore
tantum cum uno capellano navi impositus, exregem iubetur
only with one chaplain in-a-ship placed the-ex-king is-ordered
antecedere, donec ipse cum socero pransus eum
to-go-ahead until he-himself with the-brother-in-law having-dined him
cum gurgite currens velociter insequatur. Leniter ergo
with the-current running swiftly should-follow gently therefore
defluens episcopus non in somnum dissolvitur, non in vanis
floating-down the-bishop not into sleep is-dissolved not in vain
confabulationibus occupatur, sed cor cum tota devotione
chatter is-occupied but (his)-heart with all devotion
levat ad Deum, oculos in littus tenet intentos, donec
he-lifts to God the-eyes on the-shore he-keeps intent until
praemonstratam conspiciat domum. Qua visa rogat nautas,
the-foreshown he-beholds house which seen he-asks the-sailors
ut in littus se velint exponere, quatenus ventrem
that on the-shore him they-would-wish to-set so-that the-belly
levando persolvat debita naturae. Illi nil suspicantes, in
by-relieving he-might-pay the-debts of-nature they nothing suspecting toward
miserum misericordes fuerunt, et eum capellano comite
the-wretched-man merciful were and him the-chaplain as-companion

exire permiserunt. Quid moror, cum in illo moram nullam
to-go-out allowed why do-I-delay when in him delay none
intueor? Removetur a littore longius, nautisque ne longius
I-behold he-moves from the-shore farther and-the-sailors lest farther
abiret clamantibus, appropinquat domui, leniterque pulsans
he-should-go-off shouting he-approaches the-house and-gently knocking
Deumque suppliciter invocans, dixit: 'Aperi!' Numquam dixit
and-God suppliantly invoking said open never said
nec dicturus est cum maiore devotione cordis, 'Aperi', nisi
nor about-to-say is-anyone with greater devotion of-heart open unless
si speraverit sibi quandoque ianuam regni coelestis
if he-shall-have-hoped for-himself sometime the-gate of-the-kingdom heavenly
aperiri. Othelricus paratis equis et sociis episcopum
to-be-opened Udalric having-prepared horses and companions the-bishop
suscepit, et die quiescens, nocte vero festinans, eum Dei
received and by-day resting by-night but hastening him of-God
misericordia comitante in Halberstedi perduxit. Quanta
the-mercy accompanying(-him) to Halberstadt led with-how-great
gratulatione totius populi fuisset acceptus, meus hebes
rejoicing of-the-whole people he-had-been received my dull
non valet explicare stilus. Etiam qui eum prius odio
not is-able to-unfold pen even those-who him formerly in-hatred
habuerunt, in occursum laeti gaudentesque cucurrerunt.
held to meet(-him) glad and-rejoicing ran

Hermann and Dietrich, returning, rally the Saxons against paying tribute, and the castles are retaken. Henry's captives escape across the Rhine while Mainz burns, and the feigned offer of reform he sends by the bishops of Magdeburg and Merseburg is not believed. At Oppenheim the Saxons and Swabians make peace, and Henry, across the Rhine at Mainz, promises to restore the bishop of Worms, confess in a sealed letter that he wronged the Saxons, and seek absolution. The princes swear he will never again be their king unless absolved by the beginning of February, and invite the pope to Augsburg to judge him.

Principes ergo nostri diversis ab exiliis omnes paene simul
the-princes therefore our different from exiles all almost together
in patriam reversi, magnam his qui domi erant dederunt
into the-homeland returned great to-those who at-home were gave
materiam gaudii, et multorum os aperuerunt in laudem
material of-joy and of-many the-mouth opened in praise
Dei. Invenerunt enim totam paene plebem congregatam,
of-God they-found for the-whole almost common-people assembled
exigi tributa a praediis suis persolvenda, iam libertatis
to-be-exacted tributes from estates its to-be-paid now of-liberty
spe retinendae deposita, quae iuberetur cuncta facturam.
the-hope to-be-retained laid-aside what-things should-be-ordered all about-to-do
Herimannus autem, patruus Magni ducis, et Thiedricus
Hermann moreover uncle of-Magnus the-duke and Dietrich
de Kathalanburg — hi namque prius aliquanto ceteris
of Katlenburg these for before somewhat than-the-others
venerunt — obstupefactis omnibus exclamaverunt: 'Nolite',
came astonished all cried-out do-not
dicentes, 'optimi Saxones, nolite servitutis iuga recipere,
saying excellent Saxons do-not of-servitude the-yokes to-receive
nolite hereditatem vestram tributariam facere, nolite de
do-not inheritance your tributary to-make do-not of

misericordia Dei desperare! Ecce nos, qui vestri causa nos
the-mercy of-God to-despair behold we who of-you for-the-sake ourselves
in captivitatem dedimus, Dei clementia, illo qui nos tenebat
into captivity gave of-God by-the-clemency him who us was-holding
invito, redimus, pro vobis et vestris pugnaturi quamdiu
unwilling have-returned for you and yours about-to-fight as-long-as
vivimus. Erigite ergo cervicem iugo servitutis excusso liberam,
we-live raise therefore the-neck the-yoke of-servitude shaken-off free
numquam posthac servitute premendam, adiuvante Deo.
never hereafter by-servitude to-be-pressed helping God
Retinete manus a tributis solvendis, retinete possessiones
hold-back hands from tributes to-be-paid keep possessions
vestras liberas, sicut liberas eas a vestris parentibus accepistis.
your free as free them from your parents you-received
Vos autem fautores iniquitatis, qui miserae plebis
you moreover abettors of-iniquity who of-the-wretched common-people
oppressione crudelis tyranni gratiam quaesistis, ab opprimendo
by-the-oppression of-the-cruel tyrant the-favor sought from oppressing
cessate, ab exigendo quiescite, et ex hac hora vel nobiscum
cease from exacting rest and from this hour either with-us
pro libertate pugnaturi fideliter et iurati permanete, vel in hac
for liberty about-to-fight faithfully and sworn remain or in this
hora velut hostes infidi et periuri a nobis et a patria
hour as enemies faithless and perjured from us and from homeland
nostra numquam reversuri discedite.' Talibus verbis et hostes
our never about-to-return depart with-such words both the-enemies
confusi a ferocitate quiescunt, et cives confortati, pristina
confounded from ferocity rest and the-citizens strengthened former
virtute recepta, in unanimitatem facile coalescunt. Coadunati
valor recovered into unanimity easily grow-together united
denique praesidia Heinrici ab omnibus castellis eiciunt et
finally the-garrisons of-Henry from all castles they-cast-out and

illis ea quorum fuerant libera restituunt; possessiones alias,
to-those them whose they-had-been free restore possessions other
quas tyrannus iniuste his quorum erant ereptas, iniustius
which the-tyrant unjustly from-those whose they-were snatched more-unjustly
illis ad quos nullo iure pertinebant donaverat, auferunt, et
to-those to whom by-no right they-belonged had-given they-take-away and
eas ad iustos possessores redire faciunt. His omnibus in
them to the-just possessors to-return they-cause these all-things within
finibus nostris rite peractis, diem et locum determinant, ubi
borders our duly accomplished a-day and place they-fix where
concordiam ad defensionem patriae renovaturi conveniant,
concord for the-defense of-the-homeland about-to-renew they-may-assemble
et eos in quibus infidelitatis suspicio resideret, aut a
and those in whom of-faithlessness suspicion should-reside either from
finibus suis exire aut secum fideliter convenire compellant.
the-borders their to-go-out or with-them faithfully to-agree they-may-compel
Haec omnia dum Heinricus audisset, nimis in animo
these all-things when Henry had-heard too-much in mind
conturbatur, et Mogontiam veniens, quosdam de residuis
he-is-troubled and to-Mainz coming some of the-remaining
adhuc captivis ad se duci praecepit et cum eis
still captives to himself to-be-led ordered and with them
de pretio, quo se redimerent ut dimitterentur,
about the-price by-which themselves they-might-ransom that they-might-be-released
egit. Interea orta seditione inter Mogontinos et
he-treated meanwhile having-arisen a-quarrel between the-Mainz and
Babenbergenses milites, civitas a Babenbergensibus incenditur,
Bamberg knights the-city by the-Bamberg-men is-set-on-fire
ita ut tota vel maxima pars eius arsura videretur. Ad
so that the-whole or greatest part its about-to-burn seemed for
quam restinguendam dum Heinricus ipse omnisque populus
which to-be-extinguished while Henry himself and-all the-people

festinaret, captivi nostri sine custode relicti, inventa navi
hastened captives our without guard left found a-ship
Rhenum transierunt, et die noctuque festinantes, in patriam
the-Rhine crossed and by-day and-night hastening into homeland
suam pervenerunt. Inter quos erat etiam Gerdrud, nobilissimi
their came among whom was also Gertrude of-the-most-noble
Ottonis ducis fratris Herimanni vidua, quam Lodowig
Otto the-duke of-the-brother Hermann the-widow whom Louis
ante biennium fere ceperat, et domino suo Heinrico, ut
before two-years nearly had-captured and to-lord his Henry that
ab ea pecuniam extorqueret, quod et fecit, adduxerat.
from her money he-might-extort which also he-did had-brought
Heinricus ergo exrex videns suae voluntati cunctas
Henry therefore the-ex-king seeing to-his will all
res adversari, cum intelligeret se de lupina ferocitate
things to-be-opposed since he-understood himself from wolfish ferocity
parum proficere, pelliciam nunc ovinam cogitavit induere, ut
little to-profit the-fleece now sheep's he-thought to-put-on that
ostensione pietatis et iustitiae deciperet, quos crudelitate
by-the-show of-mercy and justice he-might-deceive those-whom by-cruelty
violenta superare non posset. Volebat namque legatos ad
violent to-overcome not he-could he-wished for envoys to
Saxoniam mittere, qui dicerent, se eis plus quam
Saxony to-send who should-say himself for-them more than
ipsi cuperent bonum esse velle, se penitus iniustitiam
they-themselves desired good to-be to-wish himself utterly injustice
cum vitiis omnibus, quoad posset, abicere, se eis in
with vices all as-far-as he-could to-cast-off himself to-them in
omnibus pariturum dedere; sed nullum, qui hanc legationem
all-things about-to-obey to-surrender but none who this embassy
portare praesumeret, invenit; quia de suis quoque eum
to-carry should-presume he-found because of his-own also him

nullus, quod ore emisit, in corde habere credebat,
no-one what with-mouth he-uttered in heart to-have believed
nec aliquis dubitavit, quin si quis Saxonibus valde iam
nor anyone doubted that-not if anyone to-the-Saxons very now
exasperatis hoc nuntium falsitatis afferret, pro falsis promissis
exasperated this message of-falsehood should-bring for false promises
poenas veraciter daret. Remanserant autem adhuc duo de
penalties truly he-would-pay there-had-remained moreover still two of
nostris apud eum, Werinherus Magedaburgensis, et eiusdem
ours with him Werner of-Magdeburg and of-the-same
nominis Merseburgensis episcopus; qui cum possent invito
name of-Merseburg bishop who though they-could unwilling
rege sicut alii repatriare, nolebant, quia in illo licet impio,
the-king as others to-return-home would-not because in him though impious
Deum, a quo est omnis potestas, offendere timebant. Hos
God from whom is all power to-offend they-feared these
ergo cum supradicta legatione ad Saxoniam misit, sed de
therefore with the-above-said embassy to Saxony he-sent but about
eorum reversione nichil eis dixit. Illi vero Saxonibus cum
their return nothing to-them he-said they but to-the-Saxons with
tota voluntate quod erant iussi suadebant; sed Saxones,
whole will what they-had-been ordered urged but the-Saxons
cognitis tot eius mendaciis, haec quoque promissa
having-learned so-many his lies these also promises
veneno falsitatis infecta non dubitabant. Cumque vellent
with-the-poison of-falsehood infected not doubted and-when wished
episcopi eorum responsa reportare, iussi sunt unum e duobus
the-bishops their answers to-carry-back ordered they-were one of two-things
eligere, aut hic modo stare, aut huc numquam posthac redire.
to-choose either here now to-stay or hither never hereafter to-return

Principes igitur nostri simul adunati, iuramentis et obsidibus
the-princes therefore our together united oaths and hostages
invicem datis in unum se confirmant, et ut ad invicem
to-each-other given into one themselves confirm and that to each-other
firmissime cohaererent, regem cui subiaceant omnes eligere
most-firmly they-might-cohere a-king to-whom should-be-subject all to-choose
deliberant. Sed cum audissent, quod Suevos tam crudeliter
they-deliberate but when they-had-heard that the-Swabians so cruelly
antiquum foedus infregisse poenituit, ad eos legatos de
the-old treaty to-have-broken it-repented to them envoys about
renovando foedere mittere complacuit; ut iterum convenientes
renewing the-treaty to-send it-pleased that again coming-together
in unum, inimicitiarum acerbitatem multa dilectionis suavitate
into one of-enmities the-bitterness by-much of-love sweetness
superarent, et invicem sibi donantes, contra communem
they-might-overcome and to-each-other themselves pardoning against the-common
omnibus hostem, uno de se rege facto, concorditer
to-all enemy one from themselves king made in-concord
starent. Domno quoque apostolico litteras miserunt,
they-might-stand to-lord also apostolic a-letter they-sent
quibus ut vel per se vel per nuntium genti paene
by-which that either through himself or through a-messenger to-the-nation almost
perditae consolator adesset, suppliciter oraverunt.
lost as-consoler he-would-be-present suppliantly they-prayed
Non modico igitur Saxones exercitu collecto, perrexerunt
not small therefore the-Saxons an-army having-been-collected went
ad Rhenum contra vicum qui dicitur Oppenheim, quo et
to the-Rhine opposite the-village which is-called Oppenheim whither also
patriarcha cum episcopo Pataviensi, pontificis Romani legato,
the-patriarch with the-bishop of-Passau of-the-pontiff Roman envoy
convenerat, et una Suevorum non parva multitudo, qui
had-come and together of-the-Swabians not small a-multitude who

omnes exercitum Saxonicum, dum veniret expectabant. Quibus
all the-army Saxon until it-came awaited whom
appropinquantibus patriarcha ceterique primates, quia de
approaching the-patriarch and-the-other chief-men because from
recenti proelio utrorumque gladii adhuc cruore madebant,
the-recent battle of-both the-swords still with-blood were-wet
quamvis per legationes mutuas invicem sibi donassent,
although through embassies mutual to-each-other themselves they-had-pardoned
tamen ne, quod facile est armatis, seditio vilibus a personis
yet lest which easy is for-armed-men sedition base by persons
exorta factum foedus corrumperet, obviam Saxonibus ibant
arisen the-made treaty should-corrupt to-meet the-Saxons went
et amicitiam quam renovaverant absentes, nunc praesentes
and the-friendship which they-had-renewed absent now present
confirmare monebant. Hinc igitur dux Otto, violenter
to-confirm advised on-this-side therefore duke Otto violently
honore suo privatus, illinc Welph dux, eodem honore
of-honor his deprived on-that-side Welf duke with-the-same honor
non iuste sublimatus, hac condicione sibi invicem pacis
not justly exalted on-this condition to-themselves mutually of-peace
oscula dederunt, ut electo, propter quod ex utraque parte
kisses gave that chosen for which from each side
convenerant, novo rege, quicunque eorum ipsum honorem
they-had-assembled a-new king whichever of-them the-very honor
iure retineret, alter ei non invidens libenter concederet.
by-right should-retain the-other to-him not begrudging gladly should-yield
Similiter pacis oscula dederunt ordinis secundi sive tertii
likewise of-peace kisses gave of-rank second or third
partis utriusque milites, quicquid invicem se laeserant
of-party each the-knights whatever to-each-other themselves they-had-hurt
non sine multo fletu donantes. Tunc omnes facti ex
not without much weeping pardoning then all made from

hostibus amici fideles, castra posuerunt tam prope, ut
enemies friends faithful camp pitched so near that
vicissim populus uterque sermones utriusque non difficile
in-turn people each the-speeches of-each not with-difficulty
posset audire. Cumque iam coepissent de rege constituendo
could to-hear and-when now they-had-begun about a-king to-be-set-up
sermones conferre, Saxones ex Suevis, Suevi ex
talks to-hold the-Saxons from the-Swabians the-Swabians from
Saxonibus unum quemlibet volebant eligere; Heinricum vero
the-Saxons one any they-wished to-choose Henry but
tenebat in altera ripa Rheni civitas Mogontina, omni spe
held on the-other bank of-the-Rhine the-city of-Mainz all hope
regni retinendi deposita. Misit tamen nuntios, qui
of-the-kingdom to-be-retained laid-aside he-sent nevertheless messengers who
temptarent istos ad misericordiam flectere, ut eius iam satis
should-try these to mercy to-bend that his now enough
correpti correctionem dignarentur accipere. Sed eorum nullius
chastised amendment they-should-deign to-accept but of-them of-none
legatio a quoquam nostrate accipitur, nisi prius per
the-embassy by any of-ours is-received unless first through
apostolici legatum ab anathematis vinculo solvatur.
of-the-apostolic(-lord) the-envoy from of-anathema the-bond he-be-released
Ut igitur stilus velociter currat, humilitatem poenitentis
that therefore the-pen swiftly may-run the-humility of-the-penitent
accepturos se promittunt ea condicione, si vellet
about-to-accept themselves they-promise on-that condition if he-would-be-willing
implere cuncta quae ei nostrates facienda proponunt.
to-fulfill all-things which to-him ours to-be-done propose
Quod cum ille spopondisset, hoc ei primum proponunt,
which when he had-pledged this to-him first they-propose
ut episcopum Wormatiensem, qui iam diu fuerat expulsus,
that the-bishop of-Worms who now long had-been expelled

potentem faceret urbis suae; deinde ut mox litteras
master he-should-make of-city his then that soon a-letter
scribi faceret, in quibus se fateretur iniuste Saxones
to-be-written he-should-cause in which himself he-should-confess unjustly the-Saxons
afflixisse, quas a nostris perspectas, imagine sua nostris
to-have-afflicted which by ours inspected with-image his ours
praesentibus signari faceret, et signatas per Italiam et
being-present to-be-sealed he-should-cause and sealed through Italy and
per Teutonicam terram mittendas per nostros nuntios,
through the-Teutonic land to-be-sent through our messengers
nostratibus daret; ipseque Romam veniens per dignam
to-ours he-should-give and-he-himself to-Rome coming through worthy
satisfactionem anathematis vinculo careret. Episcopus
satisfaction of-anathema the-bond should-be-without the-bishop
ergo statim cum magno honore in urbem deducitur;
therefore at-once with great honor into the-city is-led-back
litterae in praesentia nostratium bulla regis signatae,
the-letter in the-presence of-ours with-the-seal of-the-king sealed
per nostros muntios per civitates Italiae regnique
through our messengers through the-cities of-Italy and-of-the-kingdom
Teutonici diriguntur; ipse se tota festinatione parat, ut
Teutonic are-directed he-himself himself with-all haste prepares that
per Romani pontificis indulgentiam ligamen anathematis
through of-the-Roman pontiff the-indulgence the-binding of-anathema
exuat. Nostrates vero singuli sacramento firmaverunt,
he-may-put-off ours but individually by-oath confirmed
ut nisi Heinricus quartus, Heinrici imperatoris filius, in
that unless Henry the-fourth of-Henry the-emperor son in
Februarii mensis initio a banno per apostolicum
of-February of-the-month the-beginning from the-ban by the-apostolic(-lord)
absolutus fuisset, numquam amplius ullo ingenio suo rex
absolved had-been never more by-any contrivance his king

eorum nec appellaretur nec esset. Quod sacramentum primo
their neither would-he-be-called nor be which oath first
fecit patriarcha, et in litteras redactum in suum misit
made the-patriarch and into a-document reduced into his sent
marsupium; quod tamen quia melius servavit in scripto quam
purse which yet because better he-kept in writing than
in opere, sicut paulo ante dictum est, crudele supplicium
in deed as a-little before said it-was a-cruel punishment
dedit. Deinde fecit idem Pataviensis episcopus, sedis
he-paid then made the-same of-Passau bishop of-the-see
Romanae legatus; et post hos omnes qui aderant episcopi,
Roman envoy and after these all who were-present bishops
duces, comites ceterique maiores et minores; sed episcopi plus
dukes counts and-the-other greater and lesser but the-bishops more
aliis in hoc egerunt, quia iuramentum in litteris etiam
than-others in this did because the-oath in writing also
servaverunt. Tunc misso legato rogaverunt apostolicum, ut
they-kept then sent an-envoy they-asked the-apostolic(-lord) that
in principio Februarii vellet Augustam venire, ut causa
at the-beginning of-February he-would-wish to-Augsburg to-come that the-cause
diligenter examinata coram omnibus, vel eum solveret,
diligently examined before all either him he-might-absolve
vel eo fortius adhuc ligato, alium sibi cum ipsius
or him more-strongly still bound another for-themselves with his
consensu quaererent, qui regnare sciret. His omnibus ibi
consent they-might-seek who to-reign knew these all-things there
peractis, exercitus uterque cum multa caritate dividitur, et
accomplished army each with much charity is-divided and
uterque tripudians et Deo laudes cantans ad sua revertitur.
each dancing and to-God praises singing to its-own returns

The pope, bound for Augsburg, turns back on hearing that Henry has entered Italy with an army to set up another pope. Henry comes to him barefoot and in wool and is absolved, but soon returns to his excommunicated counselors. At Forchheim the Saxons and Swabians elect Rudolf king; the papal legate forbids the princes' private conditions, and the assembly rules that the crown passes by election, not inheritance. At Rudolf's coronation in Mainz the townsmen attack his unarmed courtiers, who rally in Saint Martin's and rout them, and the next day the town submits.

Apostolicus autem cum, sicut rogatus erat, Augustam
the-apostolic(-lord) moreover when as asked he-had-been Augsburg
versus tenderet, ut ibi ingrediente Februario, qui erat
toward was-making-his-way that there entering February which was
annus Domini 1077, sicut placuerat principibus adesset,
the-year of-the-Lord 1077 as it-had-pleased the-princes he-might-be-present
et nostrates illuc econtra venire festinarent, ut domnum
and ours thither on-the-other-side to-come hastened that lord
papam venerabiliter sicut decebat acciperent, ecce nuntiatur
pope venerably as befitted they-might-receive behold it-is-announced
apostolico, Heinricum cum magno exercitu Italiam
to-the-apostolic(-lord) Henry with great army Italy
intrasse, et si ipse montes sicut volebat transcendisset,
to-have-entered and if he-himself the-mountains as he-wished had-crossed
alium papam pro illo constituere velle. Itaque misso velociter
another pope in-place-of him to-set-up to-wish and-so sent swiftly
nostris obviam legato, ipse tristis immo sibi multa
to-ours to-meet an-envoy he-himself sad nay for-himself much
timens revertitur, ut Italiam a gladio et igne tueatur.
fearing returns that Italy from sword and fire he-may-protect

Heinricus autem per Italiam vagans loco, sed magis
Henry moreover through Italy wandering in-location but more
animo, quid ageret nesciebat, quia quicquid ageret regnum
in-mind what he-should-do knew-not because whatever he-did the-kingdom
perdere timebat. Nisi enim supplex ad apostolicum veniret
to-lose he-feared unless for a-suppliant to the-apostolic(-lord) he-came
et per eum solutus a banno fuisset, regnum se
and through him released from the-ban had-been the-kingdom himself
non recepturum pro certo sciebat. Si vero supplex ad
not about-to-recover for certain he-knew if but a-suppliant to
satisfactionem veniret, timebat, ne sibi pro magnitudine
satisfaction he-came he-feared lest from-him for the-greatness
criminum regnum pontifex auferret, vel sibi inobedienti
of-(his)-crimes the-kingdom the-pontiff should-take-away or on-him disobedient
vincula potestatis apostolicae duplicaret. Ergo in multis
the-bonds of-power apostolic should-double therefore in many
curis in diversa dividitur. Quamvis autem utroque
cares in different-directions he-is-divided although moreover in-either
modo se perditum et periturum non dubitaret, tamen
way himself lost and about-to-perish not he-doubted yet
illam partem, in qua aliquid spei esse putabat, elegit; et
that part in which some of-hope to-be he-thought he-chose and
laneis indutus nudis pedibus ad apostolicum venit, dicens
in-wool clothed with-bare feet to the-apostolic(-lord) came saying
se plus amare regnum coeleste quam terrenum, et ideo
himself more to-love the-kingdom heavenly than the-earthly and therefore
poenitentiam quamcunque sibi vellet imponere, se
penance whatever on-him he-should-wish to-impose himself
humiliter suscepturum. Apostolicus vero de tanti viri
humbly about-to-undertake the-apostolic(-lord) but at of-so-great a-man
tanta humilitate laetatus, praecepit ei ut regalem ornatum,
so-great humility rejoicing ordered him that the-royal adornment

donec ipse permitteret, sibi non imponeret, quatenus
until he-himself should-permit on-himself not he-should-put so-that
omnipotenti Deo acceptior esset cordis eius contritio, quo
to-almighty God more-acceptable might-be of-heart his the-contrition the-more
eam et foris ostenderet vilis habitus testimonio; et ut eos
it also outwardly he-should-show of-mean dress by-the-testimony and that those
qui erant excommunicati, convivio vel colloquio vitaret;
who were excommunicated in-feast or in-conversation he-should-avoid
ne quod in se propria conversione fuisset Dei gratia
lest what in himself by-his-own conversion had-been of-God by-the-grace
mundatum, aliorum contagio fieret magis quam fuerat
cleansed of-others by-the-contagion should-become more than it-had-been
inmundum. Quod utrumque cum se facturum polliceretur,
unclean which both when himself about-to-do he-promised
absolutus hac lege dimittitur, multum monitus ne Deo
absolved on-this condition he-is-dismissed much admonished lest to-God
mentiatur; quia si promissa non impleverit, non solum
he-lie because if the-promises not he-shall-have-fulfilled not only
priora vincula non auferantur, sed etiam alia strictiora
the-earlier bonds not would-be-removed but even others stricter
superaddantur. Itaque reversus ad suos, cum coepisset eos
would-be-added and-so returned to his-own when he-had-begun them
a suo convivio separare, magnum coeperuut tumultum
from his feast to-separate a-great they-began tumult
facere, dicentes ei, quia si eos, quorum sapientia et
to-make saying to-him that if those whose by-wisdom and
virtute obtinuisset hactenus regnum, nunc a se repelleret,
by-valor he-had-held hitherto the-kingdom now from himself he-should-repel
apostolicus ei nec illud reddere nec aliud acquirere
the-apostolic(-lord) to-him neither that to-return nor another to-acquire
potuisset. His et aliis talibus verbis animus eius immutatur,
would-be-able by-these and other such words mind his is-changed

et ad consueta pravo pravorumque consilio revertitur.
and to the-accustomed with-wicked and-of-wicked-men counsel he-returns
Imponit capiti aureum diadema, et in corde retinet ferro
he-puts on-(his)-head a-golden diadem and in heart he-keeps than-iron
fortius anathema. Excommunicatorum communioni miscetur,
stronger the-anathema of-the-excommunicate with-the-communion he-mingles
et a sanctorum communione miser ille repellitur. Nunc
and from of-the-saints the-communion the-wretched he is-repelled now
fecit omnibus manifestum, quia non verum esset quod dixit,
he-made to-all plain that not true was what he-said
plus se amare regnum coeleste quam terrenum. Quod
more himself to-love the-kingdom heavenly than the-earthly which
si parumper in obedientia permansisset, et regnum nunc
if a-little in obedience he-had-remained both the-kingdom now
terrenum cum pace teneret, et quandoque coeleste sine
earthly with peace he-would-hold and sometime the-heavenly without
fine possessurus acciperet. Nunc vero factus inobediens, et
end about-to-possess he-would-receive now but made disobedient both
hoc quod amat non habebit, nisi cum magno labore; et
this which he-loves not he-will-have except with great labor and
illud non accipiet, nisi magna totius vitae mutatione.
that not he-will-receive except by-a-great of-the-whole life change
Interea Saxones et Suevi Forcheim conveniunt, sed et de
meanwhile the-Saxons and the-Swabians at-Forchheim assemble but also from
aliis regionibus legati aderant, qui quicquid isti de re
other regions envoys were-present who whatever these about the-state
publica commode definierint, idem laudare suos indicant.
public suitably should-have-defined the-same to-praise their-people indicate
Aderat etiam legatus apostolici, qui cuncta quae de
there-was-present also the-envoy of-the-apostolic(-lord) who all-things which about
regno nostrates utiliter disponerent, apostolicae sublimitatis
the-kingdom ours usefully should-arrange of-apostolic loftiness

auctoritate firmaret. Ex multis quos probitate dignos in
by-the-authority should-confirm from the-many whom by-uprightness worthy in
electione proposuerunt, tandem Rodulfum, ducem Suevorum,
the-election they-proposed at-last Rudolf duke of-the-Swabians
regem sibi Saxones et Suevi concorditer elegerunt.
as-king for-themselves the-Saxons and the-Swabians in-concord chose
At cum singuli deberent eum regem laudare, quidam
but when individuals were-bound him as-king to-acclaim some
voluerunt aliquas condiciones interponere, ut hac lege
wished certain conditions to-interpose that on-this condition
eum super se levarent regem, quatinus sibi de suis
him over themselves they-might-raise king so-that to-them for their
iniuriis specialiter promitteret iustificationem. Otto namque
injuries specially he-should-promise redress Otto for
dux non prius volebat eum sibi regem constituere, nisi
the-duke not before wished him for-himself as-king to-set-up unless
promitteret honorem sibi iniuste ablatum restituere. Sic
he-should-promise the-honor from-him unjustly taken-away to-restore thus
et alii multi suas singulares causas interponunt, quas ut
also others many their particular causes interpose which that
ille se correcturum promitteret volunt. Quod intelligens
he himself about-to-correct should-promise they-wish which understanding
apostolici legatus fieri prohibuit, et ostendens eum
of-the-apostolic(-lord) the-envoy to-be-done forbade and showing him
non singulorum sed universorum fore regem, ut universis
not of-individuals but of-all about-to-be king that to-all
iustum se promitteret, satis esse perhibuit. Ait etiam, si
just himself he-should-promise enough to-be declared he-says also if
eo modo quo coeptum fuerat, promissionibus singillatim
in-that way in-which begun it-had-been with-promises one-by-one
praemissis eligeretur, ipsa electio non sincera, sed haeresis
put-first he-were-elected the-very election not sincere but of-heresy

simoniacae veneno polluta videretur. Tamen quaedam sunt
simoniac by-the-poison polluted would-seem nevertheless certain are
ibi causae specialiter exceptae, quas, quia iniuste viguerant,
there causes specially excepted which because unjustly they-had-prevailed
deberet emendare; scilicet ut episcopatus non pro pretio nec
he-ought to-amend namely that bishoprics not for a-price nor
pro amicitia daret, sed unicuique ecclesiae de suis
for friendship he-should-give but to-each church from its-own-members
electionem, sicut iubent canones, permitteret. Hoc etiam
the-election as order the-canons he-should-permit this also
ibi consensu communi comprobatum, Romani pontificis
there by-consent common approved of-the-Roman pontiff
auctoritate est corroboratum, ut regia potestas nulli per
by-the-authority was strengthened that the-royal power to-no-one through
hereditatem, sicut ante fuit consuetudo, cederet, sed filius
inheritance as before was the-custom should-pass but the-son
regis, etiam si valde dignus esset, potius per electionem
of-a-king even if very worthy he-were rather through election
spontaneam, quam per successionis lineam rex proveniret;
spontaneous than through of-succession the-line king should-come-forth
si vero non esset dignus regis filius, vel si nollet eum
if but not were worthy of-the-king the-son or if should-not-want him
populus, quem regem facere vellet haberet in potestate
the-people whom king to-make it-wished it-should-have in power
populus. His omnibus legaliter constitutis, Rodulfum electum
the-people these all-things lawfully established Rudolf elected
regem Mogontiam cum magno honore deducunt, et ei
king to-Mainz with great honor they-lead and to-him
dum consecrationem regis accipiebat, venerabiliter et
while the-consecration of-a-king he-was-receiving venerably and
fortiter, sicut mox apparebat, assistunt. Consecratur autem
bravely as soon was-evident they-stand-by he-is-consecrated moreover

a Sigifrido Magontinae civitatis archiepiscopo, praesentibus
by Siegfried of-Mainz city archbishop being-present
et adiuvantibus aliis quam plurimis, anno Domini 1077,
and helping others as very-many in-the-year of-the-Lord 1077
7. Kal. Aprilis.
on-the-seventh Kalends of-April
Ipso vero die consecrationis eius paene contigit
on-the-very but day of-consecration his nearly there-happened
miserandum facinus, ut fieret dies unus principium et finis
a-pitiable crime that should-be a-day one the-beginning and end
regni ipsius, et de eo vere posset nasci proverbium,
of-kingship his and about him truly could to-be-born a-proverb
quia tam vigil rex esset, ut in regno suo numquam
that so watchful a-king he-was that in reign his never
vidisset somnum. Namque cum ipsa die eius unctionis
had-be-seen sleep for when on-the-very day of-his anointing
in introitu missae invitaretur sub nomine Ierusalem tota
at the-introit of-the-mass was-invited under the-name Jerusalem the-whole
fidelium ecclesia ad laetitiam spiritualem, et inde habeat
of-the-faithful church to joy spiritual and thence has
omnis fere ecclesia, etiam in religiosis personis, ipso die
all nearly the-church even in religious persons on-that day
ludendi non spernendam consuetudinem: prandio novi regis
of-playing not to-be-spurned a-custom the-dinner of-the-new king
finito, iuvenes eius ad ludum venere communem, causam
finished youths his to sport came common cause
ob duplicem, cum regiae consecrationis, tum magis
on-account-of double both of-the-royal consecration and more
antiquae consuetudinis. Urbani vero videntes hunc ludum,
of-ancient custom the-townsmen but seeing this sport
in crudelem sunt accensi zelum; et quia magis favebant
into cruel were kindled jealousy and because more they-favored

exregi quam regi, cogitabant illum ludum turbare, et semen
the-ex-king than the-king they-planned that sport to-disturb and seed
aliquod unde seditio nasceretur inmittere, ad quam sedandam
some whence sedition might-be-born to-throw-in for which to-be-quelled
dum rex procederet, modo quolibet occisus interiret.
while the-king should-come-forth in-way any slain he-might-perish
Miserunt ergo quosdam suos iuvenes, ut curialium ludo
they-sent therefore some their youths that of-the-courtiers with-the-sport
se miscerent, et aliquam qualibet arte materiam belli
themselves they-might-mingle and some by-whatever art material of-war
construerent. Itaque unus ex ipsis cuiusdam nobilis ex curia
might-build and-so one of them of-a-certain noble from the-court
crusinam gulis ornatam quasi furtim praecidit, et
the-fur-coat with-ermine-trim adorned as-if stealthily cut-off and
quasi furtum volens abscondere recessit, et tamen malebat
as-if the-theft wishing to-hide withdrew and yet preferred
deprehendi, ut acciperet quod accepit. Nam ille cuius honesta
to-be-caught that he-might-receive what he-received for he whose honorable
vestis erat dehonestata, ut illum qui suae vestis partem
garment had-been dishonored when him who of-his garment part
gestabat insecutus est, colaphum ei tantum dedit, suique
was-carrying pursued has a-blow to-him only gave and-of-his
vestimenti particulam recepit. Tunc urbani in subsidiis ad
garment the-bit recovered then the-townsmen in reserves for
hoc ipsum collecti, curiales inermes incurrunt armati, et
this very-thing gathered the-courtiers unarmed attack armed and
multos ex eis acriter vulneraverunt, aliquos etiam occiderunt.
many of them fiercely wounded some also killed
Nam arma curialium in hospitiis derelicta, dum ipsi
for the-arms of-the-courtiers in lodgings left while they-themselves
circa regem frequentes essent, urbani praeripuerant, et
around the-king crowded were the-townsmen had-seized-beforehand and

ne illi, quorum erant, ea invenire possent effecerant.
lest those whose they-were them to-find they-could had-brought-about
Rex talia videns volebat se periculo dare, et vel
the-king such-things seeing wished himself to-danger to-give and either
suos eripere vel cum eis simul occumbere; sed qui circa
his-men to-rescue or with them together to-fall but those-who around
eum erant, totum hunc tumultum propter eum fuisse
him were whole this tumult on-account-of him to-have-been
inceptum cognoverunt, et ideo eum de palatio descendere
begun knew and therefore him from the-palace to-come-down
non permiserunt. Contraxerunt ergo se curiales et
not they-allowed gathered therefore themselves the-courtiers and
omnis exercitus in maiorem ecclesiam sancti Martini, et
the-whole army into the-greater church of-Saint Martin and
ibi conglobati, consiliis armisque muniti, subito cum magno
there massed with-counsels and-arms fortified suddenly with great
impetu exierunt, et urbanos aut occiderunt aut ceperunt,
onrush came-out and the-townsmen either killed or captured
praeter eos qui fugae se credentes, timore pernicitatem
except those who to-flight themselves trusting fear swiftness
praebente abierunt velociter. In crastino vero omnes ex urbe
supplying went-off swiftly on the-morrow but all from the-city
maiores ante regem supplices venerunt, et de malitia quam
the-greater-men before the-king suppliant came and for the-malice which
fecerant, supplicia quae rex volebat accipere dederunt, et
they-had-done penalties which the-king wished to-receive paid and
ut posthac imperpetuum fideles ei manerent, iuraverunt.
that hereafter forever faithful to-him they-would-remain swore

Confirmed king by the Saxons at Merseburg, Rudolf besieges Würzburg but spares it rather than let its churches be sacked. He meets Henry across the Neckar and agrees to a truce, even offering to step down for peace; when Henry's Bavarian and Bohemian allies arrive, Henry would break it, but his mediating princes refuse. In 1078 at Mellrichstadt the two bishops named Werner flee first, the one of Magdeburg to his death, Siegfried of Mainz is captured, and Rudolf, believing his whole army routed, falls back toward Saxony.

Sed rex non habens eis fidem, civitatem dimisit et ad
but the-king not having in-them trust the-city left and to
Suevos abiit; ibique parum moratus, ad Saxoniam transivit.
the-Swabians went-away and-there a-little having-stayed to Saxony crossed
Nam dominicae resurrectionis festivitate apud Augustam
for of-the-Lord's resurrection the-feast at Augsburg
civitatem celebrata, in pentecosten ad Erpesfort venit, et inde
the-city celebrated at Pentecost to Erfurt he-came and thence
non parva Saxonum multitudine cum regali honore deductus,
by-no small of-Saxons multitude with royal honor escorted
apostolorum principum principalem sollemnitatem in urbe
of-the-apostles of-the-princes the-principal solemnity in the-city
Merseburgensi devotione multa celebravit. Quo cum de
of-Merseburg with-devotion much he-celebrated whither when from
cunctis Saxoniae partibus maiores et mediocres convenissent,
all of-Saxony parts the-greater and middling had-assembled
regemque sicut a principibus erat electus, unanimiter in
and-the-king as by the-princes he-had-been elected unanimously in
regno confirmassent, dixit rex, sibi non videri decens
the-kingship had-confirmed said the-king to-himself not to-seem fitting
vel utile, Saxones quasi plena pace potitos domi quietos
or useful the-Saxons as-if full peace having-gained at-home quiet

sedere; suasitque illis, ut exercitu collecto hostiles
to-sit and-he-urged them that an-army having-been-gathered hostile
ultro partes invaderent, quatinus aliquid fortiter
of-their-own-accord parts they-should-invade so-that something bravely
agendo, et a se desidiae, qua notati erant, notam
by-doing both from themselves of-sloth with-which marked they-had-been the-brand
abicerent, et hosti, qui de victoria superbus tumebat,
they-might-cast-off and for-the-enemy who over the-victory proud swelled
arrogantiam minuerent. Quod et ipsi laeti fecerunt.
the-arrogance might-diminish which also they-themselves glad did
Igitur in Augusto mense cum magno exercitu rex Rodulfus
therefore in August the-month with great army king Rudolf
urbem Wirceburg obsedit, ad quam expugnandam machinas
the-city Würzburg besieged for which to-be-stormed engines
diversi generis parari iussit. Quae dum parabantur,
of-different kind to-be-prepared he-ordered which while they-were-being-prepared
ipse sicut rex christianus Deum timens secum cogitabat,
he-himself as a-king Christian God fearing with-himself thought
quia si urbs capta fuisset, ab ecclesiis vel ecclesiasticis
that if the-city captured had-been from churches or ecclesiastical
rebus diruendis vel diripiendis vulgus semel intromissum
things to-be-torn-down or to-be-plundered the-mob once let-in
nec ipse rex revocare posset. Ergo lentus ibi
not-even he-himself the-king to-recall could therefore slow there
sedebat, et occasiones diversas ne pugnaretur ad urbem
he-sat and occasions various lest it-be-fought at the-city
quaerendo, integrum fere mensem nichil proficiens ibi
by-seeking whole nearly a-month nothing profiting there
manebat; maluitque gloriosam, quasi urbem capere non
remained and-preferred glorious as-if the-city to-capture not

posset, habere contumeliam, quam periculosam, ut urbe
he-could to-have the-insult than dangerous that the-city
destructa nulli sacrae rei parceretur, adquirere gloriam.
destroyed no sacred thing should-be-spared to-acquire glory
Interea Heinricus exrex, exercitu nec magno nec forti
meanwhile Henry the-ex-king with-an-army neither great nor strong
congregato — nam maxima pars eius ex mercatoribus erat —
gathered for the-greatest part its of merchants was
obviam nostris ire paravit; pigroque progrediens incessu,
to-meet ours to-go prepared and-with-slow advancing gait
Bawarios et Boemios, quos sibi in auxilium venire sperabat,
the-Bavarians and the-Bohemians whom to-himself in help to-come he-hoped
frustra expectavit. Quo rex Rodulfus audito, laetus obsidionem
in-vain awaited which king Rudolf heard glad the-siege
dimisit hostique saevo saevior occurrere festinavit. Ad
abandoned and-the-enemy savage more-savage to-meet hastened at
fluvium itaque qui vocatur Neckar exercitus ambo convenerunt
the-river and-so which is-called Neckar armies both came-together
et in diversa ripa animo pugnandi diverso castra posuerunt.
and on opposite bank with-mind for-fighting differing camp pitched
Nam nostri dederunt illis optionem, ut vel ipsi
for ours gave to-them the-choice that either they-themselves
longius a littore recedentes sibi facultatem transeundi
farther from the-bank withdrawing to-them the-means of-crossing
concederent, vel ipsi nostrae ripae spatio securi accepto,
should-grant or they-themselves of-our bank space safe received
cum nostris pugnaturi transirent. Illi vero, quamvis multis,
with ours about-to-fight should-cross they but although with-many
ut utrumlibet facerent, conviciis essent exagitati, neutrum
that whichever they-should-do insults they-had-been harried neither
facere voluerunt. Cum autem multos ibi dies sedissent, et
to-do were-willing when moreover many there days they-had-sat and

illis nostri locum ad se veniendi saepe frustra dedissent,
to-them ours room to themselves of-coming often in-vain had-given
tandem illi nec se nostris pares, nec auxilium quod
at-last they neither themselves to-ours equal nor the-help which
sperabant venire videntes, cum militari non possent virtute,
they-hoped to-come seeing since by-military not they-could valor
astutia temptabant a se bellum istud amovere. Fecerunt
by-cunning they-tried from themselves war this to-remove they-made
enim cum nostris pacem sequestram, qua, si posset fieri,
for with ours a-peace provisional by-which if it-could to-be-done
per mutua colloquia pervenirent ad pacem perpetuam. Ad
through mutual talks they-might-arrive at peace perpetual to
se invicem igitur veniendi securitate concessa, dixerunt
themselves mutually therefore of-coming security granted said
illi, quid opus esset nostris secum ferro decernere, cum
they what need there-was for-ours with-them with-the-sword to-decide since
ipsi parati essent rem verbis agere; et si quidem
they-themselves ready were the-matter by-words to-treat and if indeed
nostram causam iustitia commendaret, se relicto domino
our cause justice commended themselves having-left lord
suo nostris associari, ea condicione, ut si sua causa melior
their to-ours to-be-allied on-this condition that if their cause better
esse probaretur, nostrates illis eadem lege coniungi non
to-be were-proved ours to-them by-the-same law to-be-joined not
dedignarentur. Quod cum nostri laudassent, et ipse rex
would-disdain which when ours had-praised and he-himself king
noster se, ut pax inter eos fidelis fieret, libenter a
our himself that peace between them faithful might-be-made gladly from
regno descensurum promisisset, constituto die, quo ad
the-kingship about-to-step-down had-promised appointed a-day on-which for
hanc causam terminandam neutro rege praesente venirent,
this cause to-be-settled neither king being-present they-should-come

ab invicem ambo exercitus discesserunt; et ecce illi magnam
from each-other both armies departed and behold they a-great
turbam ex Bawariis et Boemiis, quos iam diu expectaverant,
crowd of Bavarians and Bohemians whom now long they-had-awaited
advenire viderunt. Quo cognito Heinricus nimis fit laetus;
to-arrive saw which learned Henry too becomes glad
factaeque pacis oblitus, iam nostros a tergo minus cautos
and-of-the-made peace forgetful now ours from the-rear less cautious
invaderet, si principes illi, qui pacis faciendae mediatores
would-have-attacked if princes those who of-peace to-be-made mediators
vel auctores fuerant, fidem suam contaminare non timerent.
or authors had-been faith their to-defile not had-feared
Itaque nostrates domum cum pace reversi, annum fuerunt
and-so ours home with peace returned a-year were
integrum nec laedentes aliquem nec ab aliquo laesi.
whole neither harming anyone nor by anyone harmed
Sequenti vero anno, qui erat ab incarnatione Domini 1078,
in-the-following but year which was from the-incarnation of-the-Lord 1078
iterum Saxonicus congregatur exercitus, et missa legatione
again the-Saxon is-gathered army and sent an-embassy
Suevos obviam sibi venire rogaverunt, ut utriusque populi
the-Swabians to-meet them to-come they-asked that of-each people
virtute coniuncta, omnes sibi adversantes vel ad se
the-strength joined all to-themselves opposing either to themselves
transire compellerent, vel sibi foederari nolentes dira
to-cross-over they-might-compel or with-themselves to-be-leagued unwilling with-dire
bellorum tribulatione fatigarent. Quod cognoscens Heinricus,
of-wars tribulation might-weary which learning Henry
robore congregato intervenit medius; nec est passus ut
strength gathered came-between in-the-middle nor has-he suffered that
uterque in unum conveniret exercitus. Exercitus ergo
each into one should-come army the-army therefore

Saxonicus ad Methelrikestad venit, ibique Heinricum cum non
Saxon to Mellrichstadt came and-there Henry with no
parvo robore virtutis invenit. Quid in narrando moram facio,
small strength of-force found why in narrating delay I-make
cum illi nullam fecissent in agendo? Proelium incipitur, fortiter
when they none had-made in doing the-battle is-begun bravely
immo crudeliter ex utraque parte pugnatur, et hinc
nay cruelly from each side it-is-fought and on-this-side
et inde fuit diversus eventus pugnae; fugiunt isti, fugiunt
and on-that was different the-outcome of-the-fight flee these flee
illi; nostri capiuntur sed eripiuntur, hostes interficiuntur. Ex
those ours are-captured but are-rescued enemies are-killed of
nostris itaque primi fecerunt fugam, qui numquam venire
ours and-so first made flight those-who never to-come
debuissent ad pugnam, episcopi scilicet unius nominis, sed ut
ought-to-have to the-fight the-bishops namely of-one name but that
ita dicam non unius ominis; uterque enim Werinherus vocatur.
so I-may-say not of-one omen each for Werner is-called
Sed Magedaburgensis ab incolis illius patriae interceptus,
but he-of-Magdeburg by the-inhabitants of-that country intercepted
miserabiliter occiditur; Merseburgensis vero despoliatus, in
wretchedly is-killed he-of-Merseburg but despoiled into
patriam nudus revertitur. Quod illi me non ad contumeliam,
the-homeland naked returns which to-him me not for insult
quisquis hoc legit, sed dixisse putet ad gloriam; quia
whoever this reads but to-have-said let-him-think for glory because
ab ipsius ore non semel audivi, quod ipsam nuditatem
from his mouth not once I-heard that the-very nakedness
non tolerasse nollet pro pondere quolibet auri vel
not to-have-endured he-would-be-unwilling for weight any of-gold or
argenti. In eadem fuga sunt capti Bernhardus Romanae sedis
of-silver in the-same flight were captured Bernard of-the-Roman see

archidiaconus, Sigifridus archipraesul Magontinus, Adalbertus
archdeacon Siegfried archbishop of-Mainz Adalbert
Wormatiensis episcopus. Sed duos illos non longe post eripuit
of-Worms bishop but two those not long after rescued
Dei clementia, tertius iste perductus est in Heinrici crudelis
of-God the-clemency the-third this-one led was into of-Henry the-cruel
tyranni praesentiam; qui tamen longe post, invito tyranno,
tyrant the-presence who yet long after unwilling the-tyrant
divina liberatur misericordia. Quos omnes quia melius sciebant
by-divine is-freed mercy whom all because better they-knew
psalmos cantare, eo quod nutriti sub religione essent, quam
psalms to-sing for-this that nurtured under religion they-had-been than
legiones armatas ad bella disponere, solo visu proeliantium
legions armed for wars to-dispose at-the-mere sight of-those-fighting
versos in fugam, tanta multitudo sequitur, ut rex totum
turned to flight so-great a-multitude follows that the-king the-whole
exercitum penitus fugae se dedisse arbitraretur. Quos cum
army utterly to-flight itself to-have-given thought whom when
rex nec victoriam certam promittendo, nec servitutem
the-king neither victory certain by-promising nor servitude
perpetuam nisi fuissent reversi minando potuisset revocare,
perpetual unless they-had returned by-threatening had-been-able to-recall
solum se relictum cum paucis existimans, coepit ipse
alone himself left with a-few thinking began he-himself
etiam paulatim revertendo Saxoniae finibus appropinquare.
also little-by-little by-returning of-Saxony to-the-borders to-draw-near

The Saxons in the front line press on: an enemy who mocks their cry of Saint Peter is cut down, and Hartwig, the future archbishop of Magdeburg, talks his way free. Otto and Frederick drive Henry into Würzburg; Otto, taking Frederick's men for the enemy, goes home, while Frederick holds the field, frees Siegfried of Mainz, and gives thanks. At Regensburg Henry tells his princes that Saxony lies empty, but hearing that sixty thousand Saxons wait beyond the forest they turn back, and he plunders Swabia instead.

Interea nostri, qui fortes hostibus se primo miscuerant,
meanwhile ours who brave with-the-enemy themselves first had-mingled
nichil de post terga relictis scientes, adversariis fortibus
nothing about behind backs those-left knowing to-the-adversaries brave
fortes resistebant, minus vero fortibus fortius insistentes,
brave they-resisted on-the-less but brave more-bravely pressing
eos fugae praesidium petere compellebant. Ibi quidam
them of-flight the-protection to-seek they-compelled there a-certain-man
de nostris adversarium sibi videns obvium, velut suum
of ours an-adversary to-himself seeing coming-toward as his-own
salutavit socium, dicens: 'Sancte Petre!' quod nomen Saxones
greeted comrade saying holy Peter which name the-Saxons
pro symbolo tenebant omnes in ore. Ille vero nimium
as watchword held all in mouth he but too
superbus et tantum deridere nomen exorsus, in eius vertice
proud and so-much to-mock the-name having-begun on his crown
librato mucrone: 'Hoc', inquit, 'tibi tuus Petrus mittit pro
the-poised blade this he-says to-you your Peter sends as
munere!' et nondum sermonem finierat totum, cum
a-gift and not-yet the-speech he-had-finished whole when

gladium Saxonis alterius in cerebro habebat, dicentis: 'Et hoc
the-sword of-a-Saxon of-another in (his)-brain he-had saying and this
habeas munus ex parte tui Heinrici, tyranni insanientis!'
have as-gift from the-part of-your Henry the-tyrant raving
Hardwigus tunc Magontini praesulis archicapellanus, in
Hartwig then of-the-Mainz prelate the-arch-chaplain on
eodem die post annum urbem Magedaburgensem archipraesul
the-same day after a-year the-city of-Magdeburg as-archbishop
ingressurus, ab hostium multitudine, ne ullus ei locus
about-to-enter by of-the-enemy a-multitude lest any for-him place
esset evadendi, est circumdatus. Cui cum illi velut capto
there-be of-escaping was surrounded to-whom when they as a-captive
illudentes dicerent, quia libentius eum tunc in gratia domini
mocking said that more-gladly him then in the-favor of-lord
sui, sicut olim fuit, aspicerent, ille sicut vir prudens
their as formerly he-was they-would-see he like a-man prudent
ita temperavit responsum, ut nec mendacium proferret,
so tempered the-answer that neither a-lie he-should-utter
et tamen eos fallendo periculum praesens devitaret. Paucis
and yet them by-deceiving the-danger present he-might-avoid in-few
enim, sicut tempus postulabat, verbis respondit: 'Sicut video',
for as the-time demanded words he-replied as I-see
dicens, 'in cubiculo domni regis hesterna nocte nullus
saying in the-chamber of-lord king last night none
vestrum me vidit. Sed festinemus ad amicos nostros, ne
of-you me saw but let-us-hasten to friends our lest
nos inimici repente deprehendant incautos!' Erant autem
us the-enemies suddenly catch unwary they-were moreover
non longe a parva Saxonum legione; quos cum illi suos
not far from a-small of-Saxons troop whom when they their-own

putarent et iam se paene captos agnoscerent: 'Pergite',
thought and now themselves almost captured recognized go-on
dixit ille, 'quo vultis; ego meis adiungar amicis!'
said he whither you-wish I to-my-own shall-be-joined friends
Willehalmus, Geronis comitis filius, cum temere paucis se
William of-Gero the-count son when rashly with-few himself
comitantibus iret, ab Everhardo, qui de magnitudine
accompanying he-was-going by Everhard who from the-size
barbae agnomen habebat, ex improviso capitur, et
of-(his)-beard a-surname had out-of the-unforeseen is-captured and
Heinrico domino suo magna pars triumphi praesentandus a
to-Henry lord his a-great part of-the-triumph to-be-presented by
militibus suis ducitur; ipse vero non longe, quasi ne ab
soldiers his is-led he-himself but not far as-if lest by
aliquibus eripiatur prospiciens insequitur. Et ecce copiae
some he-be-snatched-away watching follows and behold the-forces
Saxonum maiores illi de latere veniunt, et eum non
of-the-Saxons greater to-that-man from the-side come and him not
multum repugnantem citius occidunt. Quod videntes illi
much resisting quite-quickly they-kill which seeing those
qui Willehalmum ducebant, eius obliti, ad suum dominum
who William were-leading of-him forgetful to their lord
festinabant. Ille vero, sui non oblitus, quanta potuit
hastened he but of-himself not forgetful with-what-great he-could
velocitate ad suos est reversus.
speed to his-own has returned
Interea dux Otto et Fridericus palatii praefectus de
meanwhile duke Otto and Frederick of-the-palace prefect of
Symersenburch, diversis in partibus acriter pugnantes non ante
Sommerschenburg different in parts fiercely fighting not before
cessaverunt, quam Heinricum cum omnibus suis ad fugam
ceased than Henry with all his to flight

coegerunt, eosque fugientes tam diu sunt insecuti, donec
they-compelled and-them fleeing so long they-have pursued until
eos muro Wirceburgensi videbant includi. Sed Fridericus
them by-the-wall of-Würzburg they-saw to-be-shut-in but Frederick
nesciens, quid Otto dux egisset, ad locum proelii
not-knowing what Otto the-duke had-done to the-place of-the-battle
tripudians revertitur; quia ille qui fugatis hostibus locum
dancing returns because he who routed the-enemy the-place
caedis obtinuerit, victor habetur. Otto vero dux non longe
of-slaughter shall-have-held victor is-held Otto but the-duke not long
post eodem reversus, visa tanta multitudine putabat eos
after to-the-same-place returned seen so-great a-multitude thought them
hostes esse, et quia valde fessus erat, non credebat utile
enemies to-be and because very weary he-was not he-believed useful
cum eis pugnam incipere. Misit tamen exploratorem, qui
with them a-fight to-begin he-sent nevertheless a-scout who
sibi perquireret veritatem. Qui cum ibi moram faceret,
for-him should-search-out the-truth who when there delay he-made
reputans ille quod ab hoste captus vel occisus esset, quia
reckoning he that by the-enemy captured or killed he-had-been because
nullum de sociis quem cognosceret invenit, victor quidem,
none of the-comrades whom he-might-recognize he-found victor indeed
sed non laetus, quia nesciebat, ad patriam revertitur.
but not glad because he-knew-not to the-homeland returns
Fridericus autem, collectis ad se de diversis partibus a
Frederick moreover gathered to himself from different parts from
proelio revertentibus, noctem illam in multa laetitia et maxime
the-battle those-returning night that in much joy and most
in divina laude transegit. In crastino vero receptis omnibus
in divine praise spent on the-morrow but recovered all-things
quae vel socii vel hostes ibi reliquerant, meliora quae
which either comrades or enemies there had-left the-better which

poterant asportare, secum tulerunt; cetera vero, ne prodessent
they-could to-carry-off with-them they-took the-rest but lest they-should-profit
hostibus igni dederunt. Inde vero cum magno gaudio cantuque
the-enemy to-fire they-gave thence but with great joy and-song
redeuntes, Smelekallan et ceteros in circuitu vicos aut
returning Schmalkalden and the-other in the-circuit hamlets or
villas praedationibus et incendiis vastaverunt, quia incolae
villages with-plunderings and burnings they-laid-waste because the-inhabitants
illi pridie nostros fugientes spoliaverant vel occiderant.
those the-day-before ours fleeing had-despoiled or had-killed
Sigifridum quoque Mogontinum praesulem, quem captum cum
Siegfried also of-Mainz the-prelate whom captured with
multis aliis adhuc servabant, violenter eripiunt, secumque
many others still they-were-keeping violently they-rescue and-with-them
gaudentes et hymnos Deo canentes ad Saxoniam reducunt.
rejoicing and hymns to-God singing to Saxony lead-back
Postquam vero diversis ex partibus omnes nostri convenerunt,
after but different from parts all ours had-assembled
et quid fortiter egissent vel quanta pericula qualiter
and what bravely they-had-done or how-great dangers how
evasissent, invicem singuli retulerunt, non sine multo fletu
they-had-escaped to-each-other individually they-related not without much weeping
multas laudes unanimiter Deo reddiderunt, cum pro victis et
many praises unanimously to-God they-rendered both for conquered and
fugatis hostibus, tum etiam pro liberatis tantis sacerdotibus.
routed the-enemy and also for having-been-freed such-great priests
Ex nostris itaque partibus praeter episcopum Magedaburgensem,
on our and-so side besides the-bishop of-Magdeburg
qui cecidit in fuga, nemo qui dignus sit nomine periit in
who fell in the-flight no-one who worthy is of-name perished in
illa pugna; ex hostili vero parte iacuerunt ibi de principibus
that fight on the-hostile but side lay there of the-princes

nobilissimis Everhardus Barbatus, qui huius belli erat
most-noble Everhard the-Bearded who of-this war was
incentor saevissimus, Poppo simul et Thiebaldus, Heinricus
the-instigator most-savage Poppo together and Theobald Henry
de Lechesmundi. Factum est ergo hoc proelium secundum
of Lechsgemünd done was therefore this battle second
anno Domini 1078, 7. Idus Augusti, feria 3.
in-the-year of-the-Lord 1078 on-the-seventh Ides of-August on-the-day third
Heinricus vero in Octobri proximo Reginesburg veniens,
Henry but in October next to-Regensburg coming
principibus collectis narravit, quod iam longo labori
the-princes having-been-gathered related that now to-the-long labor
finem fecisset nichilque sibi faciendum restaret, nisi ut
an-end he-had-made and-nothing for-him to-be-done remained except that
illos qui secum participes erant laboris, consortes etiam
those who with-him sharers were of-the-labor partners also
faceret dignae retributionis. Dixit namque Saxones in
he-should-make of-worthy reward he-said for the-Saxons in
proximi proelii conflictu sic esse prostratos, ut nisi de
of-the-last battle the-clash so to-be laid-low that unless from
gentibus exteris agrorum cultores advenirent, Saxonica tellus
peoples foreign of-fields cultivators should-arrive the-Saxon land
in solitudinem versa bestiis silvestribus habitanda remaneret.
into a-wilderness turned by-beasts wild to-be-inhabited would-remain
Igitur ut illam terram cunctis frugum generibus opulentam
therefore that that land with-all of-crops kinds rich
secum vellent intrare rogavit, ipsisque quod nullum
with-him they-would-wish to-enter he-asked and-to-them-themselves that none
qui eis intrantibus obstaret invenirent, fideliter spopondit.
who them entering might-oppose they-would-find faithfully he-pledged
Quod ut illis fieret credibile, simulatos nuntios fecit
which that to-them it-might-become credible feigned messengers he-caused

procedere cum verbis compositis, qui cunctis audientibus
to-come-forward with words composed who to-all hearing
regi, sicut erant docti, dicebant ex persona ducis
to-the-king as they-had-been taught said in the-character of-duke
Ottonis et Herimanni comitis, se solos ex liberis
Otto and of-Hermann the-count themselves alone of free
hominibus, omnibus aliis in novissimo proelio interfectis,
men all others in the-latest battle killed
beneficio fugae in Saxonia relictos, nunc nimis sero poenitere,
by-the-benefit of-flight in Saxony left now too late to-repent
quod unquam multitudine suorum confisi praesumpsissent
that ever on-the-multitude of-their-men relying they-had-presumed
regiae potestati resistere; se regis adventum, quo
the-royal power to-resist themselves of-the-king coming by-which
terrae daret cultores, humiliter expectare; se
to-the-land he-might-give cultivators humbly to-await themselves
sibi non honorem, non libertatem, sed solam vitam,
for-themselves not honor not liberty but only life
quamvis vel hac essent indigni, postulare. Quibus verbis, sicut
although even of-this they-were unworthy to-ask which words as
ipse callidus dictaverat, peroratis, illi qui haec
he-himself the-crafty-one had-dictated having-been-spoken-through those who these-things
credula nimis aure perceperant, inani spe iam totam
with-credulous too ear had-heard by-empty hope already all
Saxoniam possidebant, et quasi iam possidentes, inani
Saxony possessed and as-if already possessing by-empty
spe decepti, animo tumescebant. Tota igitur festinatione,
hope deceived in-mind swelled with-all therefore haste
quo spes eos trahebat, sequi properabant; nec exercitum
whither hope them drew to-follow they-hurried nor the-army
valde magnum esse volebant, ne singuli eo minus illius
very great to-be they-wished lest individuals by-that less of-that

regionis acciperent, quo plures illam divisuri fuissent;
region should-receive by-which more-men it about-to-divide would-have-been
quia natura fert, ut tanto fiat partium minor quantitas,
because nature brings that by-so-much becomes of-parts lesser the-quantity
quanto fuerit earundem partium numerosior pluralitas.
by-as-much may-have-been of-the-same parts more-numerous the-plurality
Venientes ergo ad silvam quae Thuringos separat a
coming therefore to the-forest which the-Thuringians separates from
Francia, audiebant, quod et verum erat, quia Saxones ex
Francia they-heard what also true was that the-Saxons on
altera parte silvae cum tanta multitudine sederent, quantam
the-other side of-the-forest with so-great a-multitude were-sitting as-great-as
prius numquam sint auditi collegisse. Nam de militibus
before never had-they been-heard to-have-gathered for of soldiers
armatis milia fere sexaginta habebant, qui vel fortiter mori
armed thousands nearly sixty they-had who either bravely to-die
vel terram suam tueri volebant. Quod auditum cum primo
or land their to-protect wished which heard though at-first
non crederent, postquam missis exploratoribus nimis verum
not they-believed after sent scouts too true
esse cognoscebant, multo magis redire timore cogente, quam
to-be they-learned much more to-return fear compelling than
venire spe trahente properabant. Sed Heinricus exrex, ne
to-come hope drawing they-hastened but Henry the-ex-king lest
tantum frustra congregasset exercitum, cum eodem agmine
so-great in-vain he-had-gathered an-army with the-same column
Suevos petiit; ubi nec ecclesiis nec atriis ecclesiarum
the-Swabians sought where neither churches nor the-courtyards of-churches
pepercit, et inter sacras profanasque res nullam differentiam
he-spared and between sacred and-profane things no difference
fecit, ut illorum avaritiam insaturabilem saturaret, quos
he-made that their avarice insatiable he-might-sate whom

Saxoniam pollicendo fefellerat. Ibi, quod anticipando iam
Saxony by-promising he-had-deceived there as by-anticipating already
narravi, Treverensis archipraesul Udo subitanea morte
I-have-related of-Trier the-archbishop Udo by-sudden death
miserabiliter obiit, dum timore Dei postposito, manibus
wretchedly died while the-fear of-God put-aside to-hands
profanis in sacras res licenter ire permisit.
profane against sacred things licentiously to-go he-permitted

GREGORY'S LETTERS OF 1079

Bruno complains that the pope has changed his mind and now writes that both kings should be heard at a council and the one justice favors confirmed, and he copies the letters. Gregory tells his two legates, both named Bernard, to have both kings open the way for him to come, to cut off from communion whichever king refuses to obey, and to confirm the other. He writes to the German faithful in the same terms, declaring that he has promised neither king any help against justice.

Interea domnus apostolicus, apostolici vigoris oblitus,
meanwhile lord apostolic of-apostolic vigor forgetful
qua causa nescimus, multum est a priore sententia
for-what cause we-know-not much was from the-former sentence
mutatus. Nam qui prius Heinricum cum omnibus suis
changed for he-who before Henry with all his
adiutoribus apostolica severitate excommunicaverat, eique
helpers with-apostolic severity had-excommunicated and-to-him
regnandi potestatem potenter interdixerat, et omnes qui
of-reigning the-power powerfully had-forbidden and all who
ei fidelitatem iurassent, a iuramenti nodis apostolica
to-him fealty had-sworn from of-the-oath the-knots by-apostolic
auctoritate absolverat, et electionem novi regis consensu
authority had-absolved and the-election of-a-new king with-consent

suo confirmaverat, nunc per litteras mandavit, ut concilio
his had-confirmed now by letter sent-word that a-council
facto rex uterque convocatus audiatur, et quem iustitia
held king each summoned be-heard and whom justice
regnare permiserit, altero deposito tutus in regno
to-reign shall-have-permitted the-other deposed safe in the-kingship
confirmetur. Quarum litterarum, ut planius quod dico
be-confirmed of-which letter that more-plainly what I-say
possit intelligi, subtus exemplum ponere curavi; quae
it-can to-be-understood below the-copy to-place I-have-taken-care which
venerunt mense Februario anno Domini 1079.
came in-the-month of-February in-the-year of-the-Lord 1079
Gregorius episcopus servus servorum Dei, carissimis in
Gregory bishop servant of-the-servants of-God to-dearest in
Christo filiis Bernhardo diacono, et Bernhardo abbati, salutem
Christ sons Bernard deacon and Bernard abbot greeting
et apostolicam benedictionem. Fraternitati vestrae notum
and apostolic blessing to-fraternity your known
esse non ambigimus, quia ideo ab Urbe, confisi de
to-be not we-doubt that for-this-reason from the-City trusting in
misericordia Dei et adiutorio beati Petri, egressi sumus, ut
the-mercy of-God and the-help of-blessed Peter gone-out we-have that
ad Teutonicorum partes, composituri inter eos ad honorem
to of-the-Teutons the-parts about-to-compose between them for the-honor
Dei et utilitatem sanctae ecclesiae pacem, transiremus. Sed
of-God and the-benefit of-holy church peace we-might-cross but
quia defuerunt, qui nos secundum quod dispositum
because there-were-lacking those-who us according-to what arranged
erat conducerent, impediti adventu regis in Italiam, in
had-been should-escort hindered by-the-coming of-the-king into Italy in
Longobardia inter inimicos christianae religionis non sine
Lombardy among the-enemies of-the-Christian religion not without

magno periculo remansimus, et adhuc, sicut desideravimus,
great danger we-have-remained and still as we-desired
ultra montes proficisci nequivimus. Quocirca monemus
beyond the-mountains to-set-out we-have-been-unable wherefore we-admonish
vos, et ex parte beati Petri praecipimus, ut fulti
you and from the-side of-blessed Peter we-command that supported
auctoritate huius nostri praecepti, nostraque vice ab eodem
by-the-authority of-this our precept and-in-our stead by the-same
apostolorum principe accincti, utrumque regem, Heinricum
of-the-apostles prince girded each king Henry
videlicet atque Rodulfum, commoneatis, quatenus nobis viam
namely and Rudolf you-admonish that for-us the-way
illic secure transeundi aperiant, et adiutorium atque ducatum
there safely of-crossing they-open and help and escort
per tales personas, de quibus vos bene confidatis, praebeant,
through such persons in whom you well trust they-provide
ut iter nobis Christo protegente pateat. Desideramus
that the-journey to-us Christ protecting may-lie-open we-desire
enim cum consilio clericorum atque laicorum eiusdem regni
for with the-counsel of-clerics and laymen of-the-same kingdom
qui Deum timent et diligunt, causam inter eos Deo favente
who God fear and love the-cause between them God favoring
discutere, et cuius parti magis ad regni gubernacula
to-examine and whose to-the-party more for of-the-kingdom the-helm
iustitia faveat, demonstrare. Scitis enim, quia nostri officii et
justice favors to-show you-know for that of-our office and
apostolicae sedis est providentiae, maiora negotia ecclesiarum
of-the-apostolic see it-is of-the-providence the-greater affairs of-the-churches
discutere, et dictante iustitia diffinire. Hoc autem quod
to-examine and dictating justice to-define this moreover which
inter eos agitur negotium, tantae dignitatis est tantique
between them is-carried-on business of-so-great dignity is and-of-so-great

periculi, ut si a nobis aliqua fuerit occasione
danger that if by us on-some it-shall-have-been occasion
neglectum, non solum illis et nobis, sed etiam universali
neglected not only for-them and for-us but even for-the-universal
ecclesiae magnum et lamentabile pariat detrimentum.
church great and lamentable it-may-bring-forth harm
Quapropter si alteruter praedictorum regum huic nostrae
wherefore if either-one of-the-aforesaid kings to-this our
voluntati ac deliberationi parere et ad vestra monita locum
will and deliberation to-obey and to your admonitions place
dare rennuerit, suamque superbiam atque cupiditatis faces
to-give shall-have-refused and-his pride and of-greed the-torches
contra honorem Dei omnipotentis accendens, ad desolationem
against the-honor of-God almighty kindling to the-desolation
totius Romani imperii anhelare temptaverit, omnibus modis
of-the-whole Roman empire to-pant shall-have-tried by-all ways
omnique ingenio usque ad mortem, si oportet, nostra
and-every device all-the-way to death if it-behooves in-our
vice resistite, immo beati Petri auctoritate ei totius
stead resist nay of-blessed Peter by-the-authority to-him of-the-whole
regni gubernacula contradicendo, tam illum quam omnes
kingdom the-helm by-gainsaying both him and all
sibi consentientes a communione corporis et sanguinis
to-him consenting from the-communion of-the-body and blood
domini nostri Iesu Christi, et a liminibus sanctae ecclesiae
of-the-Lord our Jesus Christ and from the-thresholds of-holy church
separate, illud semper habentes in memoria, quia scelus
separate that always having in memory that the-crime
idolatriae incurrit qui apostolicae sedi obedire contempnit,
of-idolatry incurs he-who to-the-apostolic see to-obey scorns
et quod beatus Gregorius, doctor sanctus et humillimus,
and that blessed Gregory doctor holy and most-humble

decrevit, reges a suis dignitatibus cadere, si temerario
decreed kings from their dignities to-fall if with-rash
ausu praesumerent contra sedis apostolicae iussa venire.
daring they-should-presume against of-the-see apostolic the-commands to-come
Alteri vero, qui nostrae iussioni humiliter paruerit et
to-the-other but who to-our command humbly shall-have-obeyed and
obedientiam universali matri, sicut decet christianum regem,
obedience to-the-universal mother as befits a-Christian king
exhibuerit, convocato concilio omnium clericorum et
shall-have-shown having-been-convoked a-council of-all clerics and
laicorum quos advocare poteritis, consilium et adiutorium
laymen whom to-summon you-will-be-able counsel and help
in omnibus praebete, et in regia dignitate per auctoritatem
in all-things offer and in royal dignity through the-authority
beatorum apostolorum Petri et Pauli nostra vice confirmate,
of-the-blessed apostles Peter and Paul in-our stead confirm(-him)
omnibusque episcopis, abbatibus, clericis ac laicis in toto
and-to-all bishops abbots clerics and laymen in the-whole
regno habitantibus, ut ei fideliter, sicut regi oportet,
kingdom dwelling that him faithfully as for-a-king it-is-fitting
obediant, ex parte omnipotentis Dei praecipite.
they-should-obey from the-side of-almighty God command
Gregorius episcopus servus servorum Dei, dilectis in Christo
Gregory bishop servant of-the-servants of-God to-beloved in Christ
fratribus archiepiscopis, episcopis, ducibus, comitibus, et
brothers archbishops bishops dukes counts and
universis Christi fidelibus, clericis et laicis, tam maioribus
all of-Christ the-faithful clerics and laymen both greater
quam minoribus in regno Teutonicorum consistentibus,
and lesser in the-kingdom of-the-Teutons abiding
salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Notum fieri vobis
greeting and apostolic blessing known to-be-made to-you

volumus, fratres carissimi, quia legatis nostris, Bernhardo
we-wish brothers dearest that to-the-envoys our Bernard
videlicet sanctae Romanae ecclesiae fideli filio et diacono,
namely of-the-holy Roman church faithful son and deacon
itemque Bernhardo abbati Massiliensis monasterii religioso
and-likewise Bernard abbot of-the-Marseilles monastery a-religious
praecepimus, ut utrumque regem, Heinricum videlicet et
we-have-commanded that each king Henry namely and
Rodulfum, aut per se aut per idoneos nuntios
Rudolf either through themselves or through suitable messengers
admoneant, quatenus viam michi pro discutiendo negotio, quod
they-admonish that a-way to-me for examining the-business which
peccatis facientibus inter eos ortum est, ad vos Deo favente
with-sins causing(-it) between them arisen has to you God favoring
secure veniendi praebeant. In magna enim tristitia et dolore
safely of-coming they-provide in great for sadness and grief
cor nostrum fluctuat, si per unius hominis superbiam tot
heart our wavers if through of-one man the-pride so-many
milia hominum christianorum temporali et aeternae morti
thousands of-men Christian to-temporal and eternal death
traduntur, et christiana religio confunditur, et Romanum
are-handed-over and the-Christian religion is-confounded and the-Roman
imperium ad perditionem perducitur. Uterque namque rex
empire to perdition is-led each for king
a nobis, immo ab apostolica sede, cui licet indigni
from us nay from the-apostolic see over-which though unworthy
praesidemus, adiutorium requirit, et nos de misericordia
we-preside help seeks and we in the-mercy
omnipotentis Dei et adiutorio beati Petri confidentes, parati
of-almighty God and the-help of-blessed Peter trusting ready
sumus cum vestro consilio, qui Deum timetis et christianam
are with your counsel who God fear and the-Christian

fidem diligitis, aequitatem causae utrimque decernere, et
faith love the-equity of-the-cause on-both-sides to-decide and
ei praebere auxilium, cui iustitia ad regni gubernacula
to-him to-offer help whom justice for of-the-kingdom the-helm
favere dinoscitur. Quapropter si alteruter eorum superbia
to-favor is-discerned wherefore if either-one of-them by-pride
inflatus, aliquo ingenio, quominus ad vos venire possimus,
puffed-up by-any device so-that-not to you to-come we-may-be-able
obstiterit, et de sua iniustitia timens iudicium sancti
shall-have-hindered and for his injustice fearing the-judgment of-the-holy
Spiritus refugerit inobediens factus, resistendo sanctae et
Spirit shall-have-fled disobedient made by-resisting the-holy and
universali matri ecclesiae, hunc velut membrum Antichristi et
universal mother church him as a-limb of-Antichrist and
desolatorem christianae religionis contempnite, et sententiam
a-desolator of-the-Christian religion despise and the-sentence
quam nostri legati contra eum nostra vice dederint
which our envoys against him in-our stead shall-have-given
conservate, scientes, quia Deus superbis resistit, humilibus
keep knowing that God the-proud resists to-the-humble
autem dat gratiam. Alteri vero qui se humiliter habuerit,
moreover gives grace to-the-other but who himself humbly shall-have-borne
et iudicium, decretum vero a Spiritu sancto, per vos autem
and the-judgment decreed indeed by the-Spirit holy through you moreover
prolatum, non contempserit, — indubitanter enim credimus,
pronounced not shall-have-despised undoubtedly for we-believe
ubicunque duo vel tres in nomine Domini congregati
wherever two or three in the-name of-the-Lord gathered
fuerint, quod praesentia eius illuminantur — illi inquam
shall-have-been that by-the-presence his they-are-illumined to-him I-say
servitium et reverentiam secundum quod nostri praefati
service and reverence according-to what our aforesaid

legati decreverint exhibete, adnitentes et modis omnibus
envoys shall-have-decreed show striving and in-ways all
ei obsequentes, ut regiam dignitatem honeste possit
him complying-with that the-royal dignity honorably be-may-be-able
obtinere et sanctae ecclesiae iam paene labenti succurrere.
to-obtain and holy church now almost falling to-succor
Non enim a corde vestro debet excidere, quod qui
not for from heart your ought to-fall-out that he-who
apostolicae sedi obedire contempnit, scelus idolatriae incurrit,
to-the-apostolic see to-obey scorns the-crime of-idolatry incurs
et quod beatus Gregorius, doctor sanctus et humillimus,
and that blessed Gregory doctor holy and most-humble
reges decrevit a suis dignitatibus cadere et participatione
kings decreed from their dignities to-fall and of-the-participation
corporis et sanguinis domini nostri Iesu Christi carere, si
of-the-body and blood of-the-Lord our Jesus Christ to-be-deprived if
praesumerent apostolicae sedis decreta contempnere. Si enim
they-should-presume of-the-apostolic see the-decrees to-scorn if for
coelestia et spiritualia sedes beati Petri solvit et iudicat,
heavenly and spiritual-things the-see of-blessed Peter looses and judges
quanto magis terrena et saecularia? Scitis autem, fratres
how-much more earthly and secular-things you-know moreover brothers
carissimi, quia ex quo tempore ab Urbe exivimus, in
dearest that from which time from the-City we-went-out in
magno periculo inter inimicos christianae fidei mansimus,
great danger among the-enemies of-the-Christian faith we-have-remained
et tamen neutro praedictorum regum, neque terrore neque
and yet to-neither of-the-aforesaid kings neither by-terror nor
amore flexi, aliquod contra iustitiam adiutorium promisimus.
by-love bent any against justice help we-have-promised
Magis enim volumus mortem, si oportet, subire, quam
more for we-wish death if it-behooves to-undergo than

propria voluntate devicti, ut ecclesia Dei ad confusionem
by-our-own will overcome that the-church of-God to confusion
veniat consentire. Ad hoc enim nos ordinatos et in
should-come to-consent to this for us ordained and in
apostolica sede constitutos esse cognoscimus, ut in hac vita
the-apostolic see established to-be we-know that in this life
non quae nostra, sed quae Iesu Christi sunt, quaeramus,
not what-things ours but what of-Jesus Christ are we-may-seek
et per multos labores patrum vestigia sequentes, ad
and through many labors of-the-fathers the-footsteps following to
futuram et aeternam quietem Deo miserante tendamus.
the-future and eternal rest God having-mercy we-may-make-our-way

THE SAXONS' FIRST COMPLAINT TO GREGORY

The Saxons are dismayed that Peter's chair wavers, and they write to rouse the pope. They remind him that he deposed Henry, not at their counsel, and that they obeyed at great cost and elected another king, while he absolved Henry without them, now names two kings, and honors Henry's excommunicated servants. Blamed for sending no envoys, though those who swore to keep the road open close it, they list the civil war the delay breeds and beg him not to falter or let his own sentence be undone.

Acceptis his litteris, Bernhardus cardinalis, quod sibi iniunctum
received this letter Bernard the-cardinal what to-him enjoined
est, exequitur. At nostrates cum ipsas litteras accepissent, a
was carries-out but ours when the-very letter they-had-received from
magna spe quam in apostolica petra posuerant, exciderunt, quia
the-great hope which on the-apostolic rock they-had-placed fell because
prius coelum stare vel terram crediderant coeli modo
sooner heaven to-stand-still or the-earth they-had-believed of-heaven in-the-manner
moveri, quam cathedram Petri amittere constantiam Petri.
to-be-moved than the-chair of-Peter to-lose the-constancy of-Peter

Has ergo litteras ei remiserunt, quibus eum ancillae,
this therefore letter to-him they-sent-back by-which him of-the-handmaid
praesentis scilicet vitae, perterritum timore, quasi voce
of-the-present namely life terrified by-fear as-if by-the-voice
galli clamantis excitare, et respectu Christi confortatum
of-the-cock crowing to-rouse and by-the-look of-Christ strengthened
ad pristinae virtutem constantiae revocare voluerunt:
to of-former the-strength constancy to-recall they-wished
Domno apostolico et venerabili papae Gregorio, beati Petri
to-lord apostolic and venerable pope Gregory of-blessed Peter
fideles et sui, tantum servitutis quantum oppressi valent.
the-faithful and his as-much of-service as oppressed they-are-able
Multas iam huic sanctae sedi pro diversis calamitatibus
many already to-this holy see for various calamities
nostris querimonias exposuimus. Quod autem nondum aliquid
our complaints we-have-set-forth that moreover not-yet anything
iustitiae vel consolationis consecuti sumus, non tam vestrae
of-justice or of-consolation obtained we-have not so-much to-your
sanctitati quam nostris peccatis imputamus. Si igitur nostro
holiness as to-our sins we-impute if therefore by-our
consilio et propria deliberatione rem, pro qua tanta
counsel and own deliberation the-matter on-account-of which such
mala nos invenerunt, aggressi fuissemus, minus moleste
evils us have-found undertaken we-had less vexatiously
ferendum esset, si ad succurrendum nobis vestra gravitas
to-be-borne it-would-be if for succoring us your gravity
se tardius erigeret. Nunc autem sarcinam illam quam sola
itself more-slowly should-raise now moreover the-burden that which alone
vestra auctoritate iubente suscepimus, eadem quoque manum
your authority commanding we-took-up the-same also a-hand
supponente levigari oportuit. Testis est excellentia vestra
putting-under to-be-lightened it-behooved witness is excellence your

et litterae vestrae, quas in testimonium habemus, quia neque
and letters your which in testimony we-have that neither
consilio nostro nec etiam pro causa nostra, sed pro illatis
by-counsel our nor even for cause our but for the-inflicted
sedi apostolicae iniuriis regem nostrum regia dignitate
on-the-see apostolic injuries king our of-royal dignity
privastis, nobisque omnibus terribili interminatione, ne ei
you-deprived and-to-us all with-terrible threat lest him
sicut regi serviamus, interdixistis, et omnes christianos
as king we-should-serve you-forbade and all Christians
a vinculo iuramenti, quod ei fecerunt vel facient,
from the-bond of-the-oath which to-him they-have-made or will-make
absolvistis, deinde eum vinculo anathematis alligastis. In
you-absolved then him with-the-bond of-anathema you-bound in
his omnibus vestrae paternitati cum magno periculo nostro,
these all-things your paternity with great danger our
sicut nunc patet, obedivimus; et quia eidem deposito
as now is-plain we-obeyed and because with-the-same deposed-one
ad depositionem vestram cum ceteris concordare noluimus,
for deposition your with the-others to-agree we-would-not
tantam in nobis crudelitatem exercuit, ut quam plures
such against us cruelty he-practiced that as very-many
ex nostris, amissa omni substantia, animam in hoc certamine
of ours lost all substance life in this contest
posuissent, et filios suos exheredes et ex divitibus pauperes
had-laid-down and sons their disinherited and from rich poor
reliquissent. Qui autem residui sunt, de vita cottidie
had-left those-who moreover the-rest are for life daily
solliciti, vitae subsidia paene omnia amiserunt. Sed cum nulla
anxious of-life the-supports almost all have-lost but since by-no
nos persecutione posset superare, superatus est ille, ut
us persecution he-could to-overcome overcome was he so-that

licet nolens suam vobis praesentiam exhiberet, et ei
although unwilling his to-you presence he-showed and to-him
quem inhonoravit, cum suo dedecore honorem impenderet.
whom he-dishonored with his disgrace honor he-paid
Pro quo labore hunc fructum recepimus, quod ille, qui
for which labor this fruit we-have-received that he who
cum periculo animarum nostrarum vestigia pedum vestrorum
with danger of-souls our the-prints of-feet your
adorare compulsus est, absque nostro consilio et sine
to-adore compelled was without our counsel and without
correctione absolutus, ad nocendum nobis libertatem recepit.
amendment absolved for harming us liberty has-recovered
Cumque illa anathematis absolutio per epistolam vestram
and-when that of-anathema absolution by letter your
nobis innotesceret, de sententia regni quae in eum
to-us was-made-known about the-sentence of-the-kingship which against him
processit nichil mutatum esse intelleximus, sed ne nunc
went-forth nothing changed to-be we-understood but not now
quidem si mutari possit, intelligimus. Absolutio enim
even if to-be-changed it-can we-understand the-absolution for
illa iuramentorum qualiter cassari possit, nullo modo
that of-the-oaths how to-be-annulled it-can in-no way
percipere valemus. Sine sacramentorum autem observatione
to-perceive we-are-able without of-the-oaths moreover observance
regiae dignitatis officium nequaquam administrari potest.
of-the-royal dignity the-office in-no-way to-be-administered can
Ergo cum iam ultra anni terminum sine rectore essemus,
therefore since now beyond of-a-year the-term without ruler we-were
in locum de quo praevaricatus est ille, alius principum
in the-place from which transgressed has he another of-princes
nostrorum electione subrogatus est. Cumque de electo
our by-the-election substituted was and-when from the-elected

nobis rege, et non de regibus, spes magna ad refocillandum
for-us king and not from kings hope great for reviving
imperium succresceret, ecce ex insperato litterae vestrae
the-empire grew behold out-of the-unhoped-for letter your
advenientes, duos in uno regno reges pronuntiant, duobus
arriving two in one kingdom kings proclaims for-two
legationem decernunt. Quam regii nominis pluralitatem et
an-embassy decrees which of-the-royal name plurality and
quodammodo regni divisionem divisio quoque populi et
in-a-way of-the-kingdom division division also of-the-people and
studia partium subsecuta sunt; quippe cum in epistolis vestris
the-zeal of-parties followed have indeed since in letters your
illius praevaricatoris personam semper praeponi cernerent, et
of-that transgressor the-person always to-be-set-first they-discerned and
ab eo sicut a potente exigi, quatenus ducatum
from him as from a-powerful-one to-be-demanded that escort
vobis in has partes ad discutiendam causam praeberet.
to-you into these parts for examining the-cause he-should-provide
Cuius discussionis qualis modus sit, ut salva gratia vestra
of-which examination what-kind the-manner be that saving favor your
dicamus, mirabile est in oculis nostris, scilicet ut is qui iam
we-may-say wonderful it-is in eyes our namely that he who already
sinodali iudicio nulla condicione interposita depositus est,
by-synodal judgment with-no condition interposed deposed has-been
alio in eandem dignitatem apostolica auctoritate firmato,
another into the-same dignity by-apostolic authority confirmed
nunc tandem ad rationem ponatur, et quod finitum est
now at-last to account should-be-put and what finished is
denuo incipiatur, et de re indubitabili quaestio moveatur.
anew should-be-begun and about a-thing undoubted a-question should-be-raised
Hoc quoque infirmitatem nostram movet, quod sicut nobis
this also infirmity our moves that as to-us

persuadetur, ut in incepto firmiter perduremus, sic etiam
it-is-urged that in the-thing-begun firmly we-should-persevere so also
contrariae parti verbis et rebus spes innuitur. Nam familiares
to-the-contrary party by-words and things hope is-intimated for the-intimates
praedicti Heinrici, qui ab omni regno infamia notantur,
of-the-aforesaid Henry who by all the-kingdom with-infamy are-branded
quique illi sicut regi serviendo synodalibus praeceptis
and-who to-him as king by-serving to-the-synodal precepts
manifeste inobedientes sunt, et una cum suo capite per
openly disobedient are and together with their head through
legatum apostolicum ab ecclesia sancta separati sunt, ad
an-envoy apostolic from the-church holy separated have-been to
hanc sedem venientes, benigne suscipiuntur, et non solum
this see coming kindly are-received and not only
inpuniti redeunt, sed insuper gloria et honore coronantur,
unpunished return but besides with-glory and honor are-crowned
et ad priorem inobedientiam superbiendo revertentes, nostrae
and to former disobedience in-pride returning at-our
miseriae insultant. Nobis autem quasi ridiculis ad insipientiam
misery jeer to-us moreover as-if laughable for folly
reputatur, quod ab illorum consortio abstinemus, qui ab ipso
it-is-reckoned that from their fellowship we-abstain who by the-very
capite nostro tam caritative in communionem recipiuntur.
head our so charitably into communion are-received
Accedit et hoc ad cumulum nostri infortunii, quod praeter
there-is-added also this to the-heap of-our misfortune that besides
illa quae nos ipsi delinquimus, etiam adversariorum
those-things which we ourselves offend also of-the-adversaries
culpa in nobis cuditur, dum nostrae negligentiae attribuitur,
the-fault upon us is-hammered while to-our negligence it-is-attributed
quod idoneos et frequentes legatos huc non mittimus.
that suitable and frequent envoys hither not we-send

Luce enim clarius patet, quod illi hoc fieri prohibent,
than-light for more-clearly it-is-plain that they this to-be-done forbid
qui ne prohiberent, iureiurando vobis promiserunt. Et
who not to-forbid by-oath to-you promised and
nunc de violenta sacri itineris interclusione et de
now about the-violent of-the-sacred journey blocking and about
manifesto illorum periurio siletur, et nobis imputatur,
the-open their perjury there-is-silence and to-us it-is-imputed
quod nuntios non mittimus. Scimus, carissime domine, et
that messengers not we-send we-know dearest lord and
ex consideratione pietatis vestrae speramus, quia haec omnia
from consideration of-piety your we-hope that these all-things
bona intentione et aliqua subtili deliberatione agitis; sed
with-good intention and some subtle deliberation you-do but
nos homines imperiti occultam illam dispensationem penetrare
we men unskilled hidden that dispensation to-penetrate
non sufficientes, quod manifeste vidimus et audivimus, de
not sufficient what openly we-have-seen and heard from
illa utriusque partis confortatione et rerum certarum incerta
that of-each party encouragement and of-things certain uncertain
dilatione ortum esse et cottidie oriri, vobis exponimus:
postponement arisen to-have and daily to-arise to-you we-set-forth
haec sunt bella intestina et plus quam civilia, homicidia
these are wars intestine and more than civil murders
innumerabilia, vastationes, incendia sine differentia domus
innumerable devastations burnings without difference of-house
et ecclesiae, oppressiones pauperum incomparabiles, rerum
and church oppressions of-the-poor incomparable of-things
ecclesiasticarum direptiones quales numquam audivimus aut
ecclesiastical plunderings such-as never we-have-heard or
vidimus, legum quoque divinarum et saecularium defectus
seen of-laws also divine and secular failures

sine spe reparationis; postremo in dimicatione duorum
without hope of-repair finally in the-contest of-two
regum, quorum uterque ad obtentum regni spem a
kings of-whom each for the-obtaining of-the-kingdom hope from
vobis accipit, tanta profligatio regalium, ut posthac
you receives so-great a-squandering of-the-royal-domains that hereafter
reges nostrarum partium rapinis potius quam regalibus
kings of-our parts by-plunderings rather than by-royal-revenues
sustentandi sint. Haec incommoda aut nulla iam essent
to-be-sustained are these troubles either none now would-be
aut minora multo, si in incepto itinere neque ad dexteram
or less by-much if on the-begun journey neither to the-right
nec ad sinistram sententia vestra divertisset. Arduum iter
nor to the-left sentence your had-turned-aside an-arduous journey
propter zelum domus Domini aggressus estis, in quo
for zeal for-the-house of-the-Lord undertaken you-have in which
progredi laboriosum est, regredi autem inhonestum. Nolite,
to-advance toilsome it-is to-go-back moreover dishonorable do-not
sanctissime pater, nolite in via deficere, et ne ulterius
most-holy father do-not on the-way to-fail and not further
differendo et utrimque cavendo tanta mala crescere et
by-postponing and on-both-sides by-being-wary such evils to-grow and
multiplicari sinatis. Si grave vobis est pro illis verba facere
to-be-multiplied you-allow if heavy for-you it-is for those words to-make
qui pro vobis vitam in magno discrimine posuerunt, ecclesiae
who for you life in great peril have-laid-down to-the-church
tamen vestris temporibus miserabiliter destructae et inaudita
yet in-your times wretchedly destroyed and by-unheard-of
oppressione in servitutem redactae succurrite. Cuius apertis
oppression into servitude reduced give-succor of-whose open
destructoribus si aperta fronte in faciem resistere propter
destroyers if with-open brow in the-face to-resist on-account-of

instantia pericula cautum non videtur, hoc saltem cavete, ne
pressing dangers safe not it-seems this at-least beware lest
hoc quod iam fecistis, irritum fieri permittatis. Nam si
this which already you-have-done void to-become you-allow for if
hoc quod in synodo Romana diffinitum et post a legato
this which in the-synod Roman defined and afterward by the-envoy
sedis apostolicae confirmatum est, silentio contegi et pro
of-the-see apostolic confirmed was with-silence to-be-covered and for
nichilo haberi oportet, quid posthac nobis credendum vel
nothing to-be-held it-behooves what hereafter by-us to-be-believed or
pro rato habendum sit, omnino ignoramus. Hoc sanctitati
for ratified to-be-held is altogether we-know-not this to-holiness
vestrae nequaquam arroganter, sed in amaritudine animae
your by-no-means arrogantly but in the-bitterness of-soul
nostrae locuti sumus, quia non est dolor similis sicut dolor
our spoken we-have because not there-is grief like as grief
noster. Cum enim per obedientiam pastoris luporum
our since for through obedience to-the-shepherd of-wolves
faucibus expositi simus, si etiam ab ipso pastore nobis
to-the-jaws exposed we-are if even from the-very shepherd by-us
cavendum est, miserabiliores sumus omnibus hominibus.
to-be-guarded-against it-is more-wretched we-are than-all men
Deus autem omnipotens in talem zelum vos contra inimicos
God moreover almighty into such zeal you against the-enemies
Christi erigat, quatenus illa quam in vobis posuimus spes
of-Christ may-raise that that which in you we-have-placed hope
nos non confundat.
us not may-confound

Getting no answer they want, the Saxons write again: the road to Rome is closed, the pope disbelieves their bishops' report of Bernard's sentence, God has given Rudolf victory, and Rupert of Bamberg is behind it all; let him confirm his legate's work and bar the excommunicated dead from church burial. A third letter, for the Roman synod, which doubts whether to excommunicate Henry, shows he already is: he broke his oaths, defied Bernard's renewed ban, seized bishoprics, let churches be plundered, and blocked pilgrims, and it asks that his partisans be refused communion until they make amends.

Ad quas litteras cum nullum pro velle suo responsum
to which letter when no according-to will their answer
accepissent, has ei litteras iterum miserunt, ut quia non
they-had-received this to-him letter again they-sent that because not
primo quasi galli cantu, sicut secundum Marcum nec
at-the-first as-if of-the-cock crowing as according-to Mark not-even
Petrus est excitatus, saltem cum secundo, quasi gallus,
Peter was roused at-least when at-the-second as-if a-cock
populus ecclesiae vocem daret, a torpore dubitationis ad
the-people of-the-church voice should-give from the-torpor of-doubt to
constantiam Petri cum Petro suscitatus exurgeret:
the-constancy of-Peter with Peter roused he-might-rise
Domno vere apostolico Gregorio, beati Petri fideles et
to-lord truly apostolic Gregory of-blessed Peter the-faithful and
sui, devotum pro viribus obsequium. Novit sanctitas
his devoted according-to strength service knows holiness
vestra et omnibus circumquaque notum est, quam difficulter
your and to-all round-about known it-is how with-difficulty
quantoque baiulorum discrimine legationes ad vos
and-with-how-great of-the-carriers peril embassies to you
transmittimus, quia iter quod omnibus temporibus omnibus
we-send-across because the-road which in-all times for-all

populis, tribubus et linguis apertum fuit et pervium, nunc
peoples tribes and tongues open was and passable now
clauditur et prohibetur, et illis maxime qui non minimum
is-closed and is-forbidden and to-those most who not least
pro honore illius laboraverunt, ad cuius corpus eadem via
for the-honor of-him labored to whose body the-same road
ducit. Vestro vero honori et nostrae necessitati congrueret,
leads to-your but honor and to-our necessity it-would-be-fitting
ut quod cum tanta difficultate perpetramus, aliquid nobis
that what with so-much difficulty we-accomplish something to-us
inde utilitatis, aliquid in tribulatione consolationis proveniret.
thence of-usefulness something in tribulation of-consolation should-come
Sed quicquid quaestionis, quicquid querimoniae ad sedem,
but whatever of-question whatever of-complaint to the-see
quae semper iudicii et iustitiae magistra fuit, dirigimus,
which always of-judgment and of-justice mistress has-been we-direct
nichil diffinitae responsionis recipimus, sed omnia in futurum
nothing of-definite answer we-receive but all-things into the-future
incerta suspenduntur. Nam inter alia multa hoc quoque
uncertain are-suspended for among other many-things this also
sanctitati vestrae nuper indicavimus, qualem sententiam
to-holiness your lately we-indicated what-kind-of sentence
domnus Bernhardus in Heinricum Deo odibilem suosque
lord Bernard against Henry to-God hateful and-his
participes protulerit, quidque de rege Rodulfo vestra iussione
partners pronounced and-what about king Rudolf by-your command
statuerit, fiduciam habentes, si hoc ad notitiam vestram
he-established confidence having if this to knowledge your
proveniret, omnem causam nostram in hoc procedere et
should-come all cause our in this to-advance and
prosperari. Sed post longam expectationem nostram tandem
to-prosper but after long waiting our at-last

reverso nuntio, nichil aliud nobis consolationis relatum
returned the-messenger nothing else to-us of-consolation reported
est, nisi quod diceretis, his quae mandavimus vos
was except that you-said to-these-things which we-sent-word you
fidem non habuisse. Et quare, carissime domine, incredibile
faith not to-have-had and why dearest lord incredible
vobis visum est, quod fratres nostri et coepiscopi, scilicet
to-you seemed it-has that brothers our and fellow-bishops namely
domnus Wirceburgensis, Pataviensis et alii viri religiosi
lord of-Würzburg of-Passau and other men religious
vobis in veritate nuntiaverunt, quodque se vidisse et
to-you in truth announced and-what themselves to-have-seen and
audisse testati sunt? Certe, domine, non in verbis mendacii
to-have-heard testified have certainly lord not in words of-lying
confidimus liberari, sed magis credimus quia veritas liberabit
we-trust to-be-freed but rather we-believe that the-truth will-free
nos. Deus qui est veritas, qui solus laborem et dolorem
us God who is truth who alone labor and grief
considerat, non deseruit sperantes in se, sed visitavit nos
considers not has-deserted those-hoping in him but has-visited us
in misericordia et miserationibus. Nam rex noster Rodulfus
in mercy and compassions for king our Rudolf
fortis in eo qui dat salutem regibus, de inimicis Domini
strong in him who gives salvation to-kings over the-enemies of-the-Lord
potenter triumphavit, Heinricus autem solito more
mightily triumphed Henry moreover in-the-accustomed manner
cum suis complicibus, praeter eos qui in gladio ceciderunt,
with his accomplices except those who by the-sword fell
in fugam versus est, comite illo et conparticipe, cuius
into flight turned was with-companion that and fellow-partaker whose
malitiam vos in bono vincere frustra temptastis, Roperto
malice you with good to-conquer in-vain have-tried Rupert

scilicet Babenbergense, qui horum omnium auctor et incentor
namely of-Bamberg who of-these all author and instigator
est. Et o utinam de sua sociorumque eius flagitiosa fallacia
is and O would-that about his and-of-companions his shameful deceit
adhuc satis edoctus fuissetis! Nolite, carissime domine,
already enough taught you-had-been do-not dearest lord
nolite amplius ad irrisionem sancti nominis vestri huiusmodi
do-not further to the-mockery of-holy name your of-this-kind
homines mulcere, et post tam frequentes repulsas turpesque
men to-soothe and after so frequent rebuffs and-shameful
deceptiones iterum atque iterum ducatum ab eis quaerere.
deceptions again and again escort from them to-seek
Adventus vester ad nos tantum nobis esset desiderabilis,
the-coming your to us so-much to-us would-be desirable
quantum et necessarius; sed vere scimus, quia sponte
as-much-as also necessary but truly we-know that with-the-goodwill
illorum ad nostras partes numquam venietis, nisi prius
of-them to our parts never will-you-come unless first
certi sint, vos illorum parti favere, non pro iustitia sed
sure they-be you their party to-favor not for justice but
pro voluntate ipsorum. Quapropter nolite in eorum fide
for will their-own wherefore do-not in their faith
spem ponere, quorum perfidia totiens deceptus estis.
hope to-place by-whose perfidy so-often deceived you-have-been
Ecce videtis, quomodo multiplicata sunt mala in terra,
behold you-see how multiplied have-been evils in the-land
mala quorum non est numerus; et certamen quod a
evils of-which not there-is number and the-contest which by
vobis initum vestraque iussione susceptum est, iam non
you entered and-by-your command undertaken was now not
per vos nec per vestra decreta componitur, sed gladiorum
through you nor through your decrees is-settled but of-swords

iudicio terminandum derelinquitur. Rogamus ergo vos
to-the-judgment to-be-ended is-left we-ask therefore you
et obsecramus in Domino, ut remotis iam blandimentis
and beseech in the-Lord that removed now blandishments
et dilationibus, iustitiae zelo vos accingatis; et si
and postponements of-justice with-the-zeal yourselves you-gird and if
non propter nos, tamen propter honorem sanctae sedis
not on-account-of us yet on-account-of the-honor of-the-holy see
ecclesiae, confirmate quod operatus est eiusdem sedis legatus,
of-the-church confirm what wrought has of-the-same see the-envoy
ita ut et viva voce et litteris ubique transmissis sine
so that both by-living voice and by-letters everywhere sent-across without
ambiguitate denuntietis, quid in hac ecclesiae divisione
ambiguity you-may-declare what in this of-the-church division
tenendum sit, quid sequendum. Quod si iam dudum
to-be-held is what to-be-followed which if already long-ago
factum fuisset, certi sumus quia pars iniqua adeo iam
done had-been sure we-are that the-party wicked so-much now
vires perdidisset, ut nec vobis nec nobis amplius nocere
strength would-have-lost that neither you nor us further to-harm
praevaleret. Ne adiciat ultra sanctitas vestra de certis
it-would-prevail not may-add further holiness your from certain-things
ambigua et utrimque vergentia statuere, quae usque modo
ambiguous and to-both-sides inclining to-decree which until now
nos ita fovere visa sunt, quatenus inimicos tamen non
us so to-cherish seemed have that the-enemies yet not
exasperarent. Sed certum est, quod nullo modo ecclesiam
they-should-exasperate but certain it-is that in-no way the-church
vobis commissam de sua miseria poteritis liberare, nisi
to-you committed from its misery you-will-be-able to-free unless
inimicorum illius inimicitias velitis tolerare. Rogamus
of-the-enemies its the-enmities you-be-willing to-endure we-ask

etiam ne in hoc statuta canonica deficere patiamini, quatenus
also lest in this the-statutes canonical to-fail you-allow that
corpora excommunicatorum, qui in persequendo ecclesiam
the-bodies of-the-excommunicate who in persecuting the-church
occisi sunt, in atriis ecclesiarum sepeliri permittatis;
killed have-been in the-courtyards of-churches to-be-buried you-permit
ubi autem sepulta sunt, ibi divina officia celebrari
where moreover buried they-are there divine offices to-be-celebrated
prohibeatis. Multi ex eis in Augusta civitate sepulti
you-should-forbid many of them in Augsburg the-city buried
sunt. Eiusdem loci congregationibus litteras vestras per
are of-the-same place to-the-congregations letters your through
discurrentes peregrinos satis mittere potestis. Deus autem
running-to-and-fro pilgrims readily to-send you-can God moreover
omnipotens in his et in omnibus ita vos dirigat, ut
almighty in these-things and in all-things so you may-direct that
sicut ecclesiae sanctae praeesse, sic et prodesse valeatis.
as over-the-church holy to-preside so also to-profit you-may-be-able
Tertiam quoque direxerunt epistolam, quam iusserunt in
a-third also they-directed letter which they-ordered in
synodo Romana recitari, si domnus apostolicus vel
the-synod Roman to-be-read if-perhaps lord apostolic even
universalis ecclesiae interventu ad dignitatis apostolicae
of-the-universal church by-the-intervention to of-dignity apostolic
rigorem et stabilitatem posset excitari:
the-rigor and stability could to-be-roused
Conquerimur beato Petro eiusque vicario domno apostolico
we-complain to-blessed Peter and-to-his vicar lord apostolic
Gregorio omnique sanctae Romanae ecclesiae concilio, super
Gregory and-to-all of-the-holy Roman church council about
iniuriis et violentiis, quas a domno Heinrico passi sumus
the-injuries and violences which from lord Henry suffered we-have

et incessanter patimur, non ob aliam causam, nisi quod
and unceasingly suffer not for other cause except that
sedi apostolicae obedientes sumus. Pervenit autem ad
to-the-see apostolic obedient we-are there-has-come moreover to
nos, in sancta synodo Romana nuper habita quaesitum
us in the-holy synod Roman lately held asked
esse et dubitari a quibusdam, utrum praedictus vir ille
to-have-been and to-be-doubted by some whether the-aforesaid man that
excommunicandus sit, an non. Quapropter nos, quibus res
to-be-excommunicated is or not wherefore we to-whom the-matter
ista gravi experimento evidentius innotuit, annuntiare pro
this by-heavy experience more-evidently became-known to-announce for
nostra aestimatione dignum duximus, quantis existentibus
our estimation worthy we-have-thought for-how-great existing
causis ipse non solum excommunicandus, sed multis
causes he-himself not only to-be-excommunicated but in-many
modis iam vere sit excommunicatus. Testis est haec
ways already truly is excommunicated witness is this
sancta Romana ecclesia, pro quantis sceleribus et quam
holy Roman church for how-great crimes and with-how
inaudita praesumptione in synodo eiusdem ecclesiae vinculo
unheard-of presumption in the-synod of-the-same church with-the-bond
anathematis alligatus est, non prius tamen, sicut ex
of-anathema bound he-was not before yet as from
ipsius domni apostolici litteris didicimus, quam ipsum
of-the-very lord apostolic letters we-have-learned than him
multa sedis apostolicae monita spernentem, semper ex
many of-the-see apostolic admonitions spurning always from
correptione deteriorem factum esse probatum est. Pensetur
rebuke worse become to-have proved it-was let-it-be-weighed
ergo de illo, qui ante triennium incorrigibilis inventus
therefore about him who before three-years incorrigible found

est, si infra triennium istud sic correctus resipuerit,
was if within three-years this so corrected he-has-come-to-his-senses
ut nunc de proferenda in illum sententia dubitari
that now about to-be-pronounced against him the-sentence to-be-doubted
oporteat. Excommunicatus ergo, sicut iam diximus, quam
it-behooves excommunicated therefore as already we-have-said with-how
diuturna pertinacia ultionem apostolicam despexerit, undique
long obstinacy the-vengeance apostolic he-despised everywhere
notum est. Tandem necessitate, quae non est incognita,
known it-is at-last by-necessity which not is unknown
coactus absolutionem quaerens, prius impetrare non potuit,
compelled absolution seeking first to-obtain not he-could
quam iureiurando pollicitus est, se de omnibus sibi
than by-oath promised he-has himself for all-things to-himself
obiectis satisfacturum, prout domnus papa sibi tempus
objected about-to-make-satisfaction as lord pope for-him the-time
constitueret. Hac condicione absolutus, recessit. Cum autem
should-appoint on-this condition absolved he-withdrew when moreover
placuisset domno apostolico, missis legatis et litteris
it-had-pleased lord apostolic sent envoys and letters
exegit ab eo, ut faceret quod iureiurando promisit.
he-demanded from him that he-should-do what by-oath he-promised
Quarum litterarum latores cum appropiarent ad eum, a
of-which letter the-bearers when they-drew-near to him by
suis fautoribus capti, quidam in custodiam missi sunt
his abettors captured some into custody sent were
quoad usque pecunia redimerentur, alii vero excoriati ac
until up-to with-money they-should-be-ransomed others but flayed and
decapillati sunt. Quod cum ad nostros renuntiatum fuisset,
shorn were which when to ours reported had-been
iterum per alium nuntium legationem et litteras apostolicas
again through another messenger an-embassy and a-letter apostolic

transmiserunt; a quo ipse verba legationis audiens
they-sent from whom he-himself the-words of-the-embassy hearing
nichil respondit, litteras vero porrectas accipere recusavit.
nothing answered the-letter but held-out to-accept refused
Huius rei testes sunt multi idonei, praecipue autem sedis
of-this matter witnesses are many suitable especially moreover of-the-see
apostolicae legatus domnus Bernhardus cardinalis, qui ob
apostolic the-envoy lord Bernard cardinal who for
id negotium in illas partes transmissus erat. Qui cum
that business into those parts sent had-been who when
legationem suam in irritum procedere conspexisset, quamvis
embassy his into void to-proceed he-beheld although
certum fuisset, praedictum virum pro adiuncto inobedientiae
certain it-had-been the-aforesaid man for the-added to-disobedience
periurio prioris anathematis vinculo innodatum, de quo
perjury of-the-former anathema by-the-bond knotted from which
iam ad tempus condicionaliter absolutus fuit, tamen quod
already for a-time conditionally absolved he-was yet what
sibi ab apostolica sede iniunctum est superimposuit.
to-him by the-apostolic see enjoined was he-imposed-upon(-him)
Iussione igitur apostolica regni gubernacula denuo
by-the-command therefore apostolic of-the-kingdom the-helm anew
ei contradicendo, a corpore et sanguine domini nostri
to-him by-gainsaying from the-body and blood of-the-Lord our
Iesu Christi et a liminibus sanctae ecclesiae separavit tam
Jesus Christ and from the-thresholds of-holy church he-separated both
illum, quam omnes sibi consentientes, et virum alium in
him and all to-him consenting and a-man another in
regia dignitate confirmavit apostolica auctoritate. Quae sanctae
royal dignity he-confirmed by-apostolic authority which of-the-holy
Romanae ecclesiae edicta sicut alia multa contempnens,
Roman church edicts as other many-things scorning

regnum sibi iam secundo interdictum invadens, usque
the-kingdom to-him now a-second-time forbidden invading all-the-way
adeo demolitus est dissipando, ut iam regnum dici
so-far demolished he-has by-squandering that now kingdom to-be-called
non valeat, cui nulla paene regalia supersunt. Cum
not it-is-able to-which no almost royal-revenues are-left when
autem ad conciliandos sibi fautores regni facultates
moreover for winning to-himself abettors of-the-kingdom the-resources
sibi non sufficerent, manum in sancta sanctorum extendens,
for-him not sufficed a-hand on the-holy of-holies stretching
ecclesiarum Dei publicus invasor effectus est, non eo
of-the-churches of-God a-public invader made he-was not in-that
quidem modo, quo iam ab aliquibus tyrannis praesumptum
indeed manner in-which already by some tyrants presumed
esse cognovimus. Incomparabiles enim et sine exemplo
to-have-been we-know incomparable for and without precedent
praevaricationes istae sunt. Nam non quaelibet praedia aut
transgressions these are for not any estates or
modicas aliquas facultates ecclesiarum, sed episcopatus quam
modest some resources of-the-churches but bishoprics as
plures aufugatis episcopis sibi usurpavit, et quicquid
very-many the-put-to-flight bishops for-himself he-usurped and whatever
ad servitia vel sustentationes episcoporum pertinuit, totum
to the-services or maintenance of-the-bishops pertained all
suis suorumque usibus mancipavit. Pro qua re episcopis
to-his and-of-his-men uses he-made-over for which thing the-bishops
proclamantibus, domnus papa querimoniis eorum satisfaciens,
crying-out lord pope to-the-complaints their giving-satisfaction
pro sua pietate in synodo, quae 17. Kal.
according-to his piety in the-synod which on-the-seventeenth Kalends
Decemb. habita est, excommunicavit omnes, qui bona eorum
of-December held was excommunicated all who the-goods their

invaserunt. Quod cum praedicto viro cognitum fuisset, quem
invaded which when to-the-aforesaid man known had-been whom
eiusdem invasionis auctorem et participem esse certissime
of-the-same invasion author and partaker to-be most-certainly
constat, nec ipse propter hoc ab invasione cessavit,
it-is-agreed neither he-himself on-account-of this from invasion ceased
nec eos qui una cum ipso excommunicati sunt, a sua
nor those who together with him excommunicated were from his
communione vel ad horam repulit. Audivimus autem, quod
communion even for an-hour repelled we-have-heard moreover that
sui defensores his querimoniis tales excusationes obtendant,
his defenders to-these complaints such excuses put-forward
quod ipse de bonis ecclesiarum nulli aliquid praestiterit
that he-himself of the-goods of-the-churches to-no-one anything has-granted
neque de manu eius acceperit, vel aliquis ipso iubente
nor from the-hand his has-received or anyone he-himself ordering(-it)
invaserit. Quod nec nos illi obicimus; sed in hoc illum
has-invaded which neither we to-him object but in this him
accusamus, quod et approbare paratissimi sumus, quippe
we-accuse what also to-prove most-ready we-are namely
quod sui sua permissione bona ecclesiastica invaserunt,
that his-men by-his permission the-goods ecclesiastical invaded
quibus ipse rogantibus hoc concessit, dividens singulis
to-whom he-himself asking this granted dividing to-individuals
prout voluit; et hac mercede conducti sunt, ut iniquitati
as he-wished and with-this pay hired they-were that to-iniquity
suae vires amministrarent. Quaecunque autem de facultatibus
his strength they-might-supply whatever moreover of the-resources
episcoporum in illa distributione militibus non concessa
of-the-bishops in that distribution to-the-knights not granted
superfuerunt, his ipse tanquam propriis utitur, et tam
remained these he-himself as his-own uses and so

manifeste suis usibus deserviunt, acsi hereditario iure sibi
openly to-his uses they-serve as-if by-hereditary right to-him
provenissent. In qua accusatione si falsitatis convincimur, nos,
they-had-come in which accusation if of-falsehood we-are-convicted we
qui accusatores sumus, accusati poenam subire parati sumus.
who accusers are accused the-penalty to-undergo ready are
Iudicet ergo sancta sedes apostolica, inquirantur sanctorum
let-judge therefore the-holy see apostolic let-be-searched of-the-holy
patrum concilia, interrogentur Romanorum pontificum decreta,
fathers the-councils let-be-questioned of-the-Roman pontiffs the-decrees
utrum hi, qui ista faciunt vel consentiunt facientibus,
whether these who these-things do or consent to-those-doing
pro excommunicatis et sacrilegis habendi sint, et si vel
for excommunicate and sacrilegious to-be-held are and if either
ipsis vel ipsorum fautoribus communicandum sit. Qui
with-themselves or with-their abettors to-be-communicated is who
cum vere sciant, vera esse quae de eo loquimur, scienter
though truly they-know true to-be what about him we-say knowingly
communicant eius operibus malignis, et huc ad hoc venire
communicate with-his works malignant and hither for this to-come
solent, ut iniustitiae latebras defensionis obtendant, et
are-wont that of-injustice the-hiding-places of-defense they-may-put-forward and
tantorum scelerum patroni existant. Cumque in concilio
of-such-great crimes patrons they-may-stand-forth and-when in the-council
huius sanctae ecclesiae, quae semper ab excommunicatis
of-this holy church which always from the-excommunicate
abstinere docuit, se quasi oratores exhibent, ita patienter
to-abstain has-taught themselves as-if spokesmen they-present so patiently
audiuntur, sicut et nostri, nullo discrimine inter laesos et
they-are-heard as also ours no distinction between harmed and
laedentes habito. Hi etiam nuper in comitatu domini
harming having-been-made these also lately in the-retinue of-lord

sui in eos insurrexerunt, qui praeceptis apostolicis obediunt,
their against those rose-up who to-the-precepts apostolic are-obedient
ut ad inobedientiam constringerent; scilicet in partibus
that to disobedience they-might-constrain(-them) namely in the-parts
Sueviae, ubi incendiis ecclesiarum et altarium destructionibus
of-Swabia where with-burnings of-churches and of-altars with-destructions
sacrilegia innumerabilia commissa sunt. In qua re illos nec
sacrileges innumerable committed were in which matter them neither
accusamus nec excusamus; illud autem vere affirmamus, quod
we-accuse nor excuse this moreover truly we-affirm that
rapina illa in ecclesiis et earum atriis facta, consensu et
plunder that in churches and their courtyards done with-the-consent and
permissione tam principis quam omnium paene maiorum
permission both of-the-prince and of-all almost the-greater-men
qui aderant perpetrata est, ea quidem deliberatione, quod
who were-present perpetrated was with-that indeed deliberation that
sacrilegum illum exercitum aliter sustentari non posse
sacrilegious that army otherwise to-be-sustained not to-be-able
censuerunt. Hoc quoque novit sancta Romana ecclesia, quod
they-judged this also knows the-holy Roman church that
praefatus Heinricus domno apostolico iureiurando affirmavit,
the-aforesaid Henry to-lord apostolic by-oath affirmed
quod nullum amodo, qui ad limina apostolorum de
that no-one henceforth who to the-thresholds of-the-apostles from
quibuscunque terrarum locis tenderent, vel ipse vel aliquis
whatever of-the-earth places should-make-way either he-himself or anyone
eorum quos constringere posset prohiberet. Qualiter autem
of-those whom to-constrain he-could would-hinder how moreover
iuratam illam promissionem observaverit, nobis tacentibus
sworn that promise he-has-kept we keeping-silent
ipsa rerum indicia manifestant. Ergo praeter illam quae et
the-very of-things indications show therefore besides that which both

ab antiquis patribus et a vestra sanctitate in huiusmodi
by the-ancient fathers and by your holiness against of-this-kind
praevaricatores promulgata est sententiam, archiepiscopus
transgressors promulgated has-been the-sentence the-archbishop
Magontinus maiorum exempla secutus, adiunctis sibi
of-Mainz of-the-ancestors the-examples following having-joined to-himself
episcopis numero septem, quibus eadem iniuriae ratio fuit,
bishops in-number seven to-whom the-same of-injury the-reason was
pro defensione ecclesiae sibi commissae praedictum virum,
for the-defense of-the-church to-himself committed the-aforesaid man
qui parochianus illius est, tradidit sathanae in interitum
who parishioner his is handed-over to-Satan for the-destruction
carnis cum universis suis complicibus. Item domnus episcopus
of-the-flesh with all his accomplices likewise lord bishop
Wirceburgensis praesente et cooperante sedis apostolicae
of-Würzburg being-present and cooperating of-the-see apostolic
legato domno Bernhardo omnes illos anathematizavit, qui
the-envoy lord Bernard all those anathematized who
actu vel consilio in hoc culpabiles extiterunt, quod ille a
by-act or by-counsel in this guilty proved that he from
sua sede prohibitus est. Cuius prohibitionis auctor non
his see barred was of-which barring the-author not
incertus est; qui etiam in eiusdem sedis civitate, in qua
uncertain is who also in of-the-same see the-city in which
paene nemo non excommunicatus est, frequentissime moratur.
almost no-one not excommunicated is very-frequently stays
Ecce audivit sanctitas vestra, quam multis modis vir ille
behold has-heard holiness your in-how many ways man that
cum suis damnatus sit et vere damnandus. Rogamus
with his-own condemned is and truly to-be-condemned we-ask
ergo vos per nomen domini nostri Iesu Christi et per
therefore you by the-name of-the-Lord our Jesus Christ and by

eum cuius vicem agitis, ut si iam prolatis in
him whose office you-perform that if already to-the-pronounced against
eosdem homines sententiis aliquid superaddere necessarium
the-same men sentences anything to-add necessary
non putatis, hoc tamen firmissime prohibeatis, ne vel in
not you-think this nevertheless most-firmly you-forbid lest either in
hac sancta sede vel alicubi ad communionem recipiantur,
this holy see or anywhere into communion they-be-received
priusquam ecclesiis quas laeserunt satisfaciant, ne
before to-the-churches which they-have-harmed they-make-satisfaction lest
grex vobis commissus amplius ab eis contaminetur et ne
the-flock to-you committed further by them be-contaminated and lest
pessimum illud fermentum totam massam corrumpat.
worst that leaven the-whole lump corrupt

THE POPE'S LETTER AND THE SAXONS' REPLY

From his Lent synod Gregory orders an assembly in Germany to decide before his legates whether justice favors Henry or Rudolf; those working to wreck it are already excommunicated, and he will never knowingly favor the unjust side. The Saxons answer that their bishops are in exile, that they cannot confer with men the legate excommunicated, and that the synod judged the case three years ago. A king whose subjects are absolved of their oaths cannot reign; to reopen it undoes the pope's work and destroys them.

Tunc ab ipsa synodo in Teutonicas partes subiectam
then from the-very synod into the-Teutonic parts the-subjoined
misit epistolam: Gregorius episcopus servus servorum Dei,
he-sent letter Gregory bishop servant of-the-servants of-God
omnibus clericis et laicis in regno Teutonico constitutis,
to-all clerics and laymen in the-kingdom Teutonic established

qui excommunicationis vinculo non tenentur, salutem et
who of-excommunication by-the-bond not are-held greeting and
apostolicam benedictionem. Quae et quanta nobis cura fuerit
apostolic blessing what and how-great to-us care has-been
et est, ut pestilentia, clades et desolatio a regno vestro
and is that the-pestilence the-disaster and the-desolation from kingdom your
auferatur, pax et honestas et solitum decus vobis reddatur,
be-removed peace and honor and the-accustomed glory to-you be-restored
in synodo quae hoc anno in quadragesima Romae celebrata
in the-synod which this year in Lent at-Rome celebrated
fuit, declaravimus. Iudicio enim sancti Spiritus decrevimus
was we-declared by-the-judgment for of-the-holy Spirit we-decreed
et praecepimus, ut in regno vestro conventus omnium
and commanded that in kingdom your an-assembly of-all
episcoporum et laicorum eorum qui timent Deum et inter
the-bishops and of-the-laymen of-those who fear God and among
vos pacem desiderant, fieret, et coram nostris legatis
you peace desire should-be-held and before our envoys
decerneretur, si cui, Heinrico videlicet vel Rodulfo, qui
it-should-be-decided whether to-whom Henry namely or Rudolf who
de regni gubernaculo inter se decertant, amplius
about of-the-kingdom the-helm between themselves contend more
iustitia faveret, parsque iniustior ratione devicta et beati
justice favored and-the-party more-unjust by-reason overcome and of-blessed
Petri auctoritate constricta, facilius cederet et ab interitu
Peter by-the-authority constrained more-easily might-yield and from the-destruction
animarum et corporum Deo propitiante cessaret, iustior
of-souls and of-bodies God being-gracious might-cease the-more-just
vero pars amplius de Deo confideret, et adiuta beati Petri
but party more in God might-trust and helped of-blessed Peter
auctoritate et omnium iustitiam diligentium consensu, de
by-the-authority and of-all justice of-those-loving by-the-consent of

victoria omnino speraret et neutram mortem timeret. Sed quia
victory altogether might-hope and neither death might-fear but because
pervenit ad nos, quod inimici Dei et filii diaboli quidam
it-has-come to us that enemies of-God and sons of-the-devil some
apud vos contra interdictum apostolicae sedis praedictum
among you against the-prohibition of-the-apostolic see the-aforesaid
conventum procurent in irritum ducere, et non iustitia
assembly are-contriving into nothing to-bring and not by-justice
sed superbia ac totius regni desolatione suas cupiditates
but by-pride and of-the-whole kingdom by-the-desolation their cravings
anhelent implere et christianam religionem destruere, monemus
pant to-fulfill and the-Christian religion to-destroy we-admonish
vos et ex parte beati Petri praecipimus, ut talibus nullum
you and from the-side of-blessed Peter command that to-such no
auxilium praebeatis neque illis communicetis. In praedicta
help you-offer nor with-them communicate in the-aforesaid
enim synodo iam omnes excommunicationis et anathematis
for synod already all of-excommunication and of-anathema
sunt vinculo innodati, et ut nullam victoriam possint
have by-the-bond been-knotted and that no victory they-may-be-able
obtinere, beati Petri potestate sunt obligati; ut saltem
to-obtain of-blessed Peter by-the-power they-are bound that at-least
coacti confundantur, et a morte animarum suarum et
compelled they-may-be-confounded and from the-death of-souls their and
desolatione propriae patriae revocentur. Vos autem, fratres
the-desolation of-their-own homeland be-recalled you moreover brothers
carissimi, de me nullo modo dubitetis, quod iniustae parti
dearest about me in-no way doubt that to-the-unjust party
scienter aliquo modo faveam. Magis enim pro vestra salute
knowingly in-any way I-favor more for for your salvation
desidero mortem subire, quam totius mundi gloriam ad
I-desire death to-undergo than of-the-whole world the-glory for

vestrum interitum arripere. Quod si aliqui de falsitate confisi,
your destruction to-seize which if any on falsehood relying
litteris vel verbis aliter vobis indicaverint, nullo modo eis
by-letters or words otherwise to-you shall-have-indicated in-no way to-them
acquiescatis. Deum enim timemus et pro eius amore cottidie
acquiesce God for we-fear and for his love daily
affligimur, et ideo superbiam et oblectamenta saeculi
are-afflicted and therefore the-pride and delights of-the-world
parvipendimus, quia cito apud eum consolari indubitanter
we-make-light-of because soon with him to-be-consoled undoubtedly
credimus. Omnipotens et misericors Deus, qui ultra spem,
we-believe almighty and merciful God who beyond hope
ultra meritum miseretur et consolatur nos in tribulatione
beyond merit has-mercy and consoles us in tribulation
nostra, aperiat cor vestrum in lege sua, et in praeceptis suis
our may-open heart your in law his and in precepts his
confirmet vos, ut auctoritate beati Petri a cunctis peccatis
may-confirm you that by-the-authority of-blessed Peter from all sins
absolutos vos ad coeleste regnum perducat regnaturos.
absolved you to the-heavenly kingdom he-may-lead about-to-reign
Contra quam nostrates hanc, quam supposui, miserunt
against which ours this which I-have-placed-below sent
epistolam: Accepimus dudum sanctitatis vestrae litteras
letter we-received lately of-holiness your a-letter
hoc continentes, quod vos in synodo Romana decrevistis,
this containing that you in the-synod Roman decreed
quatenus in nostris partibus conventus omnium episcoporum
that in our parts an-assembly of-all bishops
et laicorum Deum timentium fieret ad discutiendum
and laymen God fearing should-be-held for examining
hoc, cui illorum, qui de regni gubernaculo certant,
this to-whom of-those who about of-the-kingdom the-helm contend

iustitia magis faveat. In qua re hoc primum miramur,
justice more may-favor in which matter this first we-wonder-at
quod prudentia vestra statuit, quod nullo modo posse
that prudence your has-established what in-no way to-be-able
fieri constat. Novimus enim hoc memoriae vestrae non
to-be-done is-agreed we-know for this from-memory your not
excidisse, quod tam assiduis querimoniis frequentatum est
to-have-fallen which with-so constant complaints repeated has-been
apud vos, quippe quod paene omnes episcopi qui sedi
before you namely that almost all the-bishops who to-the-see
apostolicae obediunt, de suis episcopatibus expulsi, a facie
apostolic are-obedient from their bishoprics expelled from the-face
persequentium fugiunt et latitant; et quomodo hi cum
of-the-persecutors flee and hide and how these with
suis persecutoribus convenire et conferre de his causis
their persecutors to-come-together and to-confer about these causes
possunt, pro quibus aliqui illorum occisi sunt, quidam
can for which some of-them killed have-been some
in captivitatem abducti, reliqui vero omnibus rebus suis
into captivity carried-off the-rest but of-all things their
exspoliati? Deinde quoque hoc mirandum censemus, quod
despoiled then also this to-be-wondered-at we-judge that
illius hominis causam cum illis hominibus discutere iubemur,
of-that man the-cause with those men to-examine we-are-ordered
quos utrosque legatus sanctae Romanae ecclesiae vestra
whom both the-envoy of-the-holy Roman church by-your
iussione a liminibus ecclesiae sanctae separavit. Si autem
command from the-thresholds of-the-church holy separated if moreover
nichil horum obstitisset, quid nostra interest, ut iam
none of-these had-stood-in-the-way what to-us does-it-matter that already
dudum finitam synodi Romanae sententiam retractemus et
long-ago finished of-the-synod Roman sentence we-should-retract and

denuo ad rationem ponamus? Quid ad nos, ut discutiamus,
anew to account put what to us that we-should-examine
si illi iustitia faveat ad obtinendum regnum, cui
whether to-him justice favors for obtaining the-kingdom from-whom
vos regni gubernacula iam ante triennium synodo
you of-the-kingdom the-helm already before three-years the-synod
iudicante interdixistis? Nonne magis oportuit, ut iudicium
judging have-forbidden was-it-not more fitting that the-judgment
illud discussio praecederet, quam nunc tandem subsequatur?
that the-examination should-precede than now at-last should-follow
Novimus intelligentiam vestram, quia numquam de re
we-know intelligence your that never about a-matter
indiscussa synodus vobis praesidente iudicavit. Quae ergo
unexamined a-synod you presiding has-judged what therefore
necessitas secundae discussionis? Si autem praedictus ille
the-need of-a-second examination if moreover the-aforesaid that-man
nondum discussus est, sed sicut vos dicitis adhuc discutiendus,
not-yet examined is but as you say still to-be-examined
quae ratio fuit, ut homini indiscusso regalis dignitas
what reason was-there that to-a-man unexamined the-royal dignity
ex dignitate apostolica sine ullo condicionis additamento
from the-dignity apostolic without any of-condition addition
interdiceretur? Si nondum discussus, sed adhuc discutiendus,
should-be-forbidden if not-yet examined but still to-be-examined
quare regi alteri obedire ex vestra auctoritate iussi sumus,
why to-the-king other to-obey by your authority ordered we-were
priusquam certum fuisset, istum non posse regnare? Huius
before certain it-had-been this-one not to-be-able to-reign of-this
rei testes sunt apud nos litterae vestrae; quippe quod
matter witnesses are with us letters your namely that
legatus sedis apostolicae vestra iussione anteriori illi
the-envoy of-the-see apostolic by-your command to-the-former that-one

denuo regni gubernacula interdicendo a liminibus
anew of-the-kingdom the-helm by-forbidding from the-thresholds
sanctae ecclesiae separavit tam illum quam omnes sibi
of-holy church separated both him and all to-him
consentientes; alterum vero, qui in locum illius subrogatus est
consenting the-other but who into the-place of-him substituted was
nostra electione, in regiam dignitatem apostolica auctoritate
by-our election into royal dignity by-apostolic authority
confirmavit, omnibusque in regno Teutonico consistentibus,
confirmed and-to-all in the-kingdom Teutonic abiding
ut sibi obediant, ex parte omnipotentis Dei praecepit.
that to-him they-should-obey from the-side of-almighty God commanded
Numquid haec omnia destruenda sunt et pro nichilo
surely-not these all-things to-be-destroyed are and for nothing
reputanda? Ut autem de reliquis omnibus taceamus, certe
to-be-reckoned that moreover about the-rest all we-may-keep-silent certainly
si sola illa absolutio sacramentorum, quam in synodo fecistis,
if alone that absolution of-the-oaths which in the-synod you-made
effectum habitura est, indubitanter constat quia iste rex
effect about-to-have is undoubtedly it-is-agreed that this-one king
esse non potest. Quomodo enim regnare potest, cui
to-be not can how for to-reign can-he to-whom
nullus amodo fidelitatem ex debito servat? Quomodo regere
no-one henceforth fealty out-of duty keeps how to-rule
populum potest, qui in agendis causis legalibus neminem
the-people can-he who in transacting causes legal no-one
ad faciendum iustum iudicium sacramentorum obligatione
to making just judgment of-oaths by-the-obligation
constringere potest? Si autem, quod absit, apostolica illa
to-constrain can if moreover which God-forbid apostolic that
indulgentia pro rato habenda non est, quid erit de illis
indulgence for ratified to-be-held not is what will-become of those

episcopis et aliis, qui spe praedictae absolutionis iuramenta
bishops and others who in-hope of-the-aforesaid absolution the-oaths
Heinrico praedicto facta infregerunt? Nonne manifeste
to-Henry the-aforesaid made broke are-they-not manifestly
periurii convincuntur? Si enim ille iuste regnare potest,
of-perjury convicted if for he justly to-reign can
isti iniuste fecerunt qui promissae sibi fidelitatis iugum
these unjustly have-done who of-the-promised to-him fealty the-yoke
a se proiecerunt. Adhuc aliud. Quid de illis
from themselves threw-off still another-thing what about those
sacramentis erit quae postea regi Rodulfo facta sunt, cuius
oaths will-be which afterward to-king Rudolf made were to-whose
ditioni vestra auctoritate subiugati sumus? Ecce qualis
rule by-your authority subjugated we-have-been behold what-kind
rerum perturbatio! Attendant et videant omnes qui sanum
of-things confusion let-them-attend and see all who soundly
sapiunt, si factum est huiuscemodi, si audita est
think whether done has-been of-this-kind whether heard has-been
unquam in ecclesia confusio, similis huic confusioni. Videte,
ever in the-church a-confusion like to-this confusion see
carissime domine, quia terra commota est et conturbata.
dearest lord that the-earth moved is and troubled
Si vultis sanare contritiones eius, in eo quod coepistis
if you-wish to-heal the-breaches its in that which you-have-begun
firmiter persistite, et quod aedificastis non destruite. Si enim
firmly persist and what you-have-built not destroy if for
in incepto itinere retrorsum redire et ob difficultatem
on the-begun journey backward to-return and on-account-of difficulty
diverticula quaerere vultis, non solum vulnerata non sanatis,
byways to-seek you-wish not only the-wounded not you-heal
sed quae sana sunt vulneratis. Nam si ea dissimulando
but what sound are you-wound for if those-things by-dissembling

quae vestra statuit auctoritas, nos in media tempestate,
which your has-established authority us in the-middle-of the-tempest
quam pro vobis incurrimus, derelinquitis, testis est super
which for you we-have-incurred you-abandon witness is over
nos coelum et terra, quia iniuste perditi sumus.
us heaven and earth that unjustly lost we-are

THE SAXONS REPROACH GREGORY AND THE BATTLE OF FLARCHHEIM

The Saxons write to Gregory asking why Henry's partisans go unpunished while their own faults are avenged at once. The legates take money from both sides. In January 1080 Henry invades, and several Saxons desert to him. At Flarchheim his army circles behind them, but the Saxons turn and rout it; Henry flees first, and the Wartburg garrison falls on his resting men and takes their gold, silver, and spices.

Item post aliquod temporis intervallum nostrates hanc
likewise after some of-time interval ours this
epistolam domno apostolico miserunt: Non latet
letter to-lord apostolic sent not is-hidden-from
sanctitatem vestram, quantas vobis obediendo persecutiones
holiness your how-great to-you by-obeying persecutions
passi sumus, quomodo aestimati sumus sicut oves
suffered we-have how esteemed we-have-been as sheep
occisionis, quomodo traditi sumus in fabulam et in
of-slaughter how handed-over we-have-been into a-byword and into
improperium. Si ergo talia pro vobis sustinendo nichil
reproach if therefore such-things for you by-enduring nothing
a vobis gratiae meruimus, nec digni sumus quorum
from you of-favor we-have-deserved nor worthy are-we whose
liberationi studium impendatur: quare saltem iustitia, quae
for-the-freeing zeal should-be-spent why at-least justice which

nec inimicis denegenda est, nobis denegatur? Si ergo
not-even to-enemies to-be-denied is from-us is-denied if therefore
iustum est, quod iustum esse multis vestris hortationibus
just it-is what just to-be from-many your exhortations
didicimus, scilicet ut illi sententiae vestrae quae in
we-have-learned namely that to-that sentence your which against
Heinricum processit obediamus, illi qui e contrario
Henry went-forth we-should-obey those who on-the contrary
eidem sententiae vestrae superbe repugnant, quare secundum
to-the-same sentence your proudly are-opposed why according-to
iustitiam non constringuntur? quare pro hac inobedientia
justice not they-are-constrained why for this disobedience
nullam apostolicae gravitatis censuram sentiunt? quare illis
no of-apostolic gravity censure they-feel why to-them
conceditur, quod tam ipsis quam nobis interdictum
is-it-granted what both to-them-themselves and to-us forbidden
est? aut quomodo illis licet, quod nobis illicitum factum
is or how for-them is-it-allowed what for-us unlawful made
est? Ecce ipsi sine omni contradictione vestra,
has-been behold they-themselves without any objection your
illi ad obtentum regni auxilium praebent, cui vos
to-him for the-obtaining of-the-kingdom help offer from-whom you
regni gubernacula interdixistis; illi sicut regi serviunt,
of-the-kingdom the-helm forbade him as king they-serve
quem vos usque adeo a regia dignitate deposuistis,
whom you all-the-way so-far from royal dignity deposed
ut omnes a vinculo iuramenti, quod ei fecerunt vel
that all from the-bond of-the-oath which to-him they-made or
facient, absolveretis; illi participando communicant, quem
will-make you-absolved with-him by-partaking they-communicate whom
legatus sanctae Romanae ecclesiae denuo sibi regni
the-envoy of-the-holy Roman church anew from-him of-the-kingdom

gubernacula contradicendo a liminibus sanctae ecclesiae
the-helm by-gainsaying from the-thresholds of-holy church
separavit; illi ad oppressionem nostram cum omni studio
separated they for the-oppression of-us with all zeal
vires administrant. Quicquid enim mali patimur, ab illis
strength supply whatever for of-evil we-suffer from them
patimur quos vos prohibere et debetis et potestis. Quibus
we-suffer whom you to-restrain both ought and can to-whom
dum nulla a vobis auctoritate resistitur, sine dubio
while by-no from you authority resistance-is-made without doubt
ad internecionem nostram frena laxantur. Igitur vestra illa
for the-slaughter of-us the-reins are-loosened therefore your that
famosa strennuitas, quae iuxta apostolum semper in
famous vigor which according-to the-apostle always in
promptu habuit ulcisci omnem inobedientiam, quare istam
readiness held to-avenge all disobedience why this
non ulciscitur? Quare istam dissimulat, et talem quidem
not does-it-avenge why this does-it-overlook and such indeed
inobedientiam, de qua mala inaudita oriuntur, mala quorum
disobedience from which evils unheard-of arise evils of-which
non est numerus? Si quando miserae nos oves in aliquo
not there-is number if ever wretched we sheep in anything
excessimus, confestim sine mora, sine dilatione in
went-beyond at-once without delay without postponement against
nos apostolicae austeritatis vindicta processit. Nunc autem
us of-apostolic severity the-vengeance proceeded now moreover
cum ad lupos perventum est, qui apertis morsibus in
when to wolves come it-has who with-open bites against
gregem dominicum desaeviunt, omnia cum patientia et
the-flock of-the-Lord rage all-things with patience and
longanimitate differuntur, omnia in spiritu lenitatis tolerantur.
long-suffering are-postponed all-things in the-spirit of-gentleness are-tolerated

Rogamus ergo vos per nomen domini Iesu, ut sive vos
we-ask therefore you by the-name of-the-Lord Jesus that whether you
terror viri peccatoris, cuius gloria stercus et vermis
the-terror of-the-man sinful whose glory dung and worm
est, exorbitare fecit, sive familiarium personarum mollita
is to-swerve has-made or of-familiar persons the-softened
persuasio delinivit, ut redeatis ad cor, ut memor sitis
persuasion has-charmed that you-return to heart that mindful you-be
honestatis et timoris Domini, et si non nobis propter nos
of-honor and of-the-fear of-the-Lord and if not us for ourselves
parcitis, saltem vestrae innocentiae in tanti sanginis effusione
you-spare at-least for-your innocence in so-great of-blood the-shedding
provideatis. Nam si illos amplius in nos grassari permittitis,
you-may-provide for if them further against us to-rage you-allow
quos prohibere debetis et potestis, timendum est, ne coram
whom to-restrain you-ought and can to-be-feared it-is lest before
iusto iudice de perditione nostra excusationem non habeatis.
the-just judge for the-perdition of-us excuse not you-may-have
Sic totus annus ille consumitur, ut fere nichil memorabile
thus whole year that is-spent that almost nothing memorable
fieret in nostris partibus, nisi quod apostolici legati
happened in our parts except that the-apostolic(-lord's) envoys
frequenter ad utrasque partes venerunt, et nunc nobis,
often to both sides came and now to-us
nunc hostibus nostris apostolicum favorem promittentes, ab
now to-enemies our apostolic favor promising from
utrisque pecuniam, quantam poterant more Romano
both money as-much-as they-could in-the-manner Roman
conquirere, secum detulerunt.
to-gather with-them they-carried-off

In sequenti vero anno, qui erat ab incarnatione Domini
in the-following but year which was from the-incarnation of-the-Lord
1080, mense Ianuario, Heinricus iterum congregato non
1080 in-the-month of-January Henry again gathered no
parvae multitudinis exercitu Saxoniam volebat invadere,
small of-multitude an-army Saxony wished to-invade
reputans Saxones, utpote quietem dum pax erat amantes,
reckoning the-Saxons as-being quiet while peace was loving
non frequentes exire hiemis tempore. Saxones vero multis
not in-numbers to-go-out of-winter in-the-time the-Saxons but by-many
iam laboribus exercitati et per multas inquietudines a
now labors trained and through many disquiets from
somno quietis expergefacti, tota virtute studebant ei
the-sleep of-quiet awakened with-all strength strove him
obviam venire et eius impetum ab invasione regionis
to-meet to-come and his onset from the-invasion of-region
suae repellere. Sed ille solita calliditate Saxones ab
their to-repel but he with-accustomed cunning the-Saxons from
invicem multa promittendo diviserat, ut non diu ante
each-other many-things by-promising had-divided so-that not long before
diem proelii Widekin, Wiprecht, et Theodericus Geronis
the-day of-battle Widukind Wiprecht and Dietrich of-Gero
filius, cum multis aliis a Saxonibus ad hostes transirent,
son with many others from the-Saxons to the-enemy went-over
et Ekkibertus marchio cum sua legione neutrae parti
and Ekbert the-margrave with his troop to-neither side
accedens, non longe a proeliantibus lentus sederet, eventum
joining not far from the-combatants slow sat the-outcome
belli dubius expectans, ut cui parti victoria cederet,
of-the-war doubtful waiting that to-whichever side victory should-go
ei congratulando socius accederet. Igitur exercitus utrique
to-it by-congratulating as-ally he-might-join therefore armies both

convenerunt in loco qui Flathecheim vocatur, et sic
came-together in the-place which Flarchheim is-called and so
consederunt, ut inter eos rivus, non latus quidem sed
encamped that between them a-stream not broad indeed but
profundus, haberetur. Itaque nostrates ad defendendum partis
deep was-had and-so ours for defending of-the-side
suae littus ordinati, illos ad se venturos in declivi
their the-bank drawn-up them to themselves about-to-come on the-slope
montis expectant, ut ipsius oportunitate loci descendentes,
of-the-hill await that of-the-very by-the-advantage place the-descending
hostes supinos facilius retrorsum impellant. Et Ottoni
enemy on-their-backs more-easily backward they-might-drive and to-Otto
duci, quo primus pugnam conserat imperant. Ergo dum
the-duke that first battle he-should-join they-command therefore while
sic ordinati nostrates, adversum se venturos hostes
thus drawn-up ours against themselves about-to-come the-enemy
attendunt, illi, sicut semper solebant, calliditate pugnaturi,
watch they as always they-were-wont with-cunning about-to-fight
nostros improvisi circumveniunt, et dum a fronte venire
ours unexpectedly surround and while from the-front to-come
putantur, subito post tergum respicientibus adesse
they-are-thought suddenly behind the-back to-those-looking-round to-be-present
videntur. Tunc rex Rodulfus velocem misit Ottoni duci
they-are-seen then king Rudolf a-swift sent to-Otto the-duke
nuntium, per Deum obtestans, ut antiquae memor virtutis,
messenger by God adjuring that of-old mindful valor
sicut dispositum fuerat, ipse bellum primus incipere non
as arranged it-had-been he-himself the-battle first to-begin not
refugiat. Cui dux Otto respondit, si sibi sicut putabantur
should-shrink to-whom duke Otto answered if to-him as they-were-thought
primo venissent, se nullatenus eorum violentiam formidare;
first they-had-come himself in-no-way their violence to-dread

nunc vero se non posse suae legionis ordinem convertere;
now but himself not to-be-able of-his troop the-order to-turn-around
et rogavit, ut illi quibus primo venissent, eos tota virtute
and he-asked that those to-whom first they-had-come them with-all strength
susciperent, promittens se cum primum posset, eis in
should-receive promising himself when first he-could to-them to
auxilium venturum. Denique multo aliter incipitur quam
help about-to-come finally much otherwise it-is-begun than
dispositum fuisset. Nam novissimi fiunt primi, et primi
arranged it-had-been for the-last become first and the-first
novissimi. Acriter itaque utrimque pugnatur, sed momento
last fiercely and-so on-both-sides it-is-fought but in-a-moment
brevi finitur. Nam Saxones citissime conversi, hostibus qui
brief it-is-ended for the-Saxons most-quickly turned to-the-enemy who
sibi venerant a tergo, vultus horribiles ostendunt, et
to-them had-come from the-back faces horrible show and
non ante quiescunt, quam eos in fugam versos sibi
not before rest than them into flight turned to-themselves
terga monstrare compellunt. Victores itaque Saxones reversi,
their-backs to-show they-compel victors and-so the-Saxons returned
multas, sicut decebat, laudes referebant omnium bonorum
many as befitted praises rendered of-all good-things
largitori. Ex nostris autem iacuit in illo proelio Meginfridus
to-the-giver of ours moreover lay in that battle Meginfrid
Magedaburgensis praefectus, ex illis vero Folcmarus, et
of-Magdeburg prefect of them but Folcmar and
Pragensis praefectus, et cum eis Boemiorum ceterorumque
of-Prague the-prefect and with them of-Bohemians and-of-the-others
non parvus numerus. Heinricum autem, qui mox incepto
no small number Henry moreover who soon begun
proelio fugae se commendavit, Lothowigus per silvam
the-battle to-flight himself entrusted Louis through the-forest

semitis latentibus abduxit. Exercitus vero eius non longe post
by-paths hidden led-away the-army but his not long after
ad eiusdem fugae praesidium coactus, iuxta quoddam castellum
to of-the-same flight the-protection compelled near a-certain castle
quod dicitur Wartberg fatigatus consedit, et ibi, donec cibis
which is-called Wartburg wearied sat-down and there until by-food
et requie recrearentur corpora, repausavit. Nostrates vero
and rest they-might-be-refreshed their-bodies rested ours but
qui castellum tenebant, impetu subito eos insiliunt, et eis
who the-castle held with-onset sudden them leap-upon and them
fugatis omnia paene quae habebant diripiunt, equos, arma,
routed all-things almost which they-had plunder horses arms
vasa aurea et argentea, piper et alia pigmenta, pallia et
vessels golden and silver pepper and other spices cloaks and
pretiosa vestimenta. Erat enim in eadem societate patriarcha
precious garments there-was for in the-same company the-patriarch
et alii partium illarum principes, qui secum divitias
and other of-parts those princes who with-them riches
portaverant ingentes. Factum est autem hoc tertium proelium
had-carried huge done was moreover this third battle
anno Domini 1080, 6. Kalend. Februar., feria 2.
in-the-year of-the-Lord 1080 on-the-sixth Kalends of-February on-the-day second

Gregory's synod forbids anyone, on pain of anathema, to obstruct his legates; he tells Rudolf that Henry's envoys court him but he will keep to justice, and urges the Saxons to hold firm. In October Henry invades again, splitting the Saxon army by sending riders to burn villages toward Goslar while he marches on and plunders Erfurt; the Saxons save Naumburg, and he camps, unwillingly, by the deep Elster, where Bruno weighs three explanations of his choice of ground.

Ipso anno domnus apostolicus in Teutonicas partes
in-that-very year lord apostolic into the-Teutonic parts
a synodo subiectam misit epistolam: Gregorius episcopus
from the-synod the-subjoined sent letter Gregory bishop
servus servorum Dei, omnibus archiepiscopis et episcopis in
servant of-the-servants of-God to-all archbishops and bishops in
Teutonico atque in Saxonico regno commanentibus, omnibusque
the-Teutonic and in the-Saxon kingdom dwelling and-to-all
principibus, cunctis etiam maioribus atque minoribus, qui
princes to-all also greater and lesser who
non sunt excommunicati et obedire voluerint, salutem et
not are excommunicated and to-obey shall-have-wished greeting and
apostolicam benedictionem. Quoniam ex lite et dissensione,
apostolic blessing since from the-strife and dissension
quae tamdiu inter vos est, maximum in sancta ecclesia
which so-long among you is the-greatest in holy church
periculum, maximum undique inter vos detrimentum fieri
danger the-greatest on-all-sides among you harm to-come-about
cottidie cognoscimus, idcirco visum est nobis, visum est
daily we-learn therefore seemed-good it-has to-us seemed-good it-has
et fratribus nostris in concilio congregatis, summo desiderio
also to-brothers our in council assembled with-highest desire
aestuare, summa ope elaborare pro viribus, quatenus
to-burn with-highest effort to-labor according-to strength that

idonei nuntii, tam religione quam scientia pollentes, e latere
suitable messengers both in-religion and in-knowledge strong from the-side
apostolicae sedis ad partes vestras mitterentur, qui religiosos
of-the-apostolic see to parts your should-be-sent who religious
episcopos, laicos etiam pacis et iusticiae amatores, in partibus
bishops laymen also of-peace and of-justice lovers in parts
vestris commorantes, ad hoc opus idoneos congregarent: qui
your abiding for this work suitable should-gather who
Domini gratia praeeunte, die et loco ab illis statuto,
of-the-Lord by-the-grace going-before on-the-day and in-the-place by them appointed
tam ipsi quam quos ipsis adhuc iungere debemus,
both they-themselves and those-whom to-them still to-join we-ought
aut pacem componant, aut veritate praecognita super
either peace should-compose or the-truth known-beforehand upon
illos, qui sunt tanti discidii causa, canonicam censuram
those who are of-so-great division the-cause canonical censure
exerceant. Verum quoniam nonnullos diabolico instinctu
should-exercise but since some by-diabolical instigation
confectos, iniquitatis suae facibus ignitos, cupiditate inductos,
wrought-upon of-iniquity their by-the-torches inflamed by-greed led
discordiam potius quam pacem fieri et videre desiderantes
discord rather than peace to-be-made and to-see desiring
fore non ignoramus, statuimus in hac synodo ad eandem
to-be not we-are-ignorant we-have-decreed in this synod after the-same
formam sicut et in praeterita, ut nulla unquam persona
form as also in the-past that no ever person
alicuius potentiae vel dignitatis, sive magna sive parva, sive
of-any power or dignity whether great or small whether
princeps sive subiectus, aliqua praesumptione praesumat legatis
prince or subject by-any presumption presume envoys
nostris obsistere, et postquam ad vos pervenerint, de
our to-oppose and after to you they-shall-have-come about

componenda pace contraire; nec postea contra interdictum
to-be-composed peace to-go-against nor afterward against the-prohibition
illorum alter in alterum audeat insurgere, sed usque ad
of-them one against another dare to-rise-up but until to
diem ab illis statutam firmam pacem omnes sine ulla
the-day by them appointed firm peace all without any
occasione et fraude observent. Quicunque autem haec nostra
pretext and deceit observe whoever moreover these our
statuta ulla praesumptione violare temptaverit, anathematis
statutes with-any presumption to-violate shall-have-tried of-anathema
eum vinculo ligamus, et non solum in spiritu, verum etiam
him with-the-bond we-bind and not only in spirit but also
et in corpore et in omni prosperitate huius vitae apostolica
and in body and in all prosperity of-this life by-apostolic
auctoritate innodamus, et victoriam in armis auferimus, ut
authority we-knot(-him) and victory in arms we-take-away that
sic saltem confundantur et duplici contritione conterantur.
thus at-least they-may-be-confounded and with-double contrition be-crushed
Item domnus papa regi Rodulfo: Gregorius episcopus servus
likewise lord pope to-king Rudolf Gregory bishop servant
servorum Dei, Rodulfo regi et omnibus secum christianam
of-the-servants of-God to-Rudolf king and to-all with-him the-Christian
religionem defendentibus salutem et apostolicam benedictionem.
religion defending greeting and apostolic blessing
Quod regnum Teutonicorum, hactenus inter omnia mundi
that the-kingdom of-the-Teutons hitherto among all of-the-world
regna nobilissimum, iam video incendiis, caedibus et
kingdoms most-noble now I-see by-burnings by-slaughters and
rapinis devastari, confundi et annullari, quam
by-plunderings to-be-laid-waste to-be-confounded and to-be-brought-to-nothing how
magnus exinde cordi meo dolor insideat, quam continuus in
great thence on-heart my grief sits how continual in

visceribus meis me gemitus afficiat, testis est ille solus, qui
bowels my me groaning affects witness is he alone who
omnium hominum corda scrutatur et probat. Deferuntur
of-all men the-hearts searches and proves there-are-brought
enim michi iam saepius legationes Heinrici tum per
for to-me now quite-often embassies of-Henry both through
proprios nuntios, tum per cognatos et aliarum terrarum
his-own messengers and through kinsmen and of-other lands
principes et affines, modo omnem obedientiam promittendo,
princes and relatives now all obedience by-promising
modo per varia ingenia sollicitando, id a me summo
now by various devices by-soliciting this from me with-highest
conamine cupientes efficere, quo me ad votum suum
effort desiring to-effect by-which me to wish his
suis partibus valeant inclinare. Verum quia hinc
to-his side they-may-be-able to-incline but because on-this-side
inde et Romana gravitas et apostolica mansuetudo me
on-that-side both Roman gravity and apostolic gentleness me
per mediam iustitiae viam incedere cogit, omnibus quibus
through the-middle of-justice way to-go compel by-all by-which
possum modis hoc oportet intendere, quomodo veram a
I-can ways this it-behooves to-strive how true from
falsa iustitiam, perfectam a ficta obedientiam, iudicio
false justice perfect from feigned obedience by-the-judgment
sancti Spiritus valeam discernere, et rato ordine ad
of-the-holy Spirit I-may-be-able to-distinguish and in-settled order to
finem usque perducere. Haec vero et alia, si propitio
the-end all-the-way to-bring these but and other-things if propitious
Deo ad vos sani perveniunt legati mei, melius quam hae
God to you safe arrive envoys my better than this
litterae viva voce testificabuntur et docebunt.
letter by-living voice will-testify and will-teach

Item domnus apostolicus regi Rodulfo: Gregorius episcopus
likewise lord apostolic to-king Rudolf Gregory bishop
servus servorum Dei, Rodulfo regi omnibusque secum in
servant of-the-servants of-God to-Rudolf king and-to-all with-him in
regno Saxonum commanentibus, tam episcopis quam ducibus
the-kingdom of-the-Saxons dwelling both bishops and dukes
et comitibus, nec non maioribus et minoribus, peccatorum
and counts nor not greater and lesser of-sins
absolutionem et apostolicam benedictionem. Cum Veritas ipsa
absolution and apostolic blessing since Truth itself
dicat, omnium qui propter iustitiam persecutionem patiuntur,
says of-all who for justice persecution suffer
regnum esse coelorum, et apostolus clamet, neminem nisi
the-kingdom to-be of-the-heavens and the-apostle cries no-one except
qui legitime certaverit posse coronari: nolite, filii mei,
who lawfully shall-have-striven to-be-able to-be-crowned do-not sons my
in hoc, qui vos iam multo tempore exagitat, bellico furore
in this which you now for-much time harasses warlike fury
deficere; nolite per ullius fallentis personae mendacia de
to-fail do-not through any deceiving of-person lies about
nostro fideli adiutorio dubitare, sed magis magisque pro
our faithful help to-doubt but more and-more for
tuenda veritate ecclesiastica, pro defendenda vestrae nobilitatis
guarding the-truth ecclesiastical for defending of-your nobility
libertate, labori iam citius finiendo incumbite, et ex
the-liberty to-the-labor now more-quickly to-be-finished apply-yourselves and from
adverso ascendendo vos et corpora vestra quasi murum pro
the-opposite going-up yourselves and bodies your as-a wall for
domo Israel opponere satagite. Quid iam in duabus synodi
the-house of-Israel to-set-against strive what already in two of-synod
nostrae conventionibus de rege Rodulfo et de Heinrico
our meetings about king Rudolf and about Henry

statutum, quidque ibi de pace et concordia regni
decreed(-has-been) and-what there about peace and concord of-the-kingdom
etiam cum iuramentis sit diffinitum, per nostras litteras
even with oaths has-been defined through our letters
et per vestros legatos, nisi forte capti sint, apertissime
and through your envoys unless perhaps captured they-have-been most-openly
potestis agnoscere, et si quid adhuc remanserit, per
you-can to-learn and if anything still shall-have-remained through
episcopos Metensem et Pataviensem et abbatem Augiensem,
the-bishops of-Metz and of-Passau and the-abbot of-Reichenau
qui nobiscum finem rei praestolando morantur, cum
who with-us the-end of-the-matter by-awaiting are-staying when
ad vos ipsi pervenerint, quasi in promptu habetis
to you they-themselves shall-have-come as-if in readiness you-have
audire. Postremo hoc vos ignorare nolumus, quia omni
to-hear finally this you to-be-ignorant we-do-not-wish that with-all
qua oportet instantia, cum orationis nostrae assiduitate,
which befits urgency both of-prayer our by-the-assiduity
tum officii nostri gravitate, et prospiciendo consulere et
and of-office our with-the-gravity both by-foreseeing to-take-counsel and
consulendo prospicere vestrae necessitati non dubitamus.
by-taking-counsel to-foresee for-your necessity not we-hesitate
Eodem anno, mense videlicet Octobri, Heinricus militiae
in-the-same year in-the-month namely of-October Henry of-warfare
laboribus infatigabilis, iterum congregavit exercitum, ut
by-the-labors unwearied again gathered an-army that
invaderet Saxoniae regnum. Saxones vero cum ingenti
he-might-invade of-Saxony the-kingdom the-Saxons but with huge
multitudine occurrerunt ei in loco qui Cancul vocatur,
multitude met him at the-place which Kanzel is-called
ibique castris positis sederunt, ut fines suos cum Dei
and-there camp having-been-pitched they-sat that borders their with of-God

adiutorio ab hostili invasione tuerentur. Cumque missis
help from hostile invasion they-might-protect and-when sent
exploratoribus ille nostram virtutem cognosceret, et ei cum
scouts he our strength learned and with-it with
sua virtute congredi non auderet, ad artem malitiae convertit
his strength to-engage not dared to the-art of-malice turned
se, dolique calliditate nostrum agmen in duas partes
himself and-of-trickery by-the-cunning our column into two parts
dispergit, ut quod integrum suis viribus diffidens adire
he-scatters that what whole in-his strength distrusting to-approach
non praesumebat, divisum per partes, si necessitas compelleret,
not he-presumed divided by parts if necessity should-compel
aggredi non formidaret. Nam cum proelium devitans cum
to-attack not he-should-dread for while battle avoiding with
universo exercitu suo contra Erphesfort tenderet, velocissimos
whole army his toward Erfurt he-made-way the-swiftest
equites retro contra Goslariam misit, qui quibusdam villis
horsemen back toward Goslar he-sent who some villages
incensis ad se velociter properarent. At Saxones per
having-been-burned to himself swiftly should-hasten but the-Saxons through
suos exploratores iter eius contra Erphesfort edocti, cum
their scouts the-route his toward Erfurt informed though
eum facile possent insequi vel etiam praevenire, viso post
him easily they-could to-follow or even to-forestall seen behind
dorsum fumo illuc universi festinant, ut ei Goslariam
the-back the-smoke thither all hasten that from-him Goslar
et illas partes Saxoniae prohibeant. Ille vero coeptum iter
and those parts of-Saxony they-may-bar he but the-begun route
ad Erphesfort peragens, oppidum iam succensum fuerat
to Erfurt completing the-town already set-on-fire had
depraedatus, cum noster exercitus se deceptum intelligens,
plundered when our army itself deceived understanding

magna turba peditum simul et equitum derelicta illum est
a-great crowd of-foot-soldiers together and of-horsemen left-behind him has
insecutus. Cumque iam illi nostrates appropinquarent, eumque
followed and-when now they ours were-drawing-near and-him
Niuamburg episcopatum incendere velle viderent, propero
the-Naumburg bishopric to-burn to-wish they-saw with-hurried
cursu eum per montana praevenientes, urbem ab incendio
course him through the-mountains forestalling the-city from burning
fortiter defenderunt. Quo ille cognito, obvia cuncta
bravely they-defended which he having-learned things-in-his-way all
comburens et vastans, ad fluvium qui dicitur Elstera pervenit;
burning and laying-waste to the-river which is-called Elster came
cuius magna profunditate visa nolens ibi castra locavit.
of-which great depth seen unwilling there camp he-placed
Hic diversorum diversas opiniones michi contigit agnoscere,
here of-different-men different opinions to-me it-befell to-learn
sed cui earum veritas accedat, non licuit michi scire.
but to-which of-them truth adheres not it-was-allowed to-me to-know
Alii namque dicebant, quia bis a proelio discedebat victus,
some for said that twice from battle he-departed conquered
amplius eum fortunam proelii nolle temptare, sed nostris
further him the-fortune of-battle to-be-unwilling to-try but ours
arte sua deceptis magnam partem regionis velle comburere,
by-art his deceived great part of-the-region to-wish to-burn
sicque sine proelio quasi cum victoriae gloria suas in
and-thus without battle as-if with of-victory the-glory his-own into
partes declinare, sed inscium fluminis huius profundidatem
parts to-turn-aside but unaware of-river this the-depth
incurrisse, sicque coactum, quia non facile transire poterat,
to-have-run-into and-thus compelled because not easily to-cross he-could
proelio se commisisse. Alii vero putabant, quod ex
to-battle himself to-have-committed others but thought that from

industria malivolentiae hunc pugnae elegisset locum, ubi
the-design of-malevolence this of-fight he-had-chosen place where
suis quibus non bene credebat aut fortiter esset
his-men whom not well he-trusted either bravely there-would-be
pugnandum, aut turpis fugae praemium periculum fluvii
fighting or of-shameful flight as-the-prize the-danger of-the-river
subeundum. Alii vero credebant, quod ideo regiones illas
to-be-undergone others but believed that for-that-reason the-regions those
peteret, quia Misnensium vel Boemiorum, pro quibus legatos
he-sought because of-the-Meisseners or of-the-Bohemians for whom envoys
miserat, auxilium speraret; qui si sibi, sicut expectabat,
he-had-sent the-help he-hoped who if to-him as he-expected
fuissent adunati, inde per Merseburg et Magedaburg et
they-had-been united thence through Merseburg and Magdeburg and
per universam potenter transiens Saxoniam, cuncta posset
through the-whole mightily crossing Saxony all-things he-could
depopulari, saeque imperpetuum subicere dominationi.
to-lay-waste and-to-his-own forever to-subject to-dominion

On 15 October 1080 the armies meet at the Grona marsh. Henry flees early; Otto's foot soldiers rout the enemy, many drowning in the Elster, and the Saxons plunder a rich camp. But Rudolf has lost his right hand and is mortally wounded in the belly; glad of the victory, he dies after the princes promise to choose no other king while he lives.

Igitur Heinricus castris in Elstrae ripa locatis, crastino
therefore Henry the-camp on of-the-Elster bank having-been-placed on-the-morrow
mane primo suas acies disposuit, quia nullam proelii
in-the-morning first his battle-lines arranged because no of-battle
moram per se fieri voluit: cum ecce nostri multa
delay through himself to-be-made he-wished when behold ours with-much
festinatione simul et itineris asperitate fatigati, multis in
haste together and of-the-journey by-the-roughness wearied many on
via prae lassitudine derelictis adveniunt, et audientes quod
the-way from weariness left-behind arrive and hearing that
hostes essent, econtra sine mora se ad defensionem
the-enemy were opposite without delay themselves for the-defense
patriae suae disponunt. Cum vero pedites admodum
of-homeland their arrange when but the-foot-soldiers very
pauci esse, plurimis non valentibus sequi, conspicerentur,
few to-be very-many not being-able to-follow were-seen
omnes qui non satis fortes equos habebant, ex equitibus
all who not sufficiently strong horses had from horsemen
pedites fieri iubentur; et tunc ordinati hostibus obviam
foot-soldiers to-become are-ordered and then drawn-up the-enemy to-meet
paulatim progrediuntur. Episcopi vero clericos omnes qui
gradually advance the-bishops but the-clerics all who
aderant, ut psalmum 82um multa devotione cantarent
were-present that the-psalm 82nd with-much devotion they-should-sing

ammonebant. Exercitus autem utrique ad paludem quae
admonished the-armies moreover both at the-marsh which
vocatur Grona convenerunt, et quia sine vado palus erat,
is-called Grona came-together and because without ford the-marsh was
exercitus ambo dubitantes ibi substiterunt, et alteros alteri,
armies both hesitating there halted and the-ones the-others
ut priores ad se transeant, opprobriis increpantes, utrique
that first to them they-should-cross with-reproaches upbraiding both
suam ripam inmoti tenuerunt. Tandem nostri caput ipsius
their bank unmoved held at-last ours the-head of-the-very
paludis non longe esse cognoscentes, ad illud tendebant; quo
marsh not far to-be learning to it made-their-way which
viso contrarii aequo itinere ad eundem terminum paludis
seen the-adversaries by-equal route to the-same end of-the-marsh
pergebant. Ibi cum in tuto convenissent, conseruere
went there when on safe-ground they-had-met they-joined
manus, et utrimque fecerunt miserabile facinus. Heinricus
hands and on-both-sides did a-wretched deed Henry
autem, mox ut eos vicissim misceri conspexit, se sicut
moreover as-soon as them in-turn to-be-engaged he-saw himself as
solitus erat in fugam dedit. Exercitus vero eius tanta
wont he-was into flight gave the-army but his with-such
virtute nostris instabat, ut quibusdam terga dantibus, ad
valor ours pressed that some (their)-backs turning to
illorum castra fallax fama veniret, quae Saxones esse
their camp a-false rumor came which the-Saxons to-have-been
victos ore mendacii nuntiaret. Dumque praesules
conquered with-the-mouth of-a-lie announced and-while the-prelates
qui Heinricum adiuvabant, cum suis clericis 'Te Deum
who Henry were-helping with their clerics you God
laudamus' gaudentes canerent, ecce Rappodo, unus de summis
we-praise rejoicing sang behold Rapoto one of the-highest

principibus, portatur occisus. Quem qui ferebant, his qui
princes is-carried killed whom those-who carried to-those who
in castris erant, de longe: 'Fugite, Fugite', clamabant; Otto
in the-camp were from far flee flee cried Otto
namque dux adsumpta peditum turma, illis qui
for the-duke having-been-taken-up of-foot-soldiers a-band to-those who
nostros in fugam verterant aequam vicem rependit, eosque
ours into flight had-turned equal return paid-back and-them
terga sibi monstrantes insequi non ante desistit, quam eos
their-backs to-him showing to-pursue not before he-ceases than them
per media castra festinantes fluvium satis cum periculo
through the-middle-of the-camp hastening the-river quite with danger
transisse conspexit. Nam fere non minor pars hostium in
to-have-crossed he-saw for almost not lesser a-part of-the-enemy in
fluvio quam periit in proelio. Tunc pedites plenam se
the-river than perished in the-battle then the-foot-soldiers full themselves
sperantes obtinuisse victoriam, castrorum volebant invadere
hoping to-have-obtained victory of-the-camp wished to-invade
rapinam. Sed dux Otto prudens in bello, timens ne adhuc
the-plunder but duke Otto prudent in war fearing lest still
hostes aliqui post terga remansissent, monuit eos a
enemies some behind their-backs might-have-remained admonished them from
praeda manus interim continere, donec certi quod nullus
the-booty their-hands meanwhile to-hold-back until sure that no
hostis a tergo latuisset, securi possent hostilia castra
enemy from the-back had-lain-hidden secure they-could the-hostile camp
diripere. Itaque reversus cum peditibus, invenit in loco
to-plunder and-so returned with the-foot-soldiers he-found in the-place
proelii Heinricum de Lacha cum maxima parte exercitus,
of-the-battle Henry of Laach with the-greatest part of-the-army
iam quasi de victoria triumphantem et 'Kyrieeleyson!'
already as-if over the-victory triumphing and Lord-have-mercy

laeto clamore canentem. Quam multitudinem cum vidisset
with-glad clamor singing which multitude when had-seen
dux Otto, voluit eam devitare primo, quia non eam turbam
duke Otto he-wished it to-avoid at-first because not that crowd
se vidit habere, cum qua cum tanta legione putaret
himself he-saw to-have with which with so-great a-legion he-might-think
tutum pugnare; sed rursus recogitans, quia Deo non est
safe to-fight but again reflecting that for-God not it-is
difficile multos in paucis vincere, fortiter eos adivit, et
difficult many with few to-conquer bravely them approached and
Deo dante illis spiritum timoris, cito eos in fugam
God giving to-them the-spirit of-fear quickly them into flight
convertit. Omnibus ergo aut in fluvio mersis aut ultra
turned all therefore either in the-river drowned or beyond
fluvium fugatis: 'Nunc', ait dux Otto, 'castra securi perquirite;
the-river routed now says duke Otto the-camp secure search-through
nunc tuti quicquid inveneritis accipite; et quicquid hodie
now safe whatever you-shall-have-found take and whatever today
fuit hostium, vestra virtute vobis praestante, vestrum vocate!'
was the-enemy's your valor to-you providing(-it) yours call
His verbis nondum finitis hostilia castra pervadunt, et
these words not-yet finished the-hostile camp they-overrun and
omnia quae sunt inventa, festinanter invadunt. Sunt autem
all-things which were found hastily seize there-were moreover
inventa multa pretiosa tentoria, multa episcopornm scrinia
found many precious tents many of-bishops chests
sacris indumentis et vasis plena, multa vasa aurea et
with-sacred vestments and vessels full many vessels golden and
argentea cottidianis usibus apta, multae quoque argenti vel
silver for-daily uses fit many also of-silver or
auri laminae, multoque maxima pars numeratae pecuniae,
of-gold plates and-by-far the-greatest part of-counted money

equi quam plurimi simul et optimi, arma generis universi,
horses very many together and the-best arms of-kind every
mutatoria, ceteraque sine aestimatione vestimenta, vel ut
changes-of-clothing and-the-other beyond estimate garments or that
breviter dicam, quicquid episcopi, Coloniensis, Treverensis
briefly I-may-say whatever the-bishops of-Cologne of-Trier
et alii fere quatuordecim secum attulerant, quicquid dux
and others nearly fourteen with-them had-brought whatever duke
Fridericus, comes Heinricus ceterique ditissimi homines secum
Frederick count Henry and-the-other richest men with-them
portaverant, quicquid in Erphesfort rapuerant, omnia illa
had-carried whatever at Erfurt they-had-seized all those-things
nostri simul diripientes, ad castra sua venerunt triumphantes.
ours together plundering to camp their came triumphing
Illi vero qui gladium effugerant, quantas calamitates in fluvio,
those but who the-sword had-escaped how-great calamities in the-river
silvis, paludibus sustinerent, nulli est credibile, nisi cui
the-woods the-marshes they-endured to-no-one it-is believable except to-whom
contigit haec omnia loca praesentialiter videre. Fluvius
it-has-befallen these all places in-person to-see the-river
enim tales ex utraque parte ripas habet, ut hic nemo nisi
for such on each side banks has that here no-one except
cadens possit intrare, illic nemo nisi frutectis vel herbis
by-falling can to-enter there no-one except brushwood or grasses
arreptis repens possit exire. Multi fugientes cum
having-been-seized by-creeping can to-come-out many fleeing when
hic proni fluvium velociter inciderent, et illic de dorsis
here headlong the-river swiftly they-fell-into and there from the-backs
equorum ripae insilirent, gladio ripam caedebant, ut
of-the-horses onto-the-bank leaped with-the-sword the-bank they-hacked that
equos post se de fluvio extraherent, tandemque caedendo
the-horses after them from the-river they-might-draw-out and-at-last by-hacking

fatigati, equis derelictis armisque proiectis fugam trepidi
wearied the-horses abandoned and-arms thrown-away flight trembling
corripuerunt. Ergo quicquid Unstrod ubi victi sumus
they-seized therefore whatever the-Unstrut where conquered we-were
in nos peccavit, Elstera pro nobis dupliciter vindicavit.
against us sinned the-Elster for us doubly avenged
Illic enim tantum nostras res fugientes amisimus, istic et
there for only our things fleeing we-lost here both
hostiles et nostras, quas nobis praedando tulerant fugientes
the-enemy's and ours which from-us by-plundering they-had-taken fleeing
hostes, fugientibus et interfectis abstulimus. In fuga vero
the-enemy from-the-fleeing and killed we-took-away in the-flight but
quam plurimi fortes viri a rusticis securibus et fustibus
very many brave men by peasants with-axes and clubs
occisi, multi nobiles et illustres sunt a personis vilibus
killed many noble and illustrious-men were by persons base
capti, multi fame crudelissima cruciati, equos vel gladios
captured many by-hunger most-cruel tormented horses or swords
pro frusto panis dare non dubitabant, nec si panem venalem
for a-crust of-bread to-give not they-hesitated nor if bread for-sale
invenirent, ulli suae rei parcebant. Si qui vero capti ad
they-found any their-own thing spared if any but captured to
aliquem de nostris hominem probum sunt adducti, sanati
any of ours man upright were brought healed
si vulnerati erant, gratis in patriam suam remittuntur,
if wounded they-were freely into homeland their are-sent-back
vestibus et armis decenter instructi. Tunc dictum est
with-garments and arms fittingly equipped then said it-was
illis, quod Heinricus dominus eorum post Boemios misisset,
to-them that Henry lord their after the-Bohemians had-sent
et illis venientibus, cum eodem qui adhuc reliquus erat
and they coming with the-same which still remaining was

exercitu Saxoniam repetere voluisset. Sed illi responderunt,
army Saxony to-seek-again had-wished but they answered
se potius, si possibile esset, totum mundum velle
themselves rather if possible it-were the-whole world to-wish
circuire, quam Saxonicam terram unquam magis transire.
to-go-around than the-Saxon land ever more to-cross
Interea Saxones ad sua castra reversi, repererunt inminutam
meanwhile the-Saxons to their camp returned found diminished
magnam partem sui gaudii, quia rex eorum Rodulfus duobus
great part of-their joy because king their Rudolf two
acceptis vulneribus, uno letali, altero deformi, magis quam
received wounds one mortal the-other disfiguring more than
suum dolebat casum populi. Sed cum cognovisset, quod
his-own grieved the-fall of-the-people but when he-had-learned that
suus haberet victoriam populus: 'Nunc', ait, 'laetus patiar
his had victory people now he-says glad I-shall-suffer
vivus et moriens, quicquid voluerit Dominus!' Quamvis
living and dying whatever shall-have-willed the-Lord although
autem dextera manus illi fuisset amputata, et grave
moreover the-right hand from-him had-been cut-off and a-grave
vulnus haberet venter ubi descendit ad ilia, tamen ut illos
wound had the-belly where it-went-down to the-groin yet that those
quos de sua morte videbat dolentes consolaretur, se non in
whom over his death he-saw grieving he-might-console himself not at
praesenti moriturum fidenter pollicetur; suique postponens
the-present about-to-die confidently he-promises and-of-himself putting-after
curam, suis vulneratis ostendebat quam deceret adhiberi
the-care to-his wounded showed how it-befitted to-be-applied
medicinam. Qua fortitudine simul et pietate nostri principes
medicine by-which fortitude together and piety our princes
valde commoti, concorditer omnes ei spoponderunt, ut si
greatly moved in-concord all to-him pledged that if

Deus omnipotens illius vitam servare vellet eo vivo, etiamsi
God almighty his life to-preserve should-wish him living even-if
utraque manu careret, Saxonia nullum alium rectorem
of-each hand he-were-deprived Saxony no other ruler
eligeret. Qua fide multum ille laetatus, felici est morte
would-choose at-which faith much he rejoicing by-a-happy was death
resolutus. Factum est autem hoc proelium quartum anno
released done was moreover this battle fourth in-the-year
ab incarnatione Domini 1080, Idibus Octobris, feria 5.
from the-incarnation of-the-Lord 1080 on-the-Ides of-October on-the-day fifth

THE CONFERENCE IN THE KAUFUNGER FOREST

In December Henry marches on Goslar, but turns back when the Saxons gather and offers to have his son made king; Otto jests about bad oxen and bad calves. Before Henry leaves for Italy, his men ask for a conference, and the bishops meet near Kaufungen. Gebhard of Salzburg recounts the Saxons' wrongs and will accept Henry again if it is shown he may lawfully reign, or else asks them to stop their war.

Deinde mense Decembri, cum principes nostri congregati
then in-the-month of-December when princes our gathered
de statu regni sui tractarent, ecce nuncius aderat
about the-state of-kingdom their were-treating behold a-messenger was-present
qui diceret, Heinricum ad suos de proelio reversum
who said Henry to his-men from the-battle returned
iactasse, quod rege Saxonum occiso totam Saxoniam
to-have-boasted that the-king of-the-Saxons killed all Saxony
suae ditioni subiecisset, et nunc exercitu congregato
to-his rule he-had-subjected and now an-army having-been-gathered
adventare, ita ut Goslariae natalem Domini celebraret.
to-be-approaching so that at-Goslar the-Nativity of-the-Lord he-might-celebrate

Sed nostri magno exercitu per triduum collecto, ei
but ours with-a-great army for three-days gathered him
perrexerunt obviam, virtute suam defensuri patriam. Quod
went to-meet with-valor their about-to-defend homeland which
ille cognoscens, a magna spe cecidit, quia Saxones, dum
he learning from great hope fell because the-Saxons while
non haberent rectorem, facile vinci posse speravit.
not they-had a-ruler easily to-be-conquered to-be-able he-hoped
Igitur exercitu suo dimisso consilioque mutato, misit ad
therefore army his dismissed and-counsel changed he-sent to
Saxones legatos, rogans ut quandoquidem nollent esse
the-Saxons envoys asking that since-indeed they-would-not to-be
sine rege, filium suum sibi facerent regem, seque
without a-king son his for-themselves they-should-make king and-himself
illis iurare, quod numquam intraret terram Saxoniae.
to-them to-swear that never he-would-enter the-land of-Saxony
Cui legationi dux Otto, sicut erat solitus iocose magna
to-which embassy duke Otto as he-was wont jestingly great
seria nonnullo schemate ludendi velare, respondit: 'Saepe',
serious-things with-some figure of-jest to-veil answered often
dicens, 'ex bove malo malum vitulum vidi generatum;
saying from an-ox bad a-bad calf I-have-seen begotten
ideoque nec filii nec patris habeo desiderium'.
and-therefore neither for-the-son nor for-the-father have-I desire
Transacto vero natali Domini proximo, quo 1081[us] ab
passed but the-Nativity of-the-Lord next with-which 1081st from
incarnatione Domini inceptus annus erat, Heinricus exrex
the-incarnation of-the-Lord begun the-year had Henry the-ex-king
Italiam disponebat ingredi, ut imponeret aliquem finem rerum
Italy was-arranging to-enter that he-might-put some end of-affairs
suarum longo labori, scilicet ut vel domno papa Gregorio
his to-the-long labor namely that either lord pope Gregory

humiliatione ficta placato, sive vi tyrannica coacto, vincula
by-humiliation feigned placated or by-force tyrannical compelled the-bonds
banni, quibus erat ligatus, exueret, vel quod magis
of-the-ban by-which he-was bound he-might-put-off or what more
volebat, Gregorio per vim de sede pontificatus eiecto, et
he-wished Gregory by force from the-see of-the-pontificate cast-out and
in ipsa sede Wiperto Ravennate collocato, qui iam per
in the-very see Wibert of-Ravenna placed who already for
triennium iuste fuerat excommunicatus, libere faceret omnia
three-years justly had-been excommunicated freely he-might-do all-things
quae suae tyrannidi placerent, cum de sede apostolica
which to-his tyranny were-pleasing since from the-see apostolic
omnis suae voluntatis favorem haberet. Sed familiares ipsius
all of-his will the-favor he-would-have but the-intimates his
non tutum putabant fore, Saxonibus recenti proelio
not safe thought it-would-be to-the-Saxons by-the-recent battle
vehementer exacerbatis invadendos fines suos relinquere,
vehemently exasperated to-be-invaded borders their to-leave
cum de adventu illorum dubitationem nullam haberent, si
since about the-coming of-them doubt none they-had if
pergentes in Italiam, suam patriam sine virtute militari
going into Italy their homeland without strength military
dimitterent. Miserunt ergo principibus nostris nuntios, qui
they-left they-sent therefore to-princes our messengers who
singulare colloquium rogantes, tempus et locum praefinirent,
a-special conference asking a-time and place should-fix-beforehand
quo ex utraque parte principes electi, de communi bono
at-which from each side princes chosen about the-common good
tractaturi convenirent. Convenerunt autem ultra fluvium
about-to-treat should-come-together they-came-together moreover beyond the-river
qui Wisara dicitur, in silva quae inde Capuana vocatur,
which Weser is-called in the-forest which thence Kaufunger is-called

quia ad urbem quae Capua nominatur pertinere cognoscitur.
because to the-city which Kaufungen is-named to-belong it-is-known
Convenerunt autem episcopi ex illa parte Coloniensis,
there-came-together moreover bishops from that side of-Cologne
Treverensis, Babenbergensis, Spirensis, Traiectensis; ex nostra
of-Trier of-Bamberg of-Speyer of-Utrecht from our
vero parte Magontinus, Magedaburgensis, Salzburgensis,
but side of-Mainz of-Magdeburg of-Salzburg
Pathorbrunnensis, Hildinisheimensis. Cumque qui ex illa
of-Paderborn of-Hildesheim and-when those-who from that
parte erant, secretum, quod soli principes audirent, habere
side were a-secret which alone the-princes should-hear to-have
colloquium voluissent, nostri nullum sermonem conferre
conference had-wished ours no speech to-hold
volebant, nisi quem cunctis qui convenerant, magnis et
wished except one-which to-all who had-assembled great and
parvis, audire liceret. Iam vero sedentes ex utraque parte
small to-hear it-was-allowed now but sitting on each side
diu tacebant; quia et nostri, qui rogati illis ocurrerant,
long they-were-silent because both ours who asked them had-met
quid illi vellent expectabant; et illi non se rogasse
what they wanted were-awaiting and they not themselves to-have-asked
nostros, sed nostris rogatos venisse videri volentes, quid
ours but by-ours asked to-have-come to-seem wishing what
a nostris peteretur auscultabant. Tandem nostri rumpentes
by ours was-sought listened-for at-last ours breaking
silentium, ut omnium faceret verbum, Gevehardum
the-silence that of-all he-might-make the-speech Gebhard
petierunt Salzburgensem archiepiscopum. Qui surgens, ut erat
they-asked of-Salzburg the-archbishop who rising as he-was
vir per omnia prudens et honestus, et honori quem
a-man in all-things prudent and honorable and to-the-honor which

gerebat non minimum conferens honoris, vultu modesto,
he-bore not least conferring of-honor with-face modest
voce mediocri, sensum profudit sapientis et pii pectoris:
with-voice moderate the-sense poured-out of-a-wise and dutiful breast
'Episcopi venerabiles ceterique quos videtis adesse principes
bishops venerable and-the-other whom you-see to-be-present princes
Saxonici, hanc operam michi dignati sunt imponere, quatenus
Saxon this task on-me deigned have to-impose that
animos omnium mei sermonis officio debeam vobis
the-minds of-all of-my speech by-the-office I-should to-you
exponere. Unde vos omnes, sacerdotes sancti ceterique
to-set-forth whence you all priests holy and-the-other
primates eximii, rogatos esse volo, ut me dignemini patienter
chief-men eminent asked to-be I-wish that me you-may-deign patiently
audire, et causae communi, quam sum iussus agere,
to-hear and to-the-cause common which I-have-been ordered to-plead
animum tranquillum, quo verum agnoscere et examinare
a-mind tranquil by-which the-truth to-recognize and to-examine
possitis, adhibere; quia non plus nostra quam vestra,
you-may-be-able to-apply because not more ours than yours
si vultis, interest, quae sum dicturus agnoscere. Vestro
if you-will it-concerns what-things I-am about-to-say to-recognize on-your
ipsorum testimonio fidenter innitimur, quia vos, quamvis
own testimony confidently we-rely because you although
a nostra societate discessistis, a veritatis amore non
from our fellowship you-have-departed from of-truth the-love not
discedere confidimus: — vestro, inquam, testimonio probare
to-depart we-trust by-your I-say testimony to-prove
volumus, quantis iniuriis, quantis contumeliis simus
we-wish with-how-great injuries with-how-great insults we-have-been
affecti, dum toto animo, tota voluntate, sicut decebat,
affected while with-whole mind with-whole will as befitted

regis eramus servitio subiecti. Vos ipsi scitis, quotiens
of-the-king we-were to-the-service subject you yourselves know how-often
singillatim vel communiter vestrum petivimus auxilium, quo
singly or in-common your we-sought help so-that
pro benivola servitute nostra vel hoc ex intercessione vestra
for kindly service our or this by intercession your
redderet nobis praemium, ut a multarum, quae nos
he-might-render to-us as-reward that from of-the-many which us
importabiles premebant, levaret fasce calamitatum. Hoc
unbearable pressed he-might-relieve the-load of-calamities this
quia saepe postulavimus, optime scitis; et quid postulando
that often we-asked best you-know and what by-asking
profecimus, similiter optime scitis. Inde vos non incusamus,
we-gained likewise best you-know thence you not we-accuse
quia vos pro nostra causa, quamvis parum nobis prodesset,
because you for our cause although little to-us it-availed
saepe laborasse cognovimus. Quale vero praemium nostrae
often to-have-labored we-know what-kind but reward to-our
devotioni dederit ultimum, quid opus est dicere, cum
devotion he-has-given last what need is-it to-say since
manifestum est oculis omnium, quia hoc quod habuit
plain it-is to-the-eyes of-all that that which he-had
maximum, nobis rependit extremum. Sacerdotes namque
greatest to-us he-has-repaid at-the-last priests for
non solum de nullo crimine convictos, sed nec regulariter
not only of no crime convicted but not-even regularly
accusatos, aut in vincula sicut latrones coniecit, aut a
accused either into chains like robbers he-threw or from
sedibus suis, quos capere non poterat, omnium rerum
sees their those-whom to-seize not he-could of-all things
suarum nudos effugavit; ecclesiarum bona, quibus episcopi
their stripped he-put-to-flight of-the-churches the-goods on-which the-bishops

vel ipsi vivere vel pauperes Dei sustentare deberent,
either themselves to-live or the-poor of-God to-sustain ought
scelerum suorum fautoribus dissipanda concessit. Terram
of-crimes his to-the-abettors to-be-squandered he-granted land
nostram multis iam vicibus igni ferroque vastavit;
our many now times with-fire and-sword he-has-laid-waste
cognatos sive milites nostros in nostris finibus innocentes
kinsmen or knights our in our borders innocent
occidit, cum nulla fuisset ei causa bellorum, nisi quod
he-has-killed though no had-been for-him cause of-wars except that
servos habere volebat filios hominum liberorum. Saepe
slaves to-have he-wished the-sons of-men free often
ipsum, saepe vos singulos et universos suppliciter oravimus,
him often you singly and all-together suppliantly we-prayed
ut gladio deposito causam nobiscum iudiciis ageret,
that the-sword laid-down the-cause with-us by-judgments he-should-plead
et nos vestrum per omnia iudicium secuturos animo
and we your in all-things judgment about-to-follow with-mind
libenti spopondimus. Quid his omnibus profecerimus,
glad we-pledged what by-these all-things we-have-gained
vos ipsos in testimonium vocamus. Ergo nos, qui nunc
you yourselves to witness we-call therefore we who now
adsumus, cum omnibus quos tenet Saxonica tellus, vobis, o
are-present with all whom holds the-Saxon land to-you O
sanctissimi Christi sacerdotes, et vobis, o nobilissimi principes
most-holy of-Christ priests and to-you O most-noble princes
et fortissimi milites, humiliter supplicamus, ut memores
and most-brave knights humbly beseech that mindful
omnipotentis Dei vestrique officii, vos, quod estis animarum
of-almighty God and-of-your office you that you-are of-souls
pastores non perditores vocati, vos vero, quod gladium ad
shepherds not destroyers called you but that the-sword for

defensionem non ad internicionem accepistis innocentum,
defense not for slaughter you-received of-the-innocent
cogitetis, et nos vestros fratres in Christo, vestros cognatos
may-reflect and us your brothers in Christ your kinsmen
in carne, ferro et flamma amplius persequi ne velitis.
in the-flesh with-sword and flame further to-persecute not may-wish
Quod hactenus molestiarum a vobis perpessi sumus, vobis
what hitherto of-troubles from you suffered we-have to-you
donantes peccatis nostris imputabimus et correptionem
pardoning to-sins our we-shall-impute(-it) and the-chastening
divinae pietatis appellabimus, dum posthac iniuriarum de
of-divine mercy we-shall-call(-it) provided hereafter of-injuries from
vobis securi esse possimus. Gladium et ignem deponite,
you secure to-be we-may-be-able the-sword and fire lay-down
et sicut decet homines christianos cum christianis, causam
and as befits men Christian with Christians the-cause
rationibus non caedibus agite; et quod ante cruoris effusionem
by-reasons not by-slaughters plead and what before of-blood the-shedding
postulavimus, nunc saltem vel cruore nostro satiati praestate.
we-asked now at-least even with-blood our sated grant
Multas quidem nobis aerumnas dominus vester Heinricus
many indeed on-us hardships lord your Henry
crudeliter intulit, multis calamitatibus nos ultra modum
cruelly has-brought with-many calamities us beyond measure
fatigavit, et tamen ecce parati sumus eum nobis regem,
has-wearied and yet behold ready we-are him for-us as-king
sicut olim fuit, accipere; ecce parati sumus, ei fidelitatem
as formerly he-was to-receive behold ready we-are to-him fealty
et subiectionem iurare et iuratam fideliter et libenter
and subjection to-swear and sworn faithfully and gladly
servare: tantum vos hoc veris assertionibus astruite, ut nos
to-keep only you this with-true assertions establish that we

salvo ordine nostro, et laici possint facere hoc sine fidei
saving order our and laymen may-be-able to-do this without of-faith
sacrae detrimento; nec nos ab isto campo recedemus, donec
sacred harm nor we from this field shall-withdraw until
omnia quae dixi compleverimus. Si vero nostras sententias
all-things which I-have-said we-shall-have-fulfilled if but our opinions
dignati fueritis attendere, veris et manifestis et ex
deigned you-shall-have to-attend-to with-true and manifest and from
scripturarum testimonio firmis rationibus ostendemus, quod
of-the-scriptures testimony firm reasons we-shall-show that
domnum Heinricum nec clerici nec laici regem habere
lord Henry neither clerics nor laymen as-king to-have
possumus cum animarum nostrarum salute. Nunc ergo vel
can-we with of-souls our salvation now therefore either
vos nobis, quod iuste possit regnare, probabiliter ostendite,
you to-us that justly he-can to-reign convincingly show
et nos sub eius regno socios fideles accipite: vel nobis
and us under his kingship as-companions faithful receive or to-us
quod iure regnare non possit, veraciter probare permittentes,
that by-right to-reign not he-can truthfully to-prove permitting
nobis, immo veritati, consensum amicum praebete, nosque ut
to-us nay to-truth consent friendly offer and-us as
hostes persequi desinite. Quod si obicitis, sacramento quod
enemies to-persecute cease which if you-object by-the-oath which
ei iurastis vos esse constrictos, simili modo confirmabimus,
to-him you-swore you to-be bound in-like manner we-shall-confirm
nullo sacramento iure vos ad nostram persecutionem posse
by-no oath rightly you to our persecution to-be-able
compelli. Haec igitur est summa nostrae petitionis, ut
to-be-compelled this therefore is the-sum of-our petition that
domnum Heinricum vel vos iure posse regnare nobis
lord Henry either you by-right to-be-able to-reign to-us

probabiliter ostendatis, vel nos vobis, eum non posse,
convincingly should-show or us to-you him not to-be-able
veraciter ostendere sinatis; et cum res alterutra fuerit
truthfully to-show should-allow and when thing one-or-the-other shall-have-been
demonstrata, nos igni ferroque persequi cessetis'.
demonstrated us with-fire and-sword to-persecute cease

THE CONFERENCE ENDS AND HERMANN IS MADE KING

Henry's bishops refuse to debate unprepared and ask for a truce until the middle of June, which the Saxons see is meant to keep Henry's men at home safe while the rest march into Italy against the pope. Otto demands peace for all or none and warns that the Saxons will choose a new king. Henry's knights cry that the Saxons offer justice, and the sides part with only a week's truce. In March Henry goes into Italy to sow discord there. The Saxon princes invite every German people to choose any king but Henry or his son; in June they ravage eastern Franconia, and near Bamberg they agree with the Swabians to elect Hermann. Henry's princes ply Otto with promises, and he wavers through the summer until, in November, his horse falls and crushes his leg, which he takes as God's correction; Hermann is then received at Goslar and anointed king by Siegfried of Mainz on Saint Stephen's day.

Tunc illi responderunt, se nec ad causam tractandam
then they answered themselves neither for the-cause to-be-treated
convenisse, nec se tantae esse sapientiae, ut tam
to-have-come nor themselves of-so-great to-be wisdom that so
magnam rem ex improviso praesumant agendam
great a-matter out-of the-unforeseen they-should-presume to-be-handled
accipere; praesertim cum non ad se solum, sed ad regem
to-undertake especially since not to themselves alone but to the-king
cunctosque regno eius subditos pertinere videatur. Rogabant
and-all to-kingdom his subject to-belong it-seems they-asked
autem ut ab initio Februarii, quod tunc erat, usque
moreover that from the-beginning of-February which then was all-the-way

ad medietatem Iunii pax ex utraque parte daretur, intra
to the-middle of-June peace on each side should-be-given within
quod tempus conventu facto eadem causa, quam nostri nunc
which time an-assembly held the-same cause which ours now
agere volebant, communi totius regni partis utriusque
to-plead wished by-common of-the-whole kingdom of-party each
consilio tractaretur. Nostri vero dolos illorum percipientes,
counsel might-be-treated ours but the-tricks of-them perceiving
quia propterea tam longum tempus pacis habere volebant,
because for-that-reason so long a-time of-peace to-have they-wished
ut hi qui domi remanebant essent tuti, donec illi qui in
that those who at-home remained might-be safe until those who into
Italiam pergebant contumeliam facerent apostolicae dignitati;
Italy were-going insult should-do to-the-apostolic dignity
responderunt, se nec decipere velle nec decipi, sed
answered themselves neither to-deceive to-wish nor to-be-deceived but
firmam et integram pacem dare et petere usque ad
firm and whole peace to-give and to-ask all-the-way to
terminum temporis praedicti. Cumque illi Teutonicis omnibus,
the-end of-the-time aforesaid and-when they to-the-Teutons all
nostrae partis adiutoribus, pacem se dare promitterent:
of-our side helpers peace themselves to-give promised
'Itane', dixit Otto dux, 'nos stolidos esse putatis, ut
so said Otto the-duke us stupid to-be do-you-think that
non intelligamus consilium vestrae calliditatis? Petitis vestris
not we-understand the-counsel of-your cunning you-ask for-your
partibus a nobis pacis securitatem, donec apostolicam
parts from us of-peace the-security until the-apostolic
possitis inhonorare dignitatem: et nobis pacem vestram
you-can to-dishonor dignity and to-us peace your
promittitis, donec illum qui nostrum caput est, pro vestro
you-promise until him who our head is at your

libitu, si Deus permiserit, male tractetis. O quam bona pax
pleasure if God shall-have-permitted badly you-treat O how good peace
datur corpori, dum crudeliter absciso crudelius illuditur capiti!
is-given to-the-body while cruelly cut-off more-cruelly is-mocked the-head
Ergo nobis et nostris omnibus date, et vobis et vestris
therefore to-us and to-ours all give and for-you and for-yours
omnibus accipite, pacem aut integram aut nullam. Quod si
all receive peace either whole or none which if
plenam pacem nobis et nostris omnibus amicis, magnis et
full peace to-us and to-ours all friends great and
parvis, dare non vultis, pergite iter quod coepistis; hoc
small to-give not you-wish go-on the-journey which you-have-begun this
tamen ante praedicto, quod in finibus vestris hospites cito
yet beforehand I-foretell that in borders your guests soon
non gratos habebitis, nec res vestras, ut velletis, ab Italia
not welcome you-will-have nor things your as you-would-wish from Italy
reversi custoditas invenietis. Nam hoc nolumus vos celare,
returned guarded you-will-find for this we-do-not-wish you to-conceal
quod cum primo poterimus, unum rectorem volumus habere,
that when first we-shall-be-able one ruler we-wish to-have
qui et nos ab iniuriis fortiter adiuvante Deo defendat, et
who both us from injuries bravely helping God may-defend and
his qui nobis iniurias fecerunt aequitatis vicem rependat'.
to-those who on-us injuries have-done of-equity the-return may-pay-back
Milites ergo plebei partis adversae conclamant, nostros
the-knights therefore commoners of-the-party opposing shout-together ours
aequam rem offerre, suos principes aequum nec praebere nec
a-fair thing to-offer their princes a-fair-thing neither to-offer nor
accipere; se posthac ad pugnandum minus fore paratos
to-accept themselves hereafter for fighting less to-be ready
quam hactenus fuissent, quia causam iustitiae cum Saxonibus
than hitherto they-had-been because the-cause of-justice with the-Saxons

esse cognovissent, plusque nobis illum conventum quam
to-be they-had-learned and-more to-us that assembly than
in tribus proeliis victoriam prodesse; quia quod numquam
in three battles victory to-be-of-use because what never
credere poterant, nostros humiliter iustitiam postulare simul
to-believe they-could ours humbly justice to-ask together
et offerre, ipsi praesentes audissent. Sic ab invicem
and to-offer they-themselves present had-heard thus from each-other
discedunt, tantum per septem dies altrinsecus pace data.
they-depart only for seven days on-both-sides peace given
Heinricus igitur intrante Martio intravit Italiam, seminaturus
Henry therefore entering March entered Italy about-to-sow
et ibi, sicut pridem in Teutonica fecerat terra, discordiam,
also there as before in the-Teutonic had-done land discord
quo nullam regni sui partem pacatam dimitteret, ubi
that no of-kingdom his part pacified he-might-leave where
civilium bellorum venenis pacis quietem non corrumperet.
of-civil wars with-the-poisons of-peace the-quiet not he-might-corrupt
Principes vero Saxoniae cunctis gentibus Teutonicae linguae,
the-princes but of-Saxony to-all the-peoples of-the-Teutonic tongue
non minus inimicis quam amicis, legatos miserunt, rogantes
not less to-enemies than to-friends envoys sent asking
ut Heinrico filioque eius excepto, quemlibet alium rectorem
that Henry and-the-son his excepted any-whatever other ruler
eligerent; se ei, quicunque esset, fideliter servituros
they-should-elect themselves him whoever he-might-be faithfully about-to-serve
pollicentes; quatenus omnia regni membra, sicut olim
promising so-that all of-the-kingdom the-members as once
fuerant, in unum sub uno rege convenirent. Mense
they-had-been into one under one king might-come-together in-the-month
autem Iunio exercitu collecto perrexerunt in orientalem
moreover of-June an-army gathered they-went into eastern

Franciam, et praedis vel incendiis eam vastando, multas
Francia and by-plunderings or by-burnings it by-wasting the-many
quas sibi fecerant iniurias vindicaverunt. Nam flamma
which on-them they-had-done injuries they-avenged for with-flame
latum facientes iter, venerunt non longe a Babenberg,
broad making (their)-way they-came not far from Bamberg
ibique Suevos veteres amicos habentes obvios, de
and-there the-Swabians old friends having meeting(-them) about
communi negotio regis constituendi communi consilio
the-common business of-a-king to-be-set-up by-common counsel
tractaverunt, et post multos tractatus, ut Herimannum
they-treated and after many discussions that Hermann
regem eligerent, unanimiter omnes consenserunt.
king they-should-elect unanimously all consented
Sed cum Saxones domum laeti gloriosique redissent, nullumque
but when the-Saxons home glad and-glorious had-returned and-no
dubium de recipiendo rege retinerent, principes adversae
doubt about receiving the-king retained the-princes of-the-opposing
partis, artis antiquae non obliti, quia electum regem valde
party of-(their)-art ancient not forgetful because the-elected king greatly
timebant, electionem eius, ne perficeretur, modis omnibus
they-feared the-election his lest it-be-completed by-ways all
disturbare quaerebant. Ottonem ergo ducem solum sibi
to-disturb they-sought Otto therefore the-duke alone with-them
loqui rogabant, multisque pollicitationibus ei, ut in electione
to-speak they-asked and-with-many promises him that in the-election
vacillaret, persuadebant; non tamen ut certum quid eis
he-should-waver they-were-persuading not however that certain anything to-them
promitteret, efficere poterant. Sic eo dubitante magnaque
he-should-promise to-bring-about they-could thus he doubting and-a-great
parte eius dubitationi consentiente, tota praeterit aestas,
part his to-the-doubt consenting the-whole passes-by summer

et paene totam Saxoniam commoverat eius instabilitas. In
and almost the-whole Saxony had-disturbed his instability in
Novembre vero mense iterum vocatus ab illis ad soliloquium,
November but the-month again called by them to a-private-talk
cum iam totus esset inclinatus ad nostrorum partes hostium,
when now wholly he-was inclined to of-our the-side enemies
Dei misericordia faciente, ne tot suos labores, quos pro
of-God the-mercy bringing-about lest so-many his labors which for
patria toleraverat, in ultimis temporibus perderet, equus
the-fatherland he-had-borne in the-last times he-should-lose the-horse
cui insidebat in plano campo cecidit, ipsique sessori
on-which he-was-sitting on level field fell and-of-the-very rider
crus unum ita contrivit, ut fere integro mense nisi portatus
leg one so crushed that almost for-a-whole month unless carried
ire non posset. Igitur ad se gratia Dei movente reversus,
to-go not he-could therefore to himself the-grace of-God moving(-him) returned
se peccasse et divina pietate correptum esse intellexit.
himself to-have-sinned and by-divine mercy chastised to-have-been he-understood
Missis itaque legationibus diversis, et hostibus renuntiavit, et
sent and-so embassies various both the-enemies he-renounced and
civibus suis se semper fore fidelem et concordem fideliter
to-countrymen his himself always to-be faithful and of-one-mind faithfully
repromisit. Unde principes Saxoniae valde laetati,
he-promised-in-return whence the-princes of-Saxony greatly having-rejoiced
regem suum Herimannum cum magno tripudio Goslariae
king their Hermann with great jubilation at-Goslar
susceperunt, paucis diebus ante natalem Domini. In natali
received a-few days before the-Nativity of-the-Lord on the-feast-day
vero sancti Stephani protomartyris a Sigifrido, Magontinae
but of-Saint Stephen the-protomartyr by Siegfried of-the-Mainz

sedis	archiepiscopo,	in	regem	venerabiliter	est	unctus,	cum
see	*archbishop*	*as*	*king*	*venerably*	*he-was*	*anointed*	*when*
iam	1082[us]	annus	incarnationis	dominicae	fuisset	inceptus.	
now	*the-1082nd*	*year*	*of-the-incarnation*	*of-the-Lord*	*had-been*	*begun*	

Vita Heinrici IV imperatoris

The Life of the Emperor Henry IV

The author mourns the emperor Henry, the glory of Rome and the light of the world. Rome, the monasteries, and above all the poor have lost their protector: he fed and washed the poor, tended the sick in his own chamber, and kept count of the poor he paid. Wise in counsel and awe-inspiring, he was feared by the kings of east and west and crushed oppressors and rebels. Reaching the factions and crimes, dangerous to tell, the author goes on, trusting his friend to keep the work secret.

Quis dabit aquam capiti meo, et fontem lacrimarum oculis
who will-give water to-head my and a-fountain of-tears to-eyes
meis, ut lugeam, non excidia captae urbis, non
my that I-may-mourn not the-destruction of-a-captured city not
captivitatem vilis vulgi, non damna rerum mearum, sed
the-captivity of-the-base mob not the-losses of-things my but
mortem Heinrici imperatoris augusti, qui spes mea et unicum
the-death of-Henry the-emperor august who hope my and only
solacium fuit, immo ut de me taceam, qui gloria
solace was nay that about myself I-may-keep-silent who the-glory
Romae, decus imperii, lucerna mundi extitit? Erit
of-Rome the-ornament of-the-empire the-lamp of-the-world stood-forth will-there-be
posthac mihi vita iocunda? Erit absque lacrimis dies aut
hereafter for-me life pleasant will-there-be without tears a-day or
hora? Aut tecum, o dulcissime, potero illius mentionem
an-hour or with-you O sweetest(-friend) shall-I-be-able of-him mention
habere sine fletu? Ecce dum scribo, quod dictavit impatientia
to-have without weeping behold while I-write what has-dictated the-impatience
doloris, cadunt lacrimae, madent fletu litterae, et quod
of-grief fall tears are-wet with-weeping the-letters and what
notat manus, diluit oculus. Sed forsan impatientiam doloris
notes the-hand washes-out the-eye but perhaps the-impatience of-grief
mei redarguis, et ut fletum meum reprimam, ne forte
my you-rebuke and that weeping my I-should-check lest perhaps

his qui de morte imperatoris gaudent, innotescat,
to-those who at the-death of-the-emperor rejoice it-may-become-known
instruis. Recte me doces, fateor; sed non possum imperare
you-instruct rightly me you-teach I-confess but not I-can to-command
mihi quin doleam, non possum me continere quin lugeam,
myself that-not I-grieve not I-can me to-restrain that-not I-mourn
licet in me furorem suum exacuant, licet me per
although against me fury their they-sharpen although me limb-from
membra discerpere cupiant; dolor timere nescit, dolor illatas
limb to-tear-apart they-desire grief to-fear knows-not grief inflicted
poenas non sentit. Nec ego solus mortem eius lamentor;
penalties not feels nor I alone death his lament
hanc Roma plangit, hanc omne Romanum imperium deflet,
it Rome bewails it all the-Roman empire weeps-for
hanc in commune divites et pauperes, praeter insidiatores
it in common rich and poor except the-plotters-against
potentiae vitaeque eius, lugent. Nec mihi privata doloris
of-power and-of-life his mourn nor for-me private of-grief
causa est; publicam lamentari cladem pietas me cogit. Nam
cause is the-public to-lament disaster piety me compels for
illo recedente, iusticia terras reliquit, pax abiit, fraus in
he departing justice the-earth left peace went-away fraud into
locum fidei subintravit. Chorus laudantium Deum conticuit,
the-place of-faith crept-in the-choir of-those-praising God fell-silent
solemnitas officii divini siluit, vox exultationis et salutis
the-solemnity of-the-office divine fell-silent the-voice of-exultation and of-salvation
in tabernaculis iustorum non auditur; quia qui haec omnia
in the-tabernacles of-the-just not is-heard because he-who these all-things
solemniter ordinavit, non invenitur. Monasteria patronum
solemnly ordered not is-found the-monasteries patron
suum, claustra patrem amiserunt, quibus quid commodi,
their the-cloisters father have-lost to-whom what of-advantage

quid honoris ipse conferret, nunc demum agnoscitur,
what of-honor he-himself conferred now at-last is-recognized
cum extinctus non tenetur. Ergo claustris omnibus vera
when extinguished not he-is-held therefore for-cloisters all a-true
dolendi causa subest, nam cum illo sepulto gloria eorum
of-grieving cause is-present for with him buried the-glory their
sepulta est. Heu Mogontia, quantum decus perdidisti,
buried was alas Mainz how-great an-ornament you-have-lost
quae ad reparandam monasterii tui ruinam talem artificem
who for repairing of-monastery your the-ruin such a-craftsman
amisisti! Si superstes esset, dum operi monasterii tui,
you-have-lost if surviving he-were until on-the-work of-monastery your
quod inceperat, extremam manum imponeret, nimirum
which he-had-begun the-last hand he-should-put doubtless
illud illi famoso Spirensi monasterio contenderet, quod
it with-that famous of-Speyer monastery would-vie which
ille a fundo fundatum usque mira mole et
he from the-foundation founded all-the-way with-wonderful mass and
sculptili opere complevit, ut hoc opus super omnia
sculptured work completed so-that this work above all
regum antiquorum opera laude et admiratione dignum sit.
of-kings ancient works of-praise and of-admiration worthy is
Qualem etiam ornatum ex auro, argento, lapidibus preciosis
what-kind also adornment of gold silver stones precious
et sericis vestibus illi monasterio contulerit, difficile est
and silken vestments to-that monastery he-conferred difficult it-is
credere, nisi cui contingit et videre. Vobis quoque,
to-believe except for-one-to-whom it-befalls also to-see for-you also
o pauperes, vel maxima causa dolendi est; nam nunc
O poor-ones even the-greatest cause of-grieving is for now
demum pauperes facti estis, cum paupertatis vestrae
at-last poor made you-have-been since of-poverty your

consolatorem amisistis. Ille vos pavit, ille manibus suis lavit,
the-consoler you-have-lost he you fed he with-hands his washed
ille nuditatem vestram texit. Non ante ianuam, sed ante
he nakedness your covered not before the-gate but before
mensam eius Lazarus iacuit; nec micas, sed regias delicias
the-table his Lazarus lay nor crumbs but royal delicacies
expectavit. In ipsa mensa saniem et foetorem ulcerosi
he-awaited at the-very table the-pus and stench of-the-ulcerous
non abhorruit, cum minister mensae contra foetentem
not he-shrank-from when the-servant of-the-table against the-stinking-one
nares in rugam contraheret, aut obstupparet. In cubiculo
his-nostrils into a-wrinkle would-draw or would-stop-up in the-chamber
eius caeci, claudi, et diversis morbis confecti iacebant; hos
his the-blind the-lame and by-various diseases worn-out lay these
ipsemet excalciabat, hos collocabat, hos de nocte consurgens
he-himself unshod these he-settled these at night rising
tegebat, nec abhorrebat vel eius tactum, quem aegritudo
he-covered nor did-he-shrink-from even his touch whom sickness
compulerat usque ad sordidandum lectum. Iter eius
had-driven all-the-way to soiling the-bed the-journey his
pauperes praecedebant, comitabantur, sequebantur; quorum
the-poor went-before accompanied followed whose
curam tametsi suis intimis commendasset, ipsemet tamen
care although to-his intimates he-had-committed he-himself nevertheless
eos tamquam nulli commendatos curabat. Sed et per
them as-if to-no-one committed cared-for but also through
curtes suas usquequaque stipendia pauperibus disposuerat,
estates his everywhere stipends for-the-poor he-had-arranged
quorum numerum et obitum ipse scire voluit, ut
whose number and death he-himself to-know wished that
et defuncti memoriam ageret, et in eius locum
both of-the-dead-one memory he-might-make and in his place

alterum subrogatum nosset. Si quando sterilitas anni
another substituted he-might-know if ever the-barrenness of-the-year
famem indixit, multa milia pavenda suscepit, vere memor
famine proclaimed many thousands to-be-fed he-took-on truly mindful
verbi Domini praecipientis: Facite vobis amicos de
of-the-word of-the-Lord commanding make for-yourselves friends of
mammona iniquitatis, ut cum defeceritis, recipiant vos
the-mammon of-iniquity that when you-shall-have-failed they-may-receive you
in aeterna tabernacula. Quid putamus quo dolore se
into eternal tabernacles what do-we-think with-what grief themselves
pauperes afficiant, cum haec bona quae enumeravimus, et
the-poor affect when these goods which we-have-enumerated and
multo plura quam enumeravimus, se habuisse, et nunc
many more than we-have-enumerated themselves to-have-had and now
non habere recogitant? Quis enim illis hanc humanitatis
not to-have they-recollect who for on-them this of-humanity
curam impendit? quis querit, ubi aeger cubet, vel quid
care bestows who asks where the-sick-man lies or what
alimenti postulet? quis amplius his misericordiae officiis
of-nourishment he-requires who further to-these of-mercy offices
inservit, quibus Heinricus imperator inservivit? O virum
is-devoted to-which Henry the-emperor was-devoted O man
pietatis et humilitatis laude insignem! Imperavit mundo,
of-piety and of-humility by-the-praise distinguished he-ruled the-world
pauperes illi. Mundus illi, pauperibus ipse ministravit.
the-poor him the-world him to-the-poor he-himself ministered
Haec de bono misericordiae in pauperes, quod multum
these-things about the-good of-mercy toward the-poor which much
amavit et quod ab hominibus abscondere non potuit,
he-loved and which from men to-hide not he-could
non pro dignitate facti, sed pro facultate ingenii
not according-to the-dignity of-the-deed but according-to the-faculty of-wit

primo locuti — quis enim scire posset, quae solo
first we-have-spoken who for to-know could what-things alone
Deo teste peregit? — de aliis quoque virtutibus quibus
God witnessing he-performed about other also virtues in-which
claruit, aliqua dicamus, nam omnia dicere non sufficimus.
he-shone some-things let-us-say for all-things to-say not we-are-sufficient
Nemo miretur, si luctui mortis eius vitae quoque
let-no-one wonder if with-the-mourning of-death his of-life also
eius laeta gesta inmisceam, cum hic mos dolentium sit,
his the-glad deeds I-mingle since this the-way of-those-grieving is
ut cum extinctum amicum lugent, totam eius retro vitam
that when the-extinct friend they-mourn whole his back life
et mores in augmentum doloris sui edisserant. Itaque iuvat
and character for the-increase of-grief their they-recount and-so it-pleases
me de eo scribere, iuvat indulgere dolori, et mortuum
me about him to-write it-pleases to-indulge grief and the-dead-man
flere, qui dum viveret gaudium meum fuit. Ille modo
to-weep-for who while he-lived joy my was he now
personam imperatoris, modo tamquam militis gerebat: ex
the-person of-an-emperor now as-it-were of-a-knight bore by
uno gerendae dignitatis, ex altero documentum praebens
one of-to-be-borne dignity by the-other an-example offering
humilitatis. Tam subtilis ingenii tamque magni consilii fuit,
of-humility so subtle of-wit and-so great of-counsel he-was
ut dum sententia principum, vel in causa decernendi
that when the-opinion of-the-princes either in the-case of-deciding
iuris, vel in tractandis regni negotiis hesitaret, ipse
the-law or in handling of-the-kingdom affairs hesitated he-himself
cito nodum solveret, et quid aequius, quid utilius esset,
quickly the-knot untied and what fairer what more-useful was
tamquam ab ipsius archano sapientiae sumptum, edoceret.
as-if from his-own secret-store of-wisdom taken taught

Intendebat aliorum verbis, ipsemet pauca loquebatur; nec
he-attended to-others' words he-himself little spoke nor
prior ad sententiam erumpebat, sed aliorum expectabat. In
first to an-opinion he-burst-out but of-others he-awaited on
cuius vultum aciem oculorum suorum fixisset, eius animi
whose face the-edge of-eyes his he-had-fixed his of-mind
motus perspiciebat, videbatque tamquam linceis oculis,
the-motions he-perceived and-saw as-if with-lynx-like eyes
sive adversum se cor odii, seu gereret amoris. Nec
whether against himself a-heart of-hatred or he-bore of-love nor
illud á laude vacat, quod in turba procerum caeteris
this of praise is-empty that in the-throng of-nobles than-the-rest
eminentior, et maior se ipso videbatur, et quod in
more-eminent and greater than himself he-seemed and that in
vultu terribile quoddam decus praeferebat, unde intuitus
his-face a-terrible certain glory he-displayed whence the-gaze
aspicientium tamquam fulmine reverberaret, cum inter
of-those-beholding as-if by-a-thunderbolt it-rebounded while among
domesticos suos, et raram turbam, vultu placidus et statura
intimates his and the-thin crowd in-face calm and in-stature
aequalis appareret. Non solum potentes imperii sui metuebant
ordinary he-appeared not only the-mighty of-empire his feared
eum, sed et reges orientis et occidentis ádeo fama eius
him but also the-kings of-the-east and of-the-west so fame his
perterruit, ut ante tributarii sint facti, quam victi. Ipse
terrified that before tributary they-were made than conquered the-very
rex Greciae, ut metum dissimularet, amicitiam eius expetebat,
king of-Greece that fear he-might-dissemble friendship his sought
et quem futurum hostem timuit, muneribus, ne fieret
and whom future an-enemy he-feared with-gifts lest he-should-become
hostis, praevenit. Testatur hoc aurea tabula Spirensis altaris,
an-enemy he-forestalled testifies this the-golden table of-the-Speyer altar

tam artis novitate quam metalli pondere miranda, quam
as-much of-art by-the-novelty as of-metal by-the-weight wonderful which
rex Greciae dum imperatoris votum et studium circa
the-king of-Greece when of-the-emperor the-vow and zeal concerning
Spirense monasterium fervere cognosceret, nobile donum, et
the-Speyer monastery to-glow he-learned a-noble gift and
tam ei qui misit, quam cui mittebatur, dignissimum
both for-him who sent as to-whom it-was-sent most-worthy
transmisit. Sed et rex Affricae, quia potentiam imperatoris
sent but also the-king of-Africa because the-power of-the-emperor
multum timuit, eius fisco multum addidit. Oppressores
much he-feared his to-the-treasury much added oppressors
pauperum oppressit, raptores in direptionem dedit, contra
of-the-poor he-oppressed robbers to plundering he-gave against
se contumaces, contraque suam potentiam se levantes
himself the-contumacious and-against his power themselves raising
adeo retundit, ut in posteris eorum regiae vindictae vestigia
so-much he-beat-down that on descendants their of-royal vengeance the-traces
hodieque compareant. Quo nimirum facto et suis in
even-today appear by-which doubtless deed both for-his-own in
praesenti, et imperii rebus in futurum providit, ut
the-present and of-the-empire for-the-affairs in the-future he-provided that
discant non disturbare pacem, non armis imperium
they-may-learn not to-disturb the-peace not with-arms the-empire
vexare. Hic velim abrumpere stilum; nam ventum est ad
to-harass here I-would-like to-break-off the-pen for come it-was to
factiones, ad fraudes et scelera, de quibus vera scribere
factions to frauds and crimes about which true-things to-write
periculum, falsa crimen est. Hac lupus, hac canis urguet.
a-danger false-things a-crime is here the-wolf there the-dog presses
Quid igitur faciam? Eloquar, an sileam? Manus incipit
what therefore shall-I-do shall-I-speak-out or shall-I-be-silent the-hand begins

et dubitat, scribit et rennuit, notat et delet, ut pene
and hesitates writes and refuses notes and deletes so-that almost
ignorem, quid velim. Sed turpe est, incoeptam materiam
I-know-not what I-wish but shameful it-is the-begun matter
mutilatam relinquere, et caput absque membris pinxisse.
mutilated to-leave and a-head without limbs to-have-painted
Pergam igitur ut coepi, constans et securus inde, quod
I-shall-proceed therefore as I-began steadfast and secure in-this that
fides tua ea mihi spectata est, ut haec scripta nulli
faith your so to-me proven was that these writings to-no-one
detegas, aut siqua foras exierint, auctorem non prodas.
you-will-reveal or if-any outside shall-have-gone the-author not you-will-betray

THE BOY KING AND THE SAXON WAR

Henry succeeds his father as a boy, and the princes take him from his mother and rule through him. Grown, he restores law and justice, and they plot against him. The Saxons rise, nearly catch him, and dig up his son's bones; defeated and exiled, they conspire again with others. His enemies accuse him before Gregory, who bans him and frees his subjects from their oaths; deserted, Henry hurries to meet the pope, is absolved, and forestalls the pope's conference with his foes, whom the author then rebukes.

Cum imperator Heinricus, de quo nobis sermo est, patri
when the-emperor Henry about whom to-us the-speech is to-father
suo, gloriosissimo imperatori, tertio Heinrico, adhuc puer
his most-glorious the-emperor third Henry still a-boy
succederet in regnum; nam illo parvulo pater naturae
succeeded in the-kingdom for him being-a-little-one the-father to-nature
concessit, regno priorem statum adhuc tenente, non bella
yielded the-kingdom its-former state still holding not wars

pacem disturbabant, non classica quietem rumpebant, non
the-peace disturbed not trumpets the-quiet broke not
rapina grassabatur, non fides mentiebatur. Adhuc iusticia
plunder raged not faith lied still justice
sui vigoris, adhuc potestas sui iuris erat. Hunc beatum
of-its-own vigor still power of-its-own right was this happy
regni statum Agnes imperatrix serenissima, virilis ingenii
of-the-kingdom state Agnes the-empress most-serene of-manly wit
femina, multum iuvit, quae una cum filio rem publicam
a-woman much helped who together with her-son the-state public
pari iure gubernavit. Sed quoniam aetas inmatura parum
with-equal right governed but since age immature little
timori est, et dum metus languet, audacia crescit, pueriles
to-fear is and while dread languishes boldness grows the-boyish
anni regis multis suggerebant animum sceleris. Igitur
years of-the-king to-many suggested the-thought of-crime therefore
quisque nitebatur, maiori se aequalis, aut etiam maior
each strove to-a-greater himself equal or even greater
fieri; multorumque potentia scelere crevit, nec legis metus
to-become and-of-many the-power by-crime grew nor of-law dread
ullus erat, quae sub rege parvulo parvam auctoritatem habebat.
any was which under a-king little little authority had
Et ut omnia licentius facere possent, primo puerum
and that all-things more-licentiously to-do they-might-be-able first the-boy
matre spoliabant, cuius maturam sapientiam gravesque
of-his-mother they-despoiled whose mature wisdom and-grave
mores metuebant, illud habentes in causa, non decere
character they-feared that having as cause not to-befit
regnum administrari á femina, cum multae reginae legantur
the-kingdom to-be-administered by a-woman though many queens are-read
administrasse regna virili sapientia. Sed postquam rex
to-have-administered kingdoms with-manly wisdom but after the-king

puer de sinu matris abstractus, in manus principum
a-boy from the-bosom of-his-mother drawn-away into the-hands of-the-princes
nutriendus venit, quicquid illi praescribebant faciendum, ut
to-be-reared came whatever they prescribed to-be-done as
puer fecit: quem volebant, exaltavit, quem volebant, deposuit,
a-boy he-did whom they-wished he-exalted whom they-wished he-deposed
ut regi suo non tam ministrasse, quam imperasse
so-that to-king their not so-much to-have-ministered as to-have-commanded
merito dicantur. Cum regni causam tractabant, non
deservedly they-may-be-said when of-the-kingdom the-cause they-handled not
tam regni quam suae causae consulebant; idque
so-much of-the-kingdom as for-their-own cause they-took-thought and-this
praecipuum eis fuit in omnibus quae agerent, ante omnia
chief to-them was in all-things which they-did before all-things
suum questum facere. Fuit haec perfidia vel maxima, quod
their-own gain to-make was this treachery even the-greatest that
eum quasi sub sigillo servandum, in puerilibus actis suae
him as-if under seal to-be-kept in boyish acts to-his
potestati relinquebant, ut et sic elicerent ab eo quod
power they-left that even thus they-might-draw from him what
affectabant. Sed cum in eam aetatis et ingenii metam
they-were-aiming-at but when to that of-age and of-wit goal
evasisset, ut quid honestum, quid turpe, quid utile, quid non,
he-had-arrived that what honorable what shameful what useful what not
discernere posset, retractans quae suggestione principum
to-distinguish he-could reconsidering what-things by-the-suggestion of-the-princes
inductus gessisset, multa quae gesserat, damnavit; et ipse
induced he-had-done many-things which he-had-done he-condemned and himself
iudex sui factus, ex his mutanda mutavit. Prohibebat
judge of-himself made of these the-things-to-be-changed he-changed he-forbade
quoque bella, violentiam et rapinas; nitebatur pulsam pacem
also wars violence and plunderings he-strove the-banished peace

et iusticiam revocare, neglectas leges restituere, et sceleris
and justice to-recall neglected laws to-restore and of-crime
licentiam resecare. Quos assuetos sceleri per edictum cohercere
the-license to-cut-back those accustomed to-crime by edict to-restrain
non potuit, per censuram legis et ius curiae, mitius
not he-could through the-censure of-the-law and the-right of-the-court more-mildly
tamen quam culpa exigeret, correxit. Quod illi non iusticiam
yet than the-fault demanded he-corrected which they not justice
sed iniuriam reputantes, et qui legem abiecerant, lege
but injury reckoning and who the-law had-cast-off by-law
constringi, et qui per omne nefas ruebant, frena pati
to-be-bound and who through every wickedness rushed the-reins to-suffer
respuentes, qualiter eum vel extinguerent, vel privatum
spurning how him either they-might-extinguish or a-private-man
facerent, consiliis incumbebant; non recolentes se
they-might-make to-counsels applied-themselves not recollecting themselves
debere civibus suis pacem, regno iusticiam, regi fidem.
to-owe to-citizens their peace to-the-kingdom justice to-the-king faith
Igitur Saxones, gens dura, bellis aspera, tam praeceps
therefore the-Saxons a-people hard in-wars harsh as headlong
ad arma quam audax, vendicans sibi praerogativam
to arms as bold claiming for-themselves the-prerogative
laudis ex incepto furoris, repente super regem armis
of-praise from the-onset of-fury suddenly upon the-king with-arms
ruebant. Qui cum paucis contra innumeros armatos confligere
rushed who with few against countless armed-men to-engage
periculosum estimans, vix elapsus vitam laudi, salutem
dangerous deeming scarcely escaped life to-praise safety
fortunae praetulit. Itaque videntes inceptum suum votis
to-fortune preferred and-so seeing undertaking their to-wishes
suis non respondisse, ossa filii regis — nec dum enim
their not to-have-answered the-bones of-the-son of-the-king not yet for

imperator factus erat — ó inhumanam mentem, ó probrosam
emperor made he-had-been O inhuman mind O shameful
vindictam! effodere. Qua utraque iniuria gravissima rex
vengeance they-dug-up by-which each injury most-grave the-king
commotus, exercitum contra gentem illam duxit, conflixit,
moved an-army against nation that led engaged
vicit; vicit inquam aciem contra se instructam, non
conquered conquered I-say the-battle-line against him drawn-up not
obstinationem erectam. Nam licet eos in pugna congressos
the-obstinacy raised for although them in battle engaged
vinceret, victos fugaret, fugatos persequeretur; licet bona
he-conquered conquered routed routed pursued although goods
eorum devastaret, munitiones everteret, et omnia quae
their he-laid-waste fortifications overturned and all-things which
victorem libet, faceret, non tamen ad deditionem cogi
a-victor it-pleases did not yet to surrender to-be-forced
potuerunt. Iterum cum inde digressus, reparato in brevi
they-could again when thence departed repaired in brief
exercitu eos invaderet, diffidentes viribus suis, utpote in
an-army them he-attacked distrusting strength their as-being in
priori bello gravissime contusis, quod saluti proximum
the-former war most-severely bruised what to-safety nearest
erat, se dedidere, sperantes regem sola deditione
was themselves they-surrendered hoping the-king by-sole surrender
contentum, gratiam suam facile donaturum. Sed longe praeter
content favor his easily about-to-grant but far beyond
spem evenit; nam rex eos exilio addictos, in alienas
hope it-turned-out for the-king them to-exile consigned into foreign
terras misit, ubi dura custodia constricti, relaxationis
lands sent where by-harsh custody bound of-release
edictum expectarent. De quo exilio alii fuga elapsi, alii
the-edict they-might-await from which exile some by-flight escaped others

propter pecuniam á custodibus dimissi, dum ad patriam et
for money by the-guards released when to homeland and
domum suam repedassent, recenti coniuratione se invicem
home their they-had-returned by-a-new conspiracy themselves mutually
obligabant, ut parati essent ante mori, quam denuo
they-bound that ready they-should-be sooner to-die than anew
deditione subici. Sed et validior eorum coniuratio facta
by-surrender to-be-subjected but also stronger their conspiracy made
est, quia nonnulli Longobardorum, Francorum, Bawariorum,
was because some of-the-Lombards of-the-Franks of-the-Bavarians
Suevorum, data et accepta fide, illis conglutinati sunt,
of-the-Swabians given and received faith to-them cemented were
qui regem bellis undique pulsarent. Videntes autem regem
who the-king with-wars on-all-sides should-beat seeing moreover the-king
bellis tangi posse, non deici, vexari, non
by-wars to-be-touched to-be-able not to-be-cast-down to-be-harassed not
superari: quippe cuius robur adhuc erat inexpugnabile: ut
to-be-overcome since whose strength still was unconquerable that
vires eius extenuarent, confictis conscriptisque super eo
the-strength his they-might-weaken invented and-written-down against him
criminibus, quae pessima et inmundissima potuit odium
crimes which worst and most-unclean could hatred
et livor excogitare, et quae mihi scribenti tibique legenti
and envy to-devise and which to-me writing and-to-you reading
nausiam parerent, si ea ponerem, vera falsis miscentes,
nausea would-produce if them I-set-down true-things with-false mixing
apud Romanum pontificem Gregorium eum deferebant: non
before the-Roman pontiff Gregory him they-denounced not
decere tam flagitiosum, plus notum crimine quam nomine,
to-befit so shameful-a-man more known by-crime than by-name
regnare, maxime cum sibi regiam dignitatem Roma non
to-reign most since to-him the-royal dignity Rome not

contulerit; oportere Romae suum ius in constituendis regibus
had-conferred to-be-fitting to-Rome its right in setting-up kings
reddi; provideret apostolicus et Roma regem ex consilio
to-be-restored should-provide the-apostolic(-lord) and Rome a-king from the-counsel
principum, cuius vita et sapientia tanto congrueret honori.
of-the-princes whose life and wisdom to-so-great should-befit an-honor
Qua surreptione delusus apostolicus, simul et honore
by-which deceit deluded the-apostolic(-lord) at-once and by-the-honor
creandi regis, quem sibi fallaciter obtulerant, impulsus,
of-creating a-king which to-him falsely they-had-offered impelled
regem banno innodavit, et episcopis aliisque regni
the-king with-the-ban bound and to-the-bishops and-other of-the-kingdom
principibus ut á communione excommunicati regis se
princes that from the-communion of-the-excommunicated king themselves
retraherent, denunciavit; se cito venturum in Teutonicas
they-should-withdraw announced himself soon about-to-come into the-Teutonic
partes, ubi de negotiis aecclesiastis et potissimum de
parts where about affairs ecclesiastical and chiefly about
regno tractaretur. Quin et hoc addidit: absolvit omnes
the-kingdom it-should-be-treated nay also this he-added he-absolved all
a iuramento, qui fidem regi iuraverant, ut contra eum
from the-oath who fealty to-the-king had-sworn that against him
impelleret absolutio, quos fidei tenuit obligatio. Quod
should-drive the-absolution those-whom of-faith held the-obligation which
factum multis displicuit — si cui displicere licet, quod
deed to-many displeased if to-anyone to-displease is-allowed what
apostolicus fecit — et asserebant tam inefficaciter quam
the-apostolic(-lord) did and they-asserted as ineffectually as
illicite factum, quod factum est. Sed non ausim assertiones
illicitly done what done was but not I-would-dare the-assertions
eorum ponere, ne videar cum eis apostolici factum
their to-set-down lest I-seem with them of-the-apostolic(-lord) the-deed

refellere. Mox episcopi, tam illi quos amor quam quos timor
to-refute soon the-bishops both those whom love as whom fear
in partem regis traxerat, metuentes ordini suo, ab eius
to the-side of-the-king had-drawn fearing for-order their from his
auxilio plerique se retrahebant; quod et maior pars
help most themselves withdrew which also the-greater part
procerum factitabat. Tum vero videns rem suam in arto
of-the-nobles kept-doing then indeed seeing matter his in a-strait
sitam, inito tam occulto quam astuto consilio, subitum
placed having-taken as-much secret as cunning counsel a-sudden
et inopinatum iter in occursum apostolici arripuit,
and unexpected journey into the-meeting the-apostolic(-lord) he-seized
unoque facto duo peregit, scilicet et banni solutionem
and-by-one deed two-things accomplished namely both of-the-ban the-release
accepit, et suspectum sibi colloquium apostolici cum
he-received and the-suspected by-him conference of-the-apostolic(-lord) with
adversariis suis ipse medius intercepit. Pro imposito sibi
adversaries his he-himself in-the-middle intercepted for imposed on-him
crimine parum respondit, quia ad accusationem inimicorum
crime little he-answered because to the-accusation of-enemies
suorum, etsi vera fuisset, non sibi respondendum asseruit.
his even-if true it-had-been not by-himself to-be-answered he-asserted
Quid vobis profuit hoc egisse, ut banno illigaretur,
what to-you has-it-profited this to-have-done that with-the-ban he-should-be-bound
cum de banno solutus potentia sua potenter utatur? Quid
since from the-ban released power his powerfully he-uses what
vobis profuit, eum fictis criminibus accusasse, cum
to-you has-it-profited him by-feigned crimes to-have-accused since
accusationem vestram facili responso, ut ventus pulverem,
the-accusation your by-easy answer as the-wind the-dust
dissipaverit? Immo quae dementia vos contra regem vestrum
he-has-scattered nay what madness you against king your

et orbis rectorem armavit? Nihil coniurata vestra malignitas
and of-the-world the-ruler has-armed nothing conspired your malignity
proficit, nihil peragit. Quem Dei manus in regno
accomplishes nothing it-achieves him-whom of-God the-hand in the-kingdom
firmavit, vestra deicere non poterit. Ubi fides, quam illi
has-strengthened yours to-cast-down not will-be-able where the-faith which to-him
iurastis? Quare beneficiorum, quae regia liberalitate contulit
you-swore why of-the-benefits which by-royal liberality he-conferred
in vos, obliti estis? Utimini vel adhuc sano consilio, non
on you forgetful you-are use at-least still sound counsel not
furore; poeniteat vos incepti, ne forte fortior vobis
fury let-it-repent you of-the-undertaking lest perhaps a-stronger on-you
superveniens, vincat vos et pedibus suis conculcet vos, et
coming-upon conquer you and with-feet his trample you and
ea vindicta feriat, quae futuris saeculis demonstret, quid
with-that vengeance strike which to-future ages may-show what
regia manus valeat. Saltem vos ó episcopi videte ne pereatis
the-royal hand can-do at-least you O bishops see lest you-perish
de via iusta, videte ne transgressores promissae fidei
from the-way just see lest transgressors of-the-promised faith
fiatis; alioquin quid consequatur vos, ipsi nostis.
you-become otherwise what may-follow you yourselves know

Henry returns from the pope to find Rudolf made king over him; Rudolf flees to Saxony, and Henry ravages Bavaria and Swabia with restraint. At Würzburg, besieged by Rudolf, hired knights turn on Henry, and Rudolf's side takes the city, which Henry soon recovers; later Rudolf loses in battle the right hand that swore fealty and dies. Hermann, the next anti-king, dies under a woman's millstone in a mock raid on a castle, Ekbert is killed in a mill by the king's secret loyalists, and Henry's fortunes rise.

Igitur rex ab apostolico regressus, benedictione pro
therefore the-king from the-apostolic(-lord) returned a-blessing for
maledictione accepta, Roudolfum ducem super se regem
a-curse received Rudolf the-duke over himself king
creatum invenit; qui audita regressionis eius fama, ante
created found who having-heard of-the-return his the-report sooner
paratus ad fugam quam ad pugnam, ante pulsus quam
ready for flight than for fight sooner driven-out than
victus, in Saxoniam fugit. Facile est regnum accipere,
conquered into Saxony fled easy it-is a-kingdom to-receive
difficile tueri. Sed nulli mirum sit, virum in rebus bellicis
difficult to-guard but to-no-one wonderful be-it a-man in affairs warlike
exercitatum et strennuum nunc fugisse, quia sepe iustior
practiced and vigorous now to-have-fled because often the-juster
et victrix causa fortes in metum mittit et in fugam. O
and victorious cause the-brave into fear sends and into flight O
avariciam pestem pessimam, quae bonos mores transvertit,
avarice plague worst which good character overturns
et sepe ipsas virtutes ad vicia trahit. Iste Roudolfus dux
and often the-very virtues to vices drags this Rudolf a-duke
eximius, vir magnae auctoritatis et laudis in toto regno,
outstanding a-man of-great authority and praise in the-whole kingdom

veri rectique tenax, fortis in armis, denique spectatus
of-the-true and-right tenacious brave in arms finally proven
in omni genere virtutum, iste inquam, avaricia quae
in every kind of-virtues this-man I-say by-avarice which
vincit omnia victus, et supplantator domini sui factus,
conquers all-things conquered and supplanter of-lord his made
fidem incerto postposuit honori. Fuere tamen, qui
faith to-uncertain put-after honor there-were nevertheless those-who
dicerent ab apostolico eum inmissum, nec umquam tantae
said by the-apostolic(-lord) him sent-in nor ever of-such
virtutis virum magis avariciae quam consilio cessisse; et
virtue a-man more to-avarice than to-counsel to-have-yielded and
hoc in argumentum sibi sumebant, quod apostolicus
this as proof for-themselves they-took that the-apostolic(-lord)
tacuit, dum post absolutionem regis Roudolfus regnum
was-silent when after the-absolution of-the-king Rudolf the-kingdom
invasit, iuxta illud comici: Qui tacet, satis laudat.
invaded according-to that of-the-comic-poet who is-silent enough praises
Itaque rex cedente Roudolfo, cuius caput, si deprehensus
and-so the-king yielding Rudolf whose head if caught
esset, vindex gladius digne rotaret, Bawariam,
he-had-been an-avenging sword deservedly would-have-rolled Bavaria
Sueviam invasit, et coniurationis adversum se sotios
Swabia invaded and of-the-conspiracy against himself the-partners
vastavit, munitiones eorum fregit; nec tamen pro
laid-waste fortifications their broke nor yet according-to
iniuriae suae materia se vindicabat, sed sciens in ultione
of-injury his the-measure himself he-avenged but knowing in vengeance
freno uti, longe infra metam culpae cohibebat habenas
the-curb to-use far below the-limit of-the-fault he-held-in the-reins
vindictae. Sed Roudolfus ut dedecus fugae virtutis facto
of-vengeance but Rudolf that the-disgrace of-flight of-valor by-a-deed

recompensaret, Wirziburgensem civitatem obsedit, ubi tamen
he-might-compensate Würzburg the-city besieged where yet
fraude magis quam virtute pugnatum est. Nam cum rex
by-fraud more than by-valor fought it-was for when the-king
ad propellendum hostem exercitum convocasset, instructa
for driving-back the-enemy an-army had-summoned drawn-up
ambarum partium acie, et primis inter se praelia
of-both sides the-line and the-first among themselves battles
miscentibus, quidam equites regiae partis, mercede conducti,
mingling certain horsemen of-the-royal party with-pay hired
qui se regis lateri quasi fidi clientes applicuerant,
who themselves of-the-king to-the-side as-if faithful clients had-attached
subito in ipsum arma verterunt; sed aere munito
suddenly against himself (their)-arms turned but with-bronze fortified
corpori livorem, non vulnus inflixerunt. Heu miserrimi,
on-the-body a-bruise not a-wound they-inflicted alas most-wretched-men
quibus pretium et sceleris causa fuit et necis, quos uno
for-whom the-price both of-crime the-cause was and of-death whom one
in loco et crimen involvit et vindicta; nam eos tot
in place both crime enveloped and vengeance for them so-many
vindices dextrae in frusta concidebant, ut in eis humani
avenging right-hands into bits cut that in them of-a-human
cadaveris figura periret. Fit tumultus, exoritur clamor,
corpse the-shape perished there-arises a-tumult arises a-shout
spargitur verbum, regem interfectum; quo verbo perterritus
is-spread the-word the-king killed by-which word terrified
exercitus fugit, hostis insequitur, et quoniam in equis
the-army flees the-enemy follows and since on horses
equitum salus praeter paucos constabat, solis peditibus
of-the-horsemen the-safety except a-few rested on-the-only foot-soldiers
miserabile fatum incubuit; ideoque victoria quanto maioris
a-wretched fate fell and-therefore the-victory the of-greater

sceleris, tanto minoris tituli fuit. Sic hostis urbe capta,
crime the of-less title was thus the-enemy the-city taken
impositoque praesidio, in Saxoniam regressus est. Quid
and-imposed a-garrison into Saxony returned has what
improbe tibi profuit, vel indiscreta caedes fugientis
wicked-one to-you has-it-profited either the-indiscriminate slaughter of-the-fleeing
vulgi, vel fortuna captae urbis, cum nec urbe diu,
mob or the-fortune of-the-captured city since neither of-the-city long
numquam autem regno potiaris? Rex enim brevi
never moreover of-the-kingdom you-may-be-master the-king for in-a-short
post tempore cum exercitu reversus, ereptam urbem recepit;
after time with an-army returned the-snatched city recovered
nam hi quibus provincia tuendae urbis tradita fuerat, ex
for those to-whom the-province of-guarding the-city handed-over had-been from
urbe profugerant. Postea Saxoniam sepius cum exercitu
the-city had-fled afterward Saxony quite-often with an-army
ingressus, aut victor aut aequa manu recessit; sed ad
having-entered either victor or with-equal hand he-withdrew but at
ultimum reversus, tam notanda quam felici victoria vicit,
last returned as notable as happy by-a-victory he-conquered
magnumque mundo documentum datum est, ut nemo
and-a-great to-the-world lesson given was that no-one
contra dominum suum consurgat. Nam abscisa Roudolfus
against lord his should-rise for cut-off Rudolf
dextera dignissimam periurii vindictam demonstravit, qui
by-the-right-hand the-most-worthy of-perjury vengeance showed who
fidem domino suo regi iuratam violare non timuit; et
the-faith to-lord his the-king sworn to-violate not feared and
tamquam alia vulnera non sufficerent ad mortem, accessit
as-if other wounds not sufficed for death there-was-added
etiam huius membri poena, ut per poenam agnosceretur
also of-this limb the-penalty that through the-penalty might-be-recognized

et culpa. Sed et aliud notandum in illa victoria contigit,
also the-fault but also another-thing notable in that victory happened
videlicet quod tam victor, quam victus exercitus fugit;
namely that as-much the-victor as the-vanquished army fled
nimirum hoc ordinante desuper divina clementia, ut post
doubtless this arranging from-above divine clemency that after
ruinam capitis, ex alterna fuga tolleretur nefas alternae
the-fall of-the-head by mutual flight might-be-removed the-wickedness of-mutual
caedis. Sed gens dura nec damno monita est, nec signo;
slaughter but the-people hard neither by-loss warned was nor by-sign
quin potius ut obstinatione vinceret, quod manu non
but rather that by-obstinacy it-might-conquer what by-hand not
poterat, Herimannum novum sibi regem constituit, qui et
it-could Hermann new for-itself as-king set-up who also
ipse novo modo periit. Nam cum Saxones eum de terra
himself in-a-new way perished for when the-Saxons him from land
sua proturbarent, quicquid illud fuerit, quod eis in illo
their were-driving-out whatever that was which to-them in him
displicuit, reversus in patriam suam, portans inane nomen
displeased returned into homeland his carrying the-empty name
regis, ad Herimannum Trevirensem episcopum se contulit,
of-king to Hermann of-Trier bishop himself he-betook
quem etiam ad ausum sentiendi contra regem inexpugnabilis
whom also to the-daring of-thinking against the-king the-impregnable
munitionum firmitas impulerat. Quanta potentia regis, qui
of-fortifications strength had-impelled how-great the-power of-a-king who
alendus fuerat, non ex suis, sed ex opibus alienis!
to-be-fed was not from his-own but from resources others'
Quadam die cum iter ageret, incidit animo suo
on-a-certain day when a-journey he-was-making there-fell-into mind his
iocus ille, ut ad castellum quo ituri erant, sub specie
a-jest that that to the-castle whither about-to-go they-were under the-guise

hostium ruerent, et quae audacia, quae virtus animis
of-enemies they-should-rush and what boldness what valor in-the-minds
defendentium inesset, temptarent. Quam mirabilem viam,
of-the-defenders was-present they-should-test how wonderful a-way
quam inopinam sepe invenit quod futurum est, ut fiat!
how unexpected often finds what about-to-be is that it-may-happen
Cumque portam absque claustris et absque custode repertam
and-when the-gate without bars and without guard found
irrumperent, aliis qui intus erant, raptis armis viriliter
they-burst-into some who within were having-snatched arms manfully
contra procurrentibus, aliis latebras enerviter queritantibus,
against(-them) running-forward others hiding-places feebly seeking
femina, sexu femina non animo, quae in turrim evaserat,
a-woman in-sex a-woman not in-mind who into a-tower had-escaped
molarem in caput regis demisit. Et sic ille manu
a-millstone onto the-head of-the-king let-fall and thus he by-a-hand
feminea, ut mors eius turpior esset, occubuit. Sed ut
womanly that the-death his more-shameful might-be fell but that
hoc dedecus dealbarent, feminae factum in virilem
this disgrace they-might-whitewash of-the-woman deed onto a-manly
personam ex composito transtulerunt.
person by agreement they-transferred
Post hanc regum fortunam in creatione regum diu haesitatum
after this of-kings fortune in the-creation of-kings long hesitated
est, et casus praeteriti metus erat futuri. Vicit tandem
it-was and the-fall of-the-past the-fear was of-the-future conquered at-last
cupiditas, et Ekkibertum marchionem ad ambitum regni
greed and Ekbert the-margrave to the-pursuit of-the-kingdom
forti manu impulit. Qui tamen in morte sero didicit,
with-strong hand drove who yet in death late learned
quod alter ex alterius damnis instrui possit. Urbs erat
that one from of-another the-losses to-be-instructed can a-city there-was

in Saxonia, quae quia fortunam regis prospero ire
in Saxony which because the-fortune of-the-king with-prosperous to-go
cursu videbat, in partes eius se converterat, praesumens
course it-saw to the-side his itself had-turned presuming
fiduciam et ex loci sui firmitate, et ex regia subventione.
confidence both from of-place its the-strength and from royal aid
Quod indigne ferentes Saxonum proceres, urbem obsidione
which indignantly bearing of-the-Saxons the-nobles the-city with-a-siege
vallabant. Marchio vero Ekkibertus, qui spe potiundi
surrounded the-margrave but Ekbert who with-the-hope of-gaining
regni intumuerat, ut se accommodaret ad id quod
the-kingdom had-swelled that himself he-might-fit to that which
affectabat, maiori super omnes robore ad obsidionem illam
he-aimed-at with-greater over all strength to siege that
ibat, praemissaque multitudine cum paucis ipse sequebatur.
went and-sent-ahead a-multitude with few he-himself followed
Quem deviantem a publica via, ne forte incideret in
whom turning-aside from the-public road lest perhaps he-should-fall among
hostes — quis enim tam potens qui hoste careat, aut
enemies who for so powerful who an-enemy may-lack or
qui hostiles insidias non metuat? — latens semita per
who hostile ambushes not may-fear a-hidden path through
quoddam arbustum duxit. Quam occulta iudicia tua Deus,
a-certain thicket led how hidden judgments your God
quam miro ordine et abscondis quae facturus es,
with-how wonderful order both you-hide what-things about-to-do you-are
et aperis quae abscondisti! Iam meridianus ardor solis
and reveal what-things you-have-hidden now the-noonday heat of-the-sun
equos equorumque sessores urebat, et ut fit, sitim aestus
the-horses and-of-the-horses the-riders burned and as happens thirst the-heat
accendebat. Praeterea tam gravis sopor fessis obrepit, ut
kindled besides so heavy drowsiness on-the-weary creeps that

colla somno languida penderent, et equi frenis non
(their)-necks with-sleep languid hung and the-horses by-the-reins not
flexi liberam viam carperent. Haut procul in recessu saltus
turned the-free way were-taking not far in a-recess of-the-glade
solitarium molendinum conspexere, quo divertentes sopori
a-solitary mill they-beheld to-which turning-aside to-sleep
se dedere, misso interim molendinario, qui de villa
themselves they-gave sent meanwhile the-miller who from the-village
potum sitientibus afferret. Qui dum imposito scapulis
drink to-the-thirsty should-bring who while placed on-shoulders
suis utre festinaret, aliquos scutatos ad praedictam
his a-wineskin he-was-hastening some shielded-men to the-aforesaid
obsidionem tendentes obvios habuit, qui erant occulte
siege making-their-way meeting he-had who were secretly
fideles regis, licet adversae partis. A quibus interrogatus,
faithful to-the-king though of-the-opposing party by whom asked
unde prodiret, quo tenderet, cur tam anhelus properaret,
whence he-came-forth whither he-made-his-way why so breathless he-hurried
nesciens celare quod sciebat, hospitem suum et causam
not-knowing-how to-conceal what he-knew guest his and the-cause
itineris indicavit. Qui stupefacti, seu metu, seu potius
of-his-journey he-indicated who astonished whether by-fear or rather
gaudio, versantes inter se quid agerent, quid periculi,
by-joy turning-over among themselves what they-should-do what of-danger
quid contra premii, quid virtutis, quid laudis, quid
what on-the-other-hand of-reward what of-valor what of-praise what
fidelitatis inesset, si tam magnum hostem regis ferirent:
of-fidelity there-was if so great an-enemy of-the-king they-should-strike
occasionem illam non frustra sibi oblatam, maximam
the-occasion that not in-vain to-themselves offered the-greatest
virtutem per maxima discrimina probari: incitatis alternatim
valor through the-greatest perils to-be-proved roused in-turn

animis, inmissis equis ad molendinum properabant, sed
their-minds let-go (their)-horses to the-mill hastened but
pervenerunt ante votis quam equis. Incepta est pugna,
they-arrived sooner by-wishes than by-horses begun was a-fight
quae diu dura fuit et dubia, quia virtute pares et numero
which long hard was and doubtful because in-valor equal and in-number
congressi, hi pro laude, illi pro vita pugnabant. Regis
engaged these for praise those for life fought of-the-king
tamen fortuna vicit, et hostis ferocissimus, non in
nevertheless the-fortune conquered and the-enemy most-ferocious not in
acie sed in molendino peremptus, turpiter iacuit. Felix
the-battle-line but in a-mill slain shamefully lay happy
nimium es, et multi semper nominis mola, ad quam
too-much you-are and of-much always name O-mill to which
trahit homines non tam tuum volubile officium, quam fama;
draws men not so-much your revolving office as fame
quae et molendo pugnam illam narras, et narrando molis.
which both by-grinding fight that you-tell and by-telling grind
Sic ille conventus procerum confusus, procinctum solvit,
thus that assembly of-the-nobles confounded its-war-array dissolved
sic ab obsidione infecto negotio recessit. Itaque res
thus from the-siege unfinished the-business withdrew and-so the-affairs
regis in altiorem et feliciorem statum se cottidie
of-the-king to a-higher and happier state themselves daily
promovebant; adversariorum autem eius deorsum vergebant,
advanced of-the-adversaries moreover his downward inclined
et omne eorum inceptum in turpem exitum desinebat.
and every their undertaking into a-shameful outcome ended

His enemies accuse Henry again, and Gregory bans him a second time. Henry marches on Rome, takes it when a shield-bearer finds the wall unguarded, and installs Clement as pope, who crowns him emperor. A plot to drop a stone on him in a Roman oratory kills only the plotter. Rome rebels when his garrison dies, and Conrad, left in Italy against Matilda, crowns himself at her urging. Henry has his younger son Henry made heir, Conrad dies, and the enemies make peace.

Cum ergo cernerent nullum se habere successum, nec
when therefore they-perceived no themselves to-have success neither
in armis, nec in electione regum, iterum se conviciis
in arms nor in the-election of-kings again themselves with-abuse
armaverunt, et eum apud apostolicum praeter alia multa et
they-armed and him before the-apostolic(-lord) besides other many and
nefanda criminati sunt, quod reges christianissimos,
unspeakable-things accused they-have that the-kings most-Christian
quos ipsi non sine auctoritate apostolici creassent,
whom they-themselves not without the-authority of-the-apostolic(-lord) had-created
ille ob crimen suum extorris a regno factus, occidisset,
he for crime his banished from the-kingdom made had-killed
sanguine regnum usurpasset, igne, praeda, ferro
with-blood the-kingdom had-usurped with-fire with-plunder with-the-sword
cuncta vastasset, et tyrannidem suam adversus aecclesiam et
all-things had-laid-waste and tyranny his against the-church and
regnum omnibus modis exercuisset. Ad quorum criminationem
the-kingdom in-all ways had-practiced at whose accusation
apostolicus eum iterum banno, ut ipsi iactabant,
the-apostolic(-lord) him again with-the-ban as they-themselves boasted
illigavit. Sed non magni ponderis ille bannus habebatur, eo
bound but not of-great weight that ban was-held by-that
quod non rationis sed arbitrii, non amoris sed odii esse
that not of-reason but of-will-alone not of-love but of-hatred to-be

videretur. Cernens autem rex, apostolicum ad hoc tendere,
it-seemed perceiving moreover the-king the-apostolic(-lord) to this to-tend
ut se regno privaret, nec alia sui oboedientia
that himself of-the-kingdom he-should-deprive nor with-other his obedience
contentum, nisi ut regno renunciaret, ex oboedientia
content except that the-kingdom he-should-renounce from obedience
in rebellionem, ex humilitate in tumorem relabi coactus,
into rebellion from humility into swelling to-slip-back compelled
hoc apostolico facere parabat, quod apostolicus sibi
this to-the-apostolic(-lord) to-do he-prepared which the-apostolic(-lord) to-himself
faciendum intenderat. Cessa obsecro, rex gloriose, cessa ab
to-be-done had-intended cease I-beseech king glorious cease from
hoc molimine, ut aecclesiasticum caput de suo culmine
this effort that the-ecclesiastical head from its summit
deicias, et in reddenda iniuria te reum facias.
you-should-cast-down and in returning injury you guilty you-should-make
Iniuriam pati, felicitatis est; reddere, criminis. Querebat
injury to-suffer of-happiness is to-return(-it) of-crime sought
itaque rex causas et occasiones, qualiter eum eiceret;
and-so the-king causes and occasions how him he-might-cast-out
inventumque est, eum Romanam sedem olim abiuratam
and-found-it was him the-Roman see formerly abjured
insedisse, quam iccirco abiuraverit, quia ad eam,
to-have-occupied which for-that-reason he-had-abjured because to it
dum archidiaconus esset, adhuc vivente domino suo per
while archdeacon he-was still living lord his through
ambitionem aspirare voluerit. Utrum haec vera sint an
ambition to-aspire he-had-wished whether these-things true be or
falsa, parum comperi. Alii asserebant, alii figmentum esse
false little I-have-learned some asserted others a-fiction to-be
dicebant; utrisque Roma fuit in argumentum: his, quod
said for-both Rome was as proof for-these that

Roma mundi domina numquam pateretur tale nefas; illis,
Rome of-the-world mistress never would-suffer such wickedness for-those
quod ea cupiditatis ancilla facile permitteret ob precium
that she of-greed the-handmaid easily would-permit for a-price
omne nefas. Mihi autem in medio res relinquenda
every wickedness for-me moreover in the-middle the-matter to-be-left
est, cum incerta nec possim defendere, nec ausim affirmare.
is since uncertain neither can-I to-defend nor dare-I to-affirm
Igitur cum exercitu rex Romam pergebat, proterens in via
therefore with an-army the-king to-Rome went trampling on the-way
quicquid obstabat. Oppida fregit, tumida pressit, ardua
whatever stood-in-the-way towns he-broke the-swollen he-pressed-down the-lofty
curvavit, factiones dissipavit. In cuius adventu Roma persuasa,
he-bent factions he-scattered at whose coming Rome persuaded
quae debuerat honores, arma, tamquam Poenus Hannibal
who had-been-bound honors arms as-if Punic Hannibal
Alpes transcendisset, parabat, et regi suo velut hosti
the-Alps had-crossed prepared and to-the-king her as to-an-enemy
portas praecludebat. Unde rex iusta commotus indignatione,
the-gates shut whence the-king by-just moved indignation
Urbem obsidione, qua res postulabat, occlusit, et qui
the-City with-a-siege as the-matter demanded shut-in and who
sibi aditum, illis exitum negavit. Missi circumquaque,
to-him entrance to-those exit denied sent round-about
qui castella frangerent, villas everterent, bona diriperent;
those-who castles should-break villas overturn goods plunder
provinciaeque nocuit exterius, quod Roma se clauserat
and-to-the-province harmed outside that Rome herself had-shut
interius. Foris bella, intus metus erat. Undique machinae
inside outside wars within fear there-was on-all-sides engines
surgebant; hinc murum aries pulsabat, inde miles scalis
rose here the-wall the-ram beat there the-soldier by-ladders

ascendere parabat. Econtra qui in Urbe erant, tela,
to-climb prepared on-the-other-hand those-who in the-City were darts
saxa, praeustas sudes, ignemque iactabant; interdum egressi,
stones fire-hardened stakes and-fire threw sometimes having-gone-out
comminus committebant. Utrimque fortiter pugnatum est;
at-close-quarters they-engaged on-both-sides bravely fought it-was
hos causa, illos periculum audaces fecit. Quadam die, cum
these the-cause those the-danger bold made on-a-certain day when
exercitus uterque pugna aestuque fessus, circa meridiem
army each by-fight and-by-heat wearied about noon
sopori se dedisset, et nec speculator, ut fortuna voluit,
to-sleep itself had-given and not-even a-watchman as fortune willed
vigilaret, unus ex scutariis propius ad murum, ut pila
was-awake one of the-shield-bearers nearer to the-wall that javelins
legeret, accessit. Cumque erectis et intentis auribus
he-might-gather approached and-when with-pricked and strained ears
explorasset, intus neminem adesse — nam murum et
he-had-explored within no-one to-be-present for the-wall and
propugnacula vacua cernebat — adiutus et animi confidentia,
battlements empty he-saw helped both of-mind by-the-confidence
et corporis levitate, manibus et pedibus sursum enitebatur,
and of-body by-the-lightness with-hands and feet upward he-strove
donec tandem muri summitatem apprehendit. Tum vero,
until at-last of-the-wall the-top he-seized then indeed
cum iactatis circumquaque oculis neminem videret, inter
when cast round-about his-eyes no-one he-saw between
spem et metum positus, toto corporis motu sociis
hope and fear placed with-whole of-body motion to-his-comrades
innuebat, vixque se a clamore, cum tardius innuentem
he-signaled and-scarcely himself from shouting since rather-slowly him-signaling
attenderent, abstinebat. Qui raptis armis et scalis
they-noticed he-restrained who having-seized arms and ladders

properantes, citius, ut aiunt, dicto murum superantes,
hastening more-quickly as they-say than-said the-wall surmounting
captam Urbem sero defendentes interficiunt, capiunt, fugant.
captured the-City too-late defending they-kill capture rout
Dedignabatur iam rex reclusum portarum aditum, ubi
disdained now the-king the-unbarred of-the-gates entry where
et sequens a praeeunte tardaretur, et praecedens a
both the-following-man by the-one-going-ahead would-be-slowed and the-preceding by
sequente premeretur; sed in ultionem temerariae praeclusionis
the-following be-pressed but in vengeance for-the-rash shutting-out
iussit, ut fracto muro tam latum ingressum sibi panderent,
he-ordered that broken the-wall so broad an-entry for-him they-should-open
qua totus exercitus aequato iunctoque latere se simul
where the-whole army leveled and-joined side itself at-once
inmergeret. Igitur ubique mors, ubique luctus erat; Roma
might-plunge therefore everywhere death everywhere grief there-was Rome
contremuit, dum impulsa turrium altitudo corruit. Fugit
trembled while struck of-the-towers the-height collapsed fled
apostolicus, et qui omnes in periculum impulerat, omnes
the-apostolic(-lord) and he-who all into danger had-driven all
in periculo deseruit. Tandem Romam praesumptionis suae
in danger deserted at-last Rome of-presumption her
poenituit, et quae prius meruisse poterat, ut a rege donis
it-repented and which before to-have-deserved could that by the-king with-gifts
honoraretur, nunc ingenti pecunia apud regem vix optinuit,
she-be-honored now with-huge money from the-king scarcely obtained
ne tota subverteretur. Mox sedatis omnibus, rex causam
that-not wholly she-be-overturned soon calmed all-things the-king the-cause
cur venisset, in publicum protulit; quod de apostolico
why he-had-come into public brought-forth what about the-apostolic(-lord)
crimen accepisset, retulit, multisque hoc ita factum confessis,
crime he-had-received he-related and-many this so done having-confessed

Clementem papam ad electionem omnium instituit; a quo
Clement as-pope by the-election of-all he-installed by whom
ipse communi omnium favore consecratus imperator,
he-himself with-the-common of-all favor consecrated emperor
et patricius factus, Romae se per aliquod tempus, dum
and patrician made at-Rome himself for some time while
omnia in solidam reformaret concordiam, continuit.
all-things into solid he-was-restoring concord kept
Nec praetereundum, quod et relatio fidelium personarum
nor to-be-passed-over what both the-report of-faithful persons
in Teutonicas partes diffamavit, et ipsa Roma asserit.
into the-Teutonic parts spread and itself Rome asserts
Imperator consueverat quoddam oratorium orationis causa
the-emperor had-been-accustomed a-certain oratory of-prayer for-the-sake
frequentare, et nullum diem, quin veniret, praetermittere.
to-frequent and no day without his-coming to-let-pass
Elegerat autem sibi in eodem oratorio locum orationi
had-chosen moreover for-himself in the-same oratory a-place for-prayer
familiarem, ubi tanto intentius, quanto secretius orationi
familiar where the more-intently the more-secretly to-prayer
vacaret. Hanc eius consuetudinem dum quidam
he-might-give-himself this his custom while a-certain-man
profanae mentis attenderet, seu propria seu potius aliena
of-profane mind noted whether by-his-own or rather by-another's
instimulatus nequitia, grande saxum super trabem ad
goaded wickedness a-great stone upon a-beam for
feriendum desuper caput imperatoris posuit, sublataque de
striking from-above the-head of-the-emperor he-placed and-removed from
laqueari tabula, quae caput imperatoris recte despiciebat,
the-ceiling a-board which the-head of-the-emperor directly looked-down-on
mittendo ponderi foramen aperuit, dimisso fune sepius
for-letting-fall the-weight an-opening he-opened let-down a-rope often

explorans, ne saxum in cadendo falleret. Postquam satis
exploring lest the-stone in falling should-miss after enough
exploratum est, minister doli sursum in nocte scandens,
explored it-was the-agent of-the-trick upward in the-night climbing
desuper observabat, dum imperator staret ad orandum in
from-above watched while the-emperor stood for praying in
loco quo consueverat. Tum ille alieni avidus exicii, sed
the-place where he-was-accustomed then he of-another's eager destruction but
nescius sui, cum pondus in caput imperatoris libraret —
not-knowing his-own when the-weight onto the-head of-the-emperor he-was-poising
imperator autem parum se de loco moverat — cum
the-emperor moreover a-little himself from the-place had-moved with
pondere infelix ipse pondus, illeso imperatore cecidit.
the-weight the-unhappy-man himself a-weight unharmed the-emperor fell
Per totam Romam cito res innotuit, et pleps
through the-whole Rome quickly the-matter became-known and the-common-people
quae non facile sedari potest, dum mota fuerit, invito
which not easily to-be-calmed can when stirred it-has-been unwilling
imperatore semianime corpus, per rupes, per saxa tractum,
the-emperor the-half-dead body through rocks through stones dragged
in frusta discerpsit. Tum vero cuncti rem signo non
into bits tore-apart then indeed all the-matter to-a-sign not
eventui assignantes, fide et animis imperatori devinctiores
to-chance assigning in-faith and minds to-the-emperor more-bound
facti sunt; et inimicum consilium non solum illi fideles
made were and the-hostile counsel not only to-him the-faithful
firmavit, sed et multos ex inimicis fideles fecit; sicque dum
strengthened but also many of the-enemies faithful made and-thus while
nocere studuit, profuit. Denique imperator omnibus Romae
to-harm it-strove it-helped finally the-emperor all-things at-Rome
compositis, impositoque Urbi praesidio, ne ea fidem
settled and-imposed on-the-City a-garrison lest she faith

mutaret, novae dignitatis apicem gerens, in Teutonicum
should-change of-new dignity the-crown bearing into the-Teutonic
regnum reversus est. Sed nulla fortuna longa est; nam hi quos
kingdom returned has but no fortune long is for those whom
imperator Romae praesidium imposuerat, aegritudine correpti,
the-emperor at-Rome as-garrison had-imposed by-sickness seized
quam et locus et tempus intulerat — erat enim aestas —
which both the-place and the-season had-brought-on it-was for summer
ne uno quidem superstite mortui sunt. Tunc Roma iugo
not one even surviving died they-have then Rome the-yoke
praesidii sublato, compos arbitrii sui facta, ad ingenium
of-the-garrison lifted master of-will her-own made to her-character
rediit, et resumptis adversus imperatorem armis, pulso
returned and resumed against the-emperor arms driven-out
apostolico alium constituit; nam ille prior Gregorius a
the-apostolic(-lord) another set-up for that former Gregory from
vita decesserat. Quod ubi imperatori compertum est, iterum
life had-departed which when to-the-emperor learned it-was again
adversus Romam exercitum promovit; sed in Italiam veniens,
against Rome an-army he-moved but into Italy coming
cum legati a Roma pactum pacis ferentes ocurrerent, et
when envoys from Rome a-pact of-peace bearing met(-him) and
eum inimici retro moliminis fama sequeretur, relicto in
him of-an-enemy behind-him of-a-plot the-rumor followed having-left in
Italia filio Chounrado, iam tum regni sui herede designato,
Italy his-son Conrad already then of-kingdom his heir designated
regressus est, scilicet qui se grassanti Mahthildae, et
returned he-has namely who himself to-the-raging Matilda and
pene totam Italiam sibi vendicanti, opponeret, et regnum,
almost all Italy to-herself claiming should-oppose and the-kingdom
quod futurum erat suum, de manu feminae tolleret. Quid
which about-to-be was his-own from the-hand of-a-woman should-take what

facient inimici, cum insurgant in parentes ipsi filii? Aut
will-do enemies when rise-up against parents the-very sons or
unde securitatem sibi quis promittat, cum nec ab eo
whence security for-himself anyone may-promise when not-even from him
tutus sit quem genuit? Cessent iam conubia, nemo sibi
safe he-is whom he-begot let-cease now marriages let-no-one for-himself
optet heredem: heres tuus erit hostis tuus, nam non solum
wish an-heir heir your will-be enemy your for not only
te domo tua praediisque spoliat, sed et vita spoliare festinat.
you of-house your and-estates he-despoils but also of-life to-despoil hastens
Filius imperatoris, quem in Italia relictum a patre, et
the-son of-the-emperor whom in Italy left by his-father and
quam ob rem relictum diximus, a Mahthilde persuasus —
which for thing left we-have-said by Matilda persuaded
quem enim astutia feminea non subvertat, aut decipiat? —
whom for cunning womanly not may-overturn or deceive
iunctus inimicis patris coronam sibi imposuit, regnum
joined to-the-enemies of-his-father a-crown on-himself put the-kingdom
invasit, profanavit ius, confudit ordinem, impugnavit naturam,
invaded profaned right confused order assailed nature
querebat patris sanguinem, quia non nisi sanguine patris
sought of-his-father the-blood because not except by-the-blood of-his-father
regnare potuisset. Quod ubi ad hostes imperatoris currens
to-reign he-could which when to the-enemies of-the-emperor running
fama pertulit, exultabant, plaudebant, cantabant, laudabant
rumor brought they-exulted applauded sang praised
factum filii, praecipue feminam ducem facti. Mittebant
the-deed of-the-son especially the-woman leader of-the-deed they-sent
propere legatos, qui stimulum animo novi regis adicerent,
hastily envoys who a-goad to-the-mind of-the-new king should-add
et adderent oleum camino; qui pro se, sed contra
and add oil to-the-furnace who for themselves but against

se, fidem et opem perpetuam iurarent, quamquam
themselves faith and help perpetual should-swear although
dudum se tam filio quam patri numquam
lately themselves as-much to-the-son as to-the-father never
obtemperaturos coniurassent. Imperator autem ad hanc famam
about-to-obey had-sworn-together the-emperor moreover at this report
tametsi intus doluit, in gravitate tamen sua se foris
although inwardly he-grieved in gravity nevertheless his himself outwardly
tenuit; et non suam, sed filii fortunam conquestus est.
he-held and not his-own but of-the-son the-fortune lamented has
Cum autem eum ab incepto revocare non posset, non
when moreover him from the-undertaking to-recall not he-could not
tam suam iniuriam ulcisci, quam exemplum iniuriae per
so-much his-own injury to-avenge as the-example of-injury through
ultionem tollere querens, filium exheredare, et fratrem eius
vengeance to-remove seeking his-son to-disinherit and brother his
Heinricum adhuc puerum in regnum promovere cogitabat.
Henry still a-boy into the-kingship to-promote he-thought
Igitur multis procerum conventibus habitis, imperator super
therefore many of-nobles assemblies held the-emperor about
filio suo Chuonrado conquestus est, quod additus hostibus
son his Conrad complained has that joined to-the-enemies
regni, regnum invasisset, quod patrem non solum
of-the-kingdom the-kingdom he-had-invaded that the-father not only
regno, sed et vita privare conaretur: iniuriam suam
of-the-kingdom but also of-life to-deprive he-was-trying injury his
publicam esse debere, vel si nullum ea moveret, saltem hoc
public to-be to-be-bound or if none it might-move at-least this
rei publicae causae praestarent, ut neminem per vim
of-the-state public to-the-cause they-should-render that no-one through force
et scelus regnare paterentur; transferrent potius electionem
and crime to-reign they-should-allow they-should-transfer rather the-election

in minorem filium suum, quam iure maior amisisset.
to the-younger son his which by-right the-elder had-lost
Plerique contra nitebantur, magis utentes ingenio quam iusto
very-many against-it strove more using wit than the-just
et vero; multi autem publico bono faventes, sententiae
and true many moreover to-the-public good favoring with-the-opinion
votoque imperatoris concordabant. Tandem omnibus in unam
and-wish of-the-emperor agreed at-last all into one
sententiam coeuntibus, et concordi favore approbantibus,
opinion coming-together and with-harmonious favor approving
imperator minorem filium, invasore prius ex decreto curiae
the-emperor the-younger son the-invader first by decree of-the-court
diiudicato, heredem regni sui constituit; a quo ne
judged heir of-kingdom his appointed from whom lest
et ipse abiret in viam fratris sui, iusiurandum
also he-himself should-go-off into the-way of-brother his an-oath
accepit, videlicet ne umquam se vel de regno, vel de
he-received namely that never himself either in the-kingdom or in
praediis patris eo vivente, nisi forte ex consensu ipsius,
the-estates of-his-father him living unless perhaps with consent his
intromitteret. Iam tum murmur et metus erat, inter duos
he-would-thrust already then murmur and fear there-was between the-two
fratres intestina bella fore, magnamque regni cladem
brothers intestine wars to-be and-great of-the-kingdom ruin
futuram. Sed qui omnia dispensat, hunc metum lęto
about-to-be but he-who all-things dispenses this fear by-the-death
maioris filii sustulit, et ut regnum in unam concordiam
of-the-elder son removed and that the-kingdom into one concord
redire posset, occasionem dedit. Quibus ita transactis,
to-return might-be-able occasion gave which-things thus transacted
hostes imperatoris detruncato totiens capite non habentes
the-enemies of-the-emperor beheaded so-often the-head not having

cui adhererent, pactione subacti, quod optimum erat, in
to-whom they-might-cling by-a-pact subdued what best was into
pacem bella, in domesticam securitatem castra converterunt.
peace wars into domestic security camps turned

THE PEACE AND YOUNG HENRY'S REVOLT

Henry has a peace sworn across the realm, and the nobles who lived by plunder grow poor and resentful. They win over his son Henry with hunting, feasts, and talk of the excommunication, and the son deserts him, spurning his tearful appeals. When the son besieges Nuremberg, the father orders it surrendered rather than harm him; his swift ride on Regensburg puts the son to flight, but at the Regen his men, won by promises, waver, and he flees, escorted honorably even by enemies, and many desert to his son.

Igitur ut ubique pax et tranquillitas esset, convocatis
therefore that everywhere peace and tranquility might-be having-summoned
ad curiam primatibus, pacem per totum regnum sub
to the-court the-chief-men peace through the-whole kingdom under
iuramento firmari fecit, et ad inhibenda mala quae
oath to-be-confirmed he-caused and for restraining the-evils which
fiebant, gravem poenam in transgressores decrevit.
were-being-done a-heavy penalty against transgressors he-decreed
Quod quidem pacis decretum, quantum miseris ac
which indeed of-peace decree as-much-as to-the-wretched and
bonis profuit, tantum perversis et potentibus nocuit.
good it-profited so-much to-the-perverse and powerful it-harmed
Illis copiam, istis egestatem et famem intulit. Nam
on-those plenty on-these want and hunger it-brought for
qui in milites bona sua distraxerant, ut multo milite
those-who on knights the-goods their had-squandered that by-many a-knight

stipati procederent, et aliis armatorum copia longe
surrounded they-might-advance and others of-armed-men in-the-abundance far
praestarent, hi dum sibi licentia rapinarum erepta est,
might-surpass these while from-them the-license of-plunderings snatched was
ut pace ipsorum dictum sit, egestate laborabant,
that by-the-leave of-them said it-may-be by-want were-afflicted
cellaria eorum penuria et fames possidebat. Qui nuper
cellars their scarcity and hunger possessed he-who lately
spumeo ferebatur equo, contentus esse coepit vel rustico
on-a-foaming was-borne horse content to-be began even with-a-rustic
iumento. Qui nuper non aliam vestem querebat, nisi quae
beast-of-burden he-who lately not other garment sought than what
rubeo murice tincta arderet, bene secum actum aiebat, si
with-red purple dyed might-blaze well with-him dealt he-said if
nunc vestem quam natura suo colore tinxisset, haberet.
now a-garment which nature with-its-own color had-dyed he-had
Gaudebat aurum non se iam in luto calcari, dum ferreis
rejoiced gold not itself now in the-mud to-be-trampled while iron
calcaribus inopia cogeret uti. Denique quicquid vanitatis
spurs want compelled to-use finally whatever of-vanity
quicquid superfluitatis corrupti mores intulerant, totum
whatever of-superfluity corrupt manners had-introduced all
penuria magistra resecabat. Oppidula in ripis posita,
scarcity the-mistress was-cutting-away the-little-towns on the-banks placed
quibus praeda navium victum praebebat, nauta securus,
to-which the-plunder of-ships livelihood afforded the-sailor secure
esuriente oppiduli praeside, praeteribat. Mira res, nec
hungering of-the-little-town the-lord went-past a-wonderful thing nor
minus ridicula; alii iniurias suas iniuriis vindicant, imperator
less laughable others injuries their by-injuries avenge the-emperor
suas pace vindicabat. Cum autem domini cum satellitibus
his by-peace avenged when moreover the-lords with retainers

suis per aliquos annos hac lege stringerentur, anxii quod
their for some years by-this law were-bound anxious that
non liceret eis uti libertate perversitatis suae, iterum
not it-was-allowed them to-use the-liberty of-perversity their again
adversus imperatorem murmur movebant, iterum super eius
against the-emperor a-murmur they-stirred again about his
factis sinistrum rumorem seminabant. Quid illud rogo est,
deeds a-sinister rumor they-sowed what that I-ask is
quod admisit? Nempe hoc erat, quod scelera prohibebat,
which he-committed surely this it-was that crimes he-forbade
quod pacem et iusticiam revocabat, quod iam latro viam
that peace and justice he-recalled that now the-robber the-road
non obsedit, quod silva suas insidias non occultavit, quod
not beset that the-forest its ambushes not hid that
mercatori nautisque liberum erat suam ire viam, quod
for-the-merchant and-sailors free it-was their-own to-go way that
vetitis rapinis raptor esuriebat. Cur obsecro vobis non
forbidden the-plunderings the-plunderer hungered why I-beseech to-you not
aliunde, nisi ex rapto vivere placet? Reddite agris,
from-elsewhere than from plunder to-live does-it-please give-back to-the-fields
quos ex agro deputastis armis; coaequate numerum
those-whom from the-field you-have-assigned to-arms make-equal the-number
satellitum ad mensuram facultatum, recolligite praedia vestra
of-retainers to the-measure of-means gather-back the-estates your
quae stulte sparsistis, ut multos armatos haberetis, et
which foolishly you-have-scattered that many armed-men you-might-have and
redundabunt omnibus bonis horrea et cellaria vestra; nec
will-overflow with-all goods the-barns and cellars your nor
erit amplius necesse aliena tollere, cum quilibet ex
will-it-be further necessary others'-things to-take since anyone from
proprio possit habundare. Sic fit, ut nec imperator
his-own may-be-able to-abound thus it-happens that neither the-emperor

crimine denotetur, nec bellum in regno moveatur; sic
with-crime be-marked nor war in the-kingdom be-stirred thus
fit, ut et corpori satisfacere habeatis, et animas vestras,
it-happens that both to-the-body to-satisfy you-may-have and souls your
quod felicissimum est, salvetis. Sed nichil ago, asinum ad
which most-happy is you-may-save but nothing I-achieve an-ass to
lyram voco: consuetudo mala aut numquam aut vix tollitur.
the-lyre I-call custom bad either never or scarcely is-removed
Igitur assueti rapinis, ut occasionem repetendae
therefore accustomed to-plunderings that an-occasion of-resuming
consuetudinis invenirent, movendis iterum bellis animum
the-custom they-might-find to-stirring again wars the-mind
intendebant, iterum emulum imperatori reperire querebant, ad
they-directed again a-rival to-the-emperor to-find they-sought for
quam rem filium eius maxime idoneum estimabant. Itaque
which thing son his most suitable they-judged and-so
ut suggestioni locum invenirent, quae prima decipiendi
that for-suggestion room they-might-find which the-first of-deceiving
lenocinia erant, frequenter eum venatum secum abducebant,
enticements were often him hunting with-them they-took-away
conviviorum illecebris inescabant, iocis in dissolutionem
of-banquets with-the-allurements they-baited with-jests into dissolution
animi mittebant, et ad pleraque facienda, quae adolescentia
of-mind they-sent and to many-things to-be-done which youth
suadet, secum trahebant. Denique ut fit inter adolescentes,
urges with-them they-drew finally as happens among youths
quodam sodalitatis glutino vincti sunt, ut etiam fidem
with-a-certain of-fellowship glue bound they-were so-that even faith
dextramque mutuis secretis darent. Cum ergo eum multis
and-right-hand to-mutual secrets they-gave when therefore him by-many
dolis irretitum, decipi posse considerarent, quadam
tricks ensnared to-be-deceived to-be-able they-considered on-a-certain

die inter alia, tamquam ex obliquo, patrem eius in
day among other-things as-if from the-side father his into
mentionem adducebant: se mirari, quod tam durum
mention they-brought themselves to-wonder that so harsh
patrem pati posset; nichil eum a servo differre, cum
a-father to-endure he-could in-nothing him from a-slave to-differ since
omnia quae servi sunt, toleraret; patrem eius senem esse,
all-things which of-a-slave are he-endured father his old to-be
et moderandis regni habenis invalidum: si investituram
and for-managing of-the-kingdom the-reins feeble if the-investiture
regni usque ad obitum eius differret, haut dubium
of-the-kingdom until to death his he-should-defer not doubtful
quin alter illud sibi praeriperet; illum multos fautores
that-not another it from-him would-snatch-away that-one many supporters
habiturum propter invidiam et odium patris sui: se
about-to-have on-account-of the-envy and hatred of-the-father his himself
autem omnium vota in se transferre, si non cunctaretur
moreover of-all the-wishes onto himself to-transfer if not he-delayed
suscepti regni gubernacula possidere, maxime cum patrem
of-the-undertaken kingdom the-helm to-possess most since father
eius excommunicatum et aecclesia dudum abiecerit, et
his excommunicated both the-church long-since had-cast-off and
proceres regni reprobaverint; nec sibi observandum, quod
the-nobles of-the-kingdom had-rejected nor by-him to-be-observed what
incaute iuraverit, immo tum demum se sanctificasse, si
incautiously he-had-sworn nay then at-last himself to-have-sanctified if
iuramentum excommunicato iuratum irritum faceret. Pater
an-oath to-an-excommunicate sworn void he-should-make the-father
vero nihil mali de filio suspicatus, familiaritatem eius cum
but nothing of-evil about his-son suspecting the-familiarity his with
maioribus regni probavit, sperans eos sibi postmodum
the-greater-men of-the-kingdom approved hoping them to-himself afterward

tanto fidelius et validius auxilium ad optinendum regnum
the more-faithfully and more-strongly help for obtaining the-kingdom
laturos, quanto prius invicem in amore coaluissent.
about-to-bring by-how-much before to-each-other in love they-had-grown-together
Quid multa? Statim illectus et abstractus a concupiscentia,
why many-things at-once enticed and drawn-away by desire
malignae suggestioni, ut semper seductilis est adolescentia,
to-malignant suggestion as always seducible is youth
nec voto defuit nec facto. Igitur filius imperatoris observans
neither in-wish failed nor in-deed therefore the-son of-the-emperor watching
tempus recedendi a patre, quando id maximo patris
the-time for-withdrawing from his-father when it with-the-greatest of-the-father
incommodo fieret, euntem illum cum exercitu contra
inconvenience might-be-done him going with an-army against
quosdam Saxonum rebelles, qui per legatos obviam imperatori
some of-the-Saxons rebels who through envoys to-meet the-emperor
missos pactioni insistebant, repente abstractis ab eo multis,
sent for-a-pact were-pressing suddenly drawn-off from him many
deseruit, procul dubio deserendus ab his, qui sibi ut
deserted beyond doubt to-be-deserted by those who to-him that
desertor fieret, persuaserunt. Missis imperator post eum
a-deserter he-should-become persuaded sent the-emperor after him
legatis, tam lacrimis quam mandatis revocavit, obtestans
envoys as-much with-tears as with-commands recalled(-him) adjuring
eum, ne senem patrem contristaret; immo ne patrem omnium
him lest an-old father he-should-sadden nay lest the-father of-all
offenderet, ne se sputis hominum exponeret, ne se
he-should-offend lest himself to-the-spittle of-men he-should-expose lest himself
fabulam mundo faceret; insuper meminisset, qua se
a-byword to-the-world he-should-make moreover he-should-remember with-what himself
sibi cautione obligasset: hostes esse non amicos, insidiatores
to-him pledge he-had-bound enemies to-be not friends plotters

non consiliatores, qui sibi talia suggessissent. Ille prorsus
not counselors who to-him such-things had-suggested he utterly
abnuit, et se non ulterius secum partem habiturum, quia
refused and himself not further with-him a-part about-to-have because
excommunicatus esset, asseruit; ita sub specie causae Dei
excommunicated he-was asserted thus under the-guise of-the-cause of-God
suam causam egit. Ilico Bawariam, Sueviam, Saxoniam
his-own cause he-pleaded at-once Bavaria Swabia Saxony
percurrit, proceres convenit, attraxit omnes, ut sunt ingenia
he-ran-through the-nobles he-met he-drew-in all as are minds
novarum rerum cupida, et subintravit in regiam potestatem,
of-new things desirous and he-crept into the-royal power
tamquam sepelisset patrem. Mox castellum Nourinberch
as-if he-had-buried his-father soon the-castle Nuremberg
minax obsedit, ubi quanta virtute pugnatum sit, clades
threatening he-besieged where with-how-great valor fought it-was the-losses
utriusque partis argumento fuit. Sed obsessis quanto minus
of-each side as-proof was but in-the-besieged the less
spei, tanto plus animi inerat; et nisi imperator sceleri
of-hope the more of-spirit was-present and unless the-emperor the-crime
parcens, castellum tradi praecepisset, adhuc ibi cassa
sparing the-castle to-be-surrendered had-ordered still there with-a-vain
obsidione laboraret, excepto si sola fames, quae cuncta
siege he-would-labor except if alone hunger which all-things
expugnat, illud non expugnaret. Ecce quanta pietas patris!
storms it not should-storm behold how-great the-piety of-the-father
Reddidit contra filii factum paternitatis affectum; non
he-returned against of-the-son the-deed of-fatherhood the-affection not
attendit iniuriam, sed naturam; maluit oppidum tradi,
he-heeded the-injury but nature he-preferred the-town to-be-surrendered
quam filii discrimine liberari; maluit eius iniurias tolerare,
than of-the-son by-the-peril to-be-freed he-preferred his injuries to-endure

quam vindicare. Igitur oppidani, oblata qualem vellent
than to-avenge therefore the-townsmen offered such-as they-wished
pactione, oppidum tradideruut; dimissoque exercitu rex
a-pact the-town surrendered and-dismissed the-army the-king
Ratisponam se contulit, ut eam, dum adhuc ancipiti
to-Regensburg himself betook that it while still in-doubtful
penderet animo, stabilem sibi fixaque fide immobilem
it-hung mind steadfast to-himself and-with-fixed faith immovable
faceret. Quod ubi comperit imperator, sedit enim tunc in
he-might-make which when learned the-emperor he-sat for then in
urbe Wirziburgensi, reputans filium vel in itinere vel in
the-city of-Würzburg reckoning his-son either on the-journey or in
urbe comprendi posse, tam praecipiti tamque tacito cursu
the-city to-be-seized to-be-able with-so headlong and-so silent course
eius vestigia sequebatur, ut iter eius non ante, donec
his tracks he-followed that the-journey his not before until
non modica turba suorum transito Danubio ad urbem
no small crowd of-his-men having-crossed the-Danube to the-city
inmissis equis ruerent, praesciretur. Obstupefactus filius ad
with-horses let-go rushed was-foreknown stunned the-son at
tam subitam et inopinatam rem, ex urbe profugit. Cur
so sudden and unexpected a-thing from the-city fled why
fugis non fugiendum, cur fugis patrem tuum? Sequitur
do-you-flee not one-to-be-fled why do-you-flee father your he-follows
te, non persequitur; sequitur inquam, non ut hostis, sed
you not pursues he-follows I-say not as an-enemy but
ut pater; non ut perdat, sed ut servet; sequitur ut
as a-father not that he-may-destroy but that he-may-save he-follows that
turbatam ex te rem publicam in quietum statum restituat,
the-disturbed by you the-state public into a-quiet condition he-may-restore
et tuis rebus in futurum prospiciat. Missis ilico rex
and for-your affairs into the-future he-may-provide sent at-once the-king

nunciis per Bawariam et Sueviam, sparsum exercitum
messengers through Bavaria and Swabia the-scattered army
recollegit; quae res imperatorem, ut et ipse cogeret
regathered which thing the-emperor that also himself should-gather
exercitum, coegit. Igitur exercitus uterque ad fluvium Regin
an-army compelled therefore army each at the-river Regen
se sibi opposuit; hinc pater, inde filius; hinc pietas,
itself to-the-other opposed here the-father there the-son here piety
inde furor consedit. Cumque potentiores utriusque partis
there fury encamped and-when the-more-powerful of-each side
tamquam tanti discidii mediatores convenirent, qui ex
as-if of-so-great a-split mediators came-together those-who on
parte imperatoris erant, persuasibilibus illecti verbis, et
the-side of-the-emperor were by-persuasive enticed words and
multis magnisque pollicitationibus attracti, erga imperatorem
by-many and-great promises drawn toward the-emperor
in fide frigebant; et nisi domesticam fraudem praesensisset,
in faith grew-cold and unless domestic fraud he-had-sensed
solus cum paucis periculo relictus esset. Igitur quod
alone with few to-danger left he-would-have-been therefore what
faciendum fuit, sceleri fortunaeque cedendum putavit, et ad
to-be-done was to-crime and-fortune to-be-yielded he-thought and after
similitudinem David, ne filius parricida fieret, fugit. Quam
the-likeness of-David lest his-son a-parricide should-become he-fled how
mirabiliter gratia Dei operatur! quam evidenti signo nos
wonderfully the-grace of-God works by-how evident a-sign us
docet, si doceri vellemus, si caecum cor non haberemus!
it-teaches if to-be-taught we-wished if a-blind heart not we-had
Cogitans imperator, quod inimici sui hac qua venerat,
reflecting the-emperor that enemies his by-this-way by-which he-had-come
persequerentur eum, ad ducem Boemiae divertit; qui
would-pursue him to the-duke of-Bohemia he-turned-aside who

quamvis nuper eum in arto non bene reliquisset, cum
although lately him in a-strait not well he-had-left with
magno tamen honore suscepit, et usque in Saxoniam
great nevertheless honor received(-him) and all-the-way into Saxony
deduxit; ubi quamvis infestos et fortes inimicos haberet,
escorted where although hostile and strong enemies he-had
per eos tamen et ab eis usque ad Renum honorifice
through them nevertheless and by them all-the-way to the-Rhine honorably
deductus est. Unde hoc, nisi quod manus Domini erat cum
escorted he-was whence this unless that the-hand of-the-Lord was with
eo, et invisibilem ducem habebat, qui eum securum per
him and an-invisible guide he-had who him secure through
tela, per hostes, ducebat? Hoc miraculo monitus es,
darts through enemies led by-this miracle admonished you-have-been
o fili imperatoris, si moneri posses, ut disceres
O son of-the-emperor if to-be-admonished you-could that you-might-learn
venerari patrem tuum, non persequi, quem venerati sunt,
to-venerate father your not to-persecute whom venerated have
cum in manus eorum venisset, etiam inimici. Sed durius
when into the-hands their he-had-come even enemies but more-harshly
moneberis, cum ex hac tam leni admonitione non
you-will-be-admonished since by this so gentle admonition not
corrigaris. Cum autem imperatoris fuga cognita esset,
you-are-corrected when moreover of-the-emperor the-flight known was
eventus ille multos ab eo seduxit, multumque rebus
outcome that many from him seduced and-much to-the-affairs
filii sui accedere, suis autem decedere fecit.
of-son his to-be-added from-his-own moreover to-depart made

The son feigns repentance; his credulous father weeps on his neck, pardons him, and dismisses his army. Held captive in a castle, Henry surrenders the regalia, renounces the throne at Mainz, falls at his son's feet in vain, and is refused absolution by the legate. The townsmen of Rouffach put the son to flight, and he later burns the village. Henry, sheltered at Liège, begs him not to hold Easter there; the son will not listen, and the bishop and Duke Henry make Henry stay.

Continuo rex ut faventem sibi fortunam urgueret, curiam
straightway the-king that the-favoring him fortune he-might-press a-court
Mogontinam ad natale Domini indixit, invitavit proceres,
of-Mainz for the-Nativity of-the-Lord proclaimed invited the-nobles
accersivit multos, ut cunctis innotesceret, quia dominus
summoned many that to-all it-might-become-known that lord
rerum esse vellet. Ad quam curiam etiam imperator
of-things to-be he-wished to which court also the-emperor
convocatis necessariis suis, venire disposuit, volens in ratione
having-summoned the-intimates his to-come arranged wishing in account
ponere, rectene secum an secus actum esset. Quod
to-put whether-rightly with-him or otherwise dealt it-had-been which
cum agnovissent adversarii eius, metuentes et sibi et
when had-learned the-adversaries his fearing both for-themselves and
causae suae, si veniret ille tam armatus multitudine, quam
for-cause their if he-came he as armed with-multitude as
ratione, hanc fraudem regi suggerebant, ut obvius patri,
with-reason this fraud to-the-king suggested that meeting his-father
sumpto valde poenitentis vultu, culpam fateretur, et
having-assumed greatly of-one-penitent the-face the-fault he-should-confess and
gratiam expeteret: dolere se, quod malignae suggestioni
favor seek to-grieve himself that to-malignant suggestion
consensisset, paratum se ad omnem satisfactionem,
he-had-consented ready himself for all satisfaction

dummodo gratiam inveniret. Et si sic occasionem fraudis
provided-that favor he-found and if thus an-occasion of-fraud
invenire posset, uteretur illa; sin autem, fraus ipsa pro
to-find he-could he-should-use it but-if moreover the-fraud itself for
fide, simulatio teneretur pro veritate. Hac instructus arte
faith the-pretense would-be-held for truth with-this instructed art
cum venisset ad patrem, pater credulus verbis et lacrimis
when he-had-come to his-father the-father credulous to-the-words and tears
filii, irruit super collum eius, flens et deosculans eum,
of-his-son rushed upon neck his weeping and kissing him
gavisus instar illius euangelici patris, revixisse filium
rejoicing after-the-likeness of-that gospel father to-have-revived the-son
qui mortuus fuerat, et inventum qui perierat? Quid multa?
who dead had-been and found who had-perished why many-things
Condonavit filio tam poenam quam culpam; et hoc fuit
he-pardoned his-son as-much the-penalty as the-fault and this was
illi iniuriam filii vindicasse, paterna lenitate filium
for-him the-injury of-his-son to-have-avenged with-paternal mildness his-son
corripuisse, iuxta illud comici: Pro magno peccato
to-have-chastised according-to that of-the-comic-poet for great sin
filii, paululum supplicii satis est patri. Post haec patrem
of-a-son a-little of-punishment enough is for-a-father after this his-father
sicut ficta poenitudine, sic et consilio fefellit, suggerens
as by-feigned penitence so also by-counsel he-deceived suggesting
ei, quemadmodum sibi suggestum fuerat, ut dimissa
to-him as to-himself suggested it-had-been that dismissed
tanta multitudine, ad curiam ambo mediocri copia venirent;
so-great a-multitude to the-court both with-moderate force should-come
nihil esse, cum ipsi coissent in concordiam, quod
nothing to-be when they-themselves had-come-together into concord which
illi resisteret; vastari omnia, si pergerent ea copia.
to-it might-resist to-be-laid-waste all-things if they-went with-that force

Placuit consilium patri; bonum quidem, si fraudulentum
pleased the-counsel the-father good indeed if fraudulent
non fuisset. Dimissaque multitudine, non plus quam
not it-had-been and-dismissed the-multitude with-not more than
trecentis viris ad curiam filio comite pergebat. Ventum
three-hundred men to the-court his-son as-companion he-went come
est ad nocturnam mansionem; ibi se filius obsequio
it-was to the-night lodging there himself the-son to-the-service
patris totum impendebat, ibi se pater cum filio
of-his-father wholly devoted there himself the-father with his-son
mirum in modum per totam illam noctem oblectabat,
wonderful in way through whole that night delighted
colloquebatur, colludebat, amplexabatur, osculabatur, avidus
conversed played embraced kissed eager
recompensare damnum oblectationis diu intermissae, sed
to-make-good the-loss of-delight long interrupted but
nescius illam oblectationis noctem ultimam esse. Mirum,
not-knowing that of-delight night the-last to-be wonderful
fraudem umquam tam ordinatam fortunam habuisse. Postera
fraud ever so well-ordered fortune to-have-had on-the-next
namque die cum iam appropinquarent Mogontiae, venit
for day when now they-were-approaching Mainz there-came
quasi nuntius, qui diceret, Bawarios et Suevos cum
as-if a-messenger who said the-Bavarians and the-Swabians with
ingenti multitudine Mogontiam venisse. Tunc filius suggessit
a-huge multitude to-Mainz to-have-come then the-son suggested
imperatori, non esse tutum venire in medios hostes, nisi
to-the-emperor not to-be safe to-come into the-midst-of enemies unless
praetemptatis eorum animis; audaciam hominum nullis uti
tested-beforehand their minds the-boldness of-men no to-use
frenis; diverteret potius ad castellum quod iuxta erat,
reins he-should-turn-aside rather to the-castle which near was

dum ipse conveniret eos, et a sententia incoepti
while he-himself should-meet them and from the-intention of-what-they-had-begun
deduceret, et ad eum ob requirendam eius gratiam secum
lead and to him for seeking his favor with-himself
adduceret. Fecit imperator, ut filius suggesserat; divertit
bring did the-emperor as his-son had-suggested he-turned-aside
ad castellum, non cernens laqueum doli, quem texerat
to the-castle not seeing the-snare of-the-trick which had-covered
pulchra species mendacis fidei. Cum autem imperator cum
a-fair appearance of-lying faith when moreover the-emperor with
paucis intrasset, occlusa porta fidelibus eius aditus negabatur,
a-few had-entered shut the-gate to-faithful his entry was-denied
detectaque fraude, qui receptus est ut dominus, tentus
and-uncovered the-fraud he-who received was as lord held
est ut captivus; itaque appositis patri custodibus, cum hoc
was as captive and-so set-over his-father guards with this
fraudis triumpho ad Mogontinam curiam reversus, tamquam
of-fraud triumph to the-Mainz court returned as-if
rem virtutis egisset, cum magna iactantia retulit, quo
a-deed of-valor he-had-done with great boasting he-related by-what
ingenio patrem comprehendisset. Tum vero curia plausu
wit his-father he-had-seized then indeed the-court with-applause
laeticiaque resonabat; et nefas iusticiae, fraudem virtuti
and-joy resounded and the-crime to-justice the-fraud to-valor
ascribebant. Statim misso legato patri mandavit, ut si
they-ascribed at-once sent an-envoy to-his-father he-commanded that if
vitam servare vellet, absque mora sibi crucem, coronam et
life to-keep he-wished without delay to-him the-cross the-crown and
lanceam, caeteraque regalia transmitteret; et munitiones
the-lance and-the-other royal-insignia he-should-send and the-fortifications
quas firmissimas tenebat, in manum eius transferret. Nec
which very-strong he-held into the-hand his should-transfer nor

ille cunctabatur omnia quae iussus est facere, nec imperium
he delayed all-things which ordered he-was to-do nor the-empire
pluris habebat quam se. Sed non in hoc satisfecisse
of-more-account held than himself but not in this to-have-satisfied
videbatur, nisi et ipse coram veniret, et in conspectu
he-seemed unless also he-himself in-person should-come and in the-sight
omnium imperio renunciaret. Venit ergo, non suae
of-all the-empire should-renounce he-came therefore not of-his-own
potestatis, sed in comprehensione adductus. Solus coram eis,
power but in arrest brought alone before them
qui dudum coram se steterant, stetit; nec rationis libertatem
who formerly before him had-stood he-stood nor of-reason the-freedom
habens, ut captivi fortuna postulabat, loquebatur. Inquisitus
having as of-the-captive fortune demanded he-spoke questioned
de spontanea imperii renunciatione, non quod voluntas
about the-voluntary of-the-empire renunciation not what his-will
habuit, sed quod necessitas coegit, respondit: se videlicet
held but what necessity compelled he-answered himself namely
imperio renunciare, non vi coactum, sed propria voluntate
the-empire to-renounce not by-force compelled but by-his-own will
inductum, sibi iam defecisse vires ad moderandas
induced for-himself now to-have-failed the-strength for managing
regni habenas, non se iam eius cupiditate teneri, quod
of-the-kingdom the-reins not himself now its by-desire to-be-held which
longo usu didicisset habere plus molestiae quam gloriae;
by-long use he-had-learned to-have more of-trouble than of-glory
tempus esse, ut honore cum onere deposito, provideret
time to-be that honor with burden laid-down he-should-provide
animae suae: tantum filius suus caveret, ne quid tale
for-soul his only son his should-beware lest anything such
faceret in se, quod indignum esset et illum facere,
he-should-do against himself which unworthy might-be both him to-do

et se pati. Multos et oratio imperatoris et fortuna ad
and himself to-suffer many both the-speech of-the-emperor and his-fortune to
gemitus et lacrimas commovit; filium autem ad miserationem
groans and tears moved the-son moreover to pity
nec ipsa natura movere potuit. Et cum caderet ad pedes
not-even the-very nature to-move could and when he-fell at the-feet
filii, orans, ut recogitaret in se saltem ius naturae,
of-his-son praying that he-should-reconsider in himself at-least the-law of-nature
nec vultum nec animum ad patrem reflexit; cum ipse
neither face nor mind to his-father he-turned-back though he-himself
potius ad patrios pedes advolvi debuisset, eo quod
rather at paternal feet to-be-rolled he-ought-to-have by-that that
illi regnum, cuius heres designatus ab ipso fuerat,
from-him the-kingdom of-which heir designated by him he-had-been
impatiens morae praeripuisset. Praeterea veniam precabatur
impatient of-delay he-had-snatched-away moreover pardon he-begged
ab omnibus, quos umquam iniuste lesisset. Sed et pedibus
from all whom ever unjustly he-had-harmed but also at-the-feet
apostolici legati advolvitur, orans et obsecrans, ut se
of-the-apostolic(-lord's) envoy he-is-rolled praying and beseeching that him
a banno solveret, et communioni aecclesiae redderet.
from the-ban he-should-release and to-the-communion of-the-church restore
Laici misericordia commoti veniam dabant; legatus autem
the-laymen by-pity moved pardon gave the-envoy moreover
domni apostolici absolutionem negabat, asserens non hoc
of-lord apostolic absolution denied asserting not this
suae potestatis esse: oportere ab ipso apostolico absolutionis
of-his power to-be to-behoove from the-very apostolic(-lord) of-absolution
gratiam eum expectare. Quid multa? Abrenuntiata imperiali
the-grace him to-await why many-things renounced the-imperial
dignitate privatus discessit, et ad quandam curtem, quam
dignity a-private-man he-departed and to a-certain estate which

filius victui illius permiserat, recessit. Quam impotens
his-son for-the-livelihood of-him had-allowed withdrew how powerless
potentia mundi, quam incerta, quam instabilis! Sed nec
the-power of-the-world how uncertain how unstable but not-even
potentia dicenda est, quae ad omnia quae vult, efficax non
power to-be-called is which for all-things which it-wishes effective not
est, et quam qui assequitur, amittere potest.
is and which he-who attains to-lose can

His ita transactis, finitaque curia, rex superiores Reni
these-things thus transacted and-finished the-court the-king the-upper of-the-Rhine
regiones et urbes pertransiit, et ut res postulabat, hos
regions and cities passed-through and as the-matter demanded these
beneficio, illos iniuria sibi subiecit. Cum autem intrasset
by-benefit those by-injury to-himself he-subjected when moreover he-had-entered
Alsaciam, ibi fortuna eius aliquantulum hesit, ibi pugnam
Alsace there fortune his somewhat stuck there a-fight
tam infelici eventu, quam imprudenti gessit incoepto.
as unhappy with-an-outcome as imprudent he-waged with-a-beginning
Nam cum in villa Ruvach, quae multitudine praevalet
for when in the-village Rouffach which in-multitude is-strong
et armis, satellites eius superbe grassarentur, frequentia
and in-arms retainers his proudly raged the-throng
civium iniuriam prohibebat; nec enim dum iniuria modum
of-the-citizens the-injury tried-to-stop nor for while the-injury measure
excederet, patiens esse poterat. Audito tumultu rex
exceeded patient to-be it-could having-heard the-tumult the-king
properabat, non ut iniuriam prohiberet, sed iuvaret, non
hastened not that the-injury he-might-stop but help not
ut pugnam sedaret, sed amplius commoveret. Quae res
that the-fight he-might-calm but more stir-up which thing
totius villae turbam excivit, ruit inrevocabile vulgus, femina
of-the-whole village the-crowd roused rushes the-irrevocable mob woman

cum viro, servus cum domino, ignavus cum forti; et ut
with man slave with master coward with brave and as
plerumque fit, animum iniuria ministravit. Incoepta pugna,
usually happens courage injury supplied begun the-fight
incoepta est et fuga; nam qui regiae partis erant,
begun is also flight for those-who of-the-royal party were
cum viderent impetum furentis turbae, et rem in arto
when they-saw the-onset of-the-raging crowd and the-matter in a-strait
sitam, considerantes in virtute suam cladem, in sola fuga
placed considering in valor their-own ruin in sole flight
salutem, qui poterant fuga vitam servabant. O infelicem
safety those-who could by-flight life saved O unhappy
eventum, o dedecus regni; fugiente rege, regalia insignia
outcome O disgrace of-the-kingdom fleeing the-king the-royal insignia
vulgi praeda facta sunt. Resipisce tandem rex bone,
of-the-mob booty made were come-to-your-senses at-last king good
resipisce, et supernam iram in hac sorte tua recognosce.
come-to-your-senses and the-heavenly wrath in this lot your recognize
Iudicium irae Dei est, ut fugeres, qui patrem fugasti;
the-judgment of-the-wrath of-God it-is that you-should-flee who your-father put-to-flight
et insignia perderes, quae patri abstulisti. Sed his
and the-insignia lose which from-your-father you-took but these-things
postea receptis, interveniente pacto pacis et gratia veniae,
afterward recovered intervening a-pact of-peace and the-favor of-pardon
regem sententiam mutare fecit altum vulnus iniuriae, ut
the-king his-sentence to-change caused the-deep wound of-the-injury so-that
maiori robore collecto, villam incendio praedaque vastaret,
with-greater force gathered the-village by-fire and-plunder he-laid-waste
et in homines loci illius indiscreta caede seviret. Sed
and against the-men of-place that with-indiscriminate slaughter raged but
quod in se fortuna tantum ausa est, ex patris consilio
what against him fortune only dared has from of-his-father counsel

prodisse suspicatus, novas iniuriarum cogitationes in eum
to-have-come suspecting new of-injuries thoughts against him
cogitare coepit; et ne sibi esset obstaculi materia,
to-think he-began and lest to-him there-should-be of-obstacle material
vel ad comprehensionem eius, vel ad expulsionem animum
either for the-capture his or for the-expulsion the-mind
intendit. Itaque Leodii, ubi eum fidem et fortunae suae
he-directed and-so at-Liège where him faith and of-fortune his
receptaculum invenisse audierat, pascha sibi celebrandum
a-refuge to-have-found he-had-heard Easter by-himself to-be-celebrated
statuit, ut et ipsum si fieri posset, comprehenderet, et
he-decided that both him if to-be-done it-could-be he-might-seize and
ab episcopo, qui sui honoris emulum recepisset, iniuriam
from the-bishop who of-his honor the-rival had-received the-injury
expostularet. Cumque pater vidisset, quod filius
he-might-demand-satisfaction-for and-when his-father had-seen that son
suus Leodii pascha celebrandum statuisset, legationem ad eum
his at-Liège Easter to-be-celebrated had-decided an-embassy to him
in hunc modum direxit: Si interrogem te, fili dulcissime,
in this manner he-directed if I-should-ask you son sweetest
traditio hominum, an mandatum Dei, praestantius magisque
the-tradition of-men or the-command of-God more-excellent and-more
tenendum sit, respondebis, nisi a vero deductus sis,
to-be-held be you-will-answer unless from the-truth led-astray you-be
similem esse iumentis, qui coelestia terrenis, humanis
like to-be to-beasts him-who heavenly-things to-earthly human-things
divina non praeferat. Cur ergo magis audis eos, qui tibi
to-divine not prefers why therefore rather do-you-hear those who to-you
suggerunt: “Persequere patrem tuum”, quam verbum ipsius
suggest persecute father your than the-word of-the-very
Dei: “Honora patrem tuum?” Isti te decipiunt, non
God honor father your these-men you deceive not

instruunt; isti honori tuo non provident, sed invident;
instruct these-men for-honor your not provide but envy
isti sub specie fidei, perfidiae laqueos nectunt. Non
these-men under the-guise of-faith of-faithlessness snares weave not
aliter pervenire potuerunt ad destructionem honoris tui,
otherwise to-arrive they-could at the-destruction of-honor your
nisi per destructionem nostri. Fuerit sane, ut peccatis
except through the-destruction of-us be-it surely that sins
meis exigentibus, quae sententia adversariorum meorum est,
my demanding(-it) which the-opinion of-adversaries my is
abiecerit me Deus ne regnem: at tamen tuum non
has-cast-off me God that-not I-should-reign but nevertheless yours not
erat, in abiectionem meam operam dedisse, et regnum
it-was to casting-off my effort to-have-given and the-kingdom
quod tibi paraveram, mihi praeripuisse. Barbara regna
which for-you I-had-prepared from-me to-have-snatched barbarian kingdoms
tam inhumanum facinus damnant et devovent; ipsi pagani
so inhuman a-crime condemn and curse the-very pagans
abhorrent, et qui Deum nesciunt, quid in diligendis
shrink-from(-it) and those-who God know-not what in loving
hominibus naturae debeant, recognoscunt. Sed quid mirum, si
men to-nature they-owe recognize but what wonder if
maligna surreptio seductilem et inmaturam aetatem decepit,
a-malignant stealth seducible and immature age has-deceived
cum etiam senes et fixum animi statum ad malum mala
since even old-men and a-fixed of-mind state to evil evil
consilia nonnumquam inflectant? Fortuna mea alieni potius
counsels sometimes bend fortune my of-another's rather
quam tui sceleris est; nam tu in manibus suadentium
than of-your crime is for you in the-hands of-the-persuaders
eras, non illi in tuis. Si autem iniuriam addideris,
were not they in yours if moreover injury you-shall-have-added

non iam excusari poteris, cum et factam crimen esse
not now to-be-excused you-will-be-able since both done a-crime to-be
scias, et infectam non facere queas. Audivi enim, quod
you-know and undone not to-make you-can I-have-heard for that
pascha Leodii celebrandum decreveris; quo in loco fides
Easter at-Liège to-be-celebrated you-have-decreed which in place the-faith
et pietas episcopi me recepit, cum non esset, qui
and piety of-the-bishop me received when not there-was anyone-who
vel beneficiorum nostrorum recordaretur, vel fortunae
either the-benefits our would-remember or with-my-fortune
compateretur. Cuius profecto beneficiis in me, te decet
would-sympathize whose surely to-the-benefits toward me you it-befits
regia liberalitate respondere; tantoque certior de eius
with-royal liberality to-respond and-by-so-much surer of his
fide poteris esse, quanto fidelius erga nos probatur
faith you-will-be-able to-be the more-faithfully toward us he-is-proved
egisse. Hic nisi forte te domo receperit, me secum
to-have-acted he unless perhaps you in-his-house he-shall-have-received me with-him
in festivitate pascali retinendum decrevit. At dicis, dignum
in the-festivity paschal to-be-kept has-decided but you-say worthy
et conveniens esse, ut ea festivitas potius nos iungat quam
and fitting to-be that this festivity rather us should-join than
dividat; te velle, te cupere, ut ibi tecum agam dies
divide you to-wish you to-desire that there with-you I-should-spend the-days
pascalis laeticiae. Quod quidem et ego admodum cuperem,
of-paschal joy which indeed also I very-much would-desire
si non esset quod timerem. Neque enim non possum
if not there-were what I-should-fear neither for not I-can
non timere eos quos mihi vitam permisisse poenitet, dum
not to-fear those whom for-me life to-have-allowed repents while
in manibus eorum mors et vita mea fuisset. Omnia mihi
in the-hands their death and life my had-been all-things to-me

suspecta sunt, omnia timenda sunt, maxime in turba, ubi
suspect are all-things to-be-feared are most in a-crowd where
tanto difficilior est periculi cautio, quanto maior sceleris
the more-difficult is of-danger the-guarding the greater of-crime
occasio. Inde est, quod ex medio eorum qui me oderunt,
the-occasion thence it-is that from the-midst of-those who me hate
longe recessi, et in extremis regni tui finibus me
far I-have-withdrawn and in the-furthest of-kingdom your borders myself
contraxi; ut vel secessu loci tutus sim, vel si
I-have-drawn-in that either by-the-remoteness of-the-place safe I-may-be or if
fortuna mea postulaverit extraneam humanitatem expetere,
fortune my shall-have-demanded foreign kindness to-seek
citius e regno tuo cedere possim. Precor ergo,
more-quickly from kingdom your to-withdraw I-may-be-able I-pray therefore
ut causa patris tui pascalem curiam alibi disponas,
that for-the-sake of-father your the-paschal court elsewhere you-arrange
et in domo eius qui me humanitatis gratia recepit, cum
and in the-house of-him who me for-kindness' sake received since
non liceat imperatorem, saltim hospitem esse sinas, ne
not it-is-allowed an-emperor at-least a-guest to-be you-allow lest
vel in meum ludibrium, vel in tuum obprobrium narretur,
either to my mockery or to your reproach it-be-told
quod in solemnitate dominicae resurrectionis incerta hospicia
that on the-solemnity of-the-Lord's resurrection uncertain lodgings
fortuna mea querere cogatur. Si feceris quod postulo,
fortune my to-seek be-compelled if you-shall-have-done what I-ask
maximas grates habeo; sin autem, malo mendicus esse in
the-greatest thanks I-have but-if moreover I-prefer a-beggar to-be in
externis regnis, quam ludibrio haberi in regnis quondam
foreign kingdoms than for-mockery to-be-held in kingdoms once
meis. Hanc legationem patris aure surda filius audivit,
mine this embassy of-his-father with-ear deaf the-son heard

nec a sententia sua deduci potuit. Quam ob rem
nor from opinion his to-be-led-away he-could which on-account-of thing
cum iam instante pascha pater recedere vellet, episcopus
when now approaching Easter the-father to-withdraw wished the-bishop
et Heinricus dux, qui et ipse ab episcopo fuerat
and Henry the-duke who also himself by the-bishop had-been
invitatus, eum recedere prohibebant; non se posse
invited him to-withdraw forbade not themselves to-be-able
pati, ut in tanta festivitate pulsus e tectis hominum,
to-endure that in so-great a-festivity driven from the-roofs of-men
silvas peteret latebrasque ferarum: illum quidem absque
forests he-should-seek and-the-lairs of-wild-beasts him indeed without
causa destitutum imperio, sed non amicorum obsequio; si
cause deprived of-the-empire but not of-friends of-the-service if
pace frui permitterentur, nihil se magis quam pacem
peace to-enjoy they-were-allowed nothing themselves more than peace
velle; sin autem res armis agenda sit, arma sibi
to-wish but-if moreover the-matter by-arms to-be-done be arms to-themselves
non defore. Ille vero ne eis materia cladis esset,
not to-be-lacking he but lest for-them a-cause of-ruin he-should-be
cedere quam manere utilius asserens, tandem eis, cum
to-yield than to-stay more-useful asserting at-last to-them as
importunius instarent, consensit, et ut postulabant mansit.
more-insistently they-pressed consented and as they-demanded stayed

At the Meuse bridge, on Good Friday, the son's men chase a feigned flight into an ambush laid by Duke Henry's son, and many drown when the bridge collapses. The son summons the princes to war and besieges Cologne, but his army starves and sickens, while Henry, urged to retake the crown, neither consents nor refuses, and holds his side back from battle. Then word comes, with Henry's ring and sword, that he is dead; the poor weep at his tomb, the author calls him happy, and the rebels submit to the son.

Iamque multus equitatus faciem regis longe praecedens, ad
and-now much cavalry the-face of-the-king far going-before to
pontem fluvii qui vocatur Masa venerat, et alterius ripae
the-bridge of-the-river which is-called Meuse had-come and of-the-other bank
crepidinem filius praedicti ducis cum paucis occuparat; nam
the-edge the-son of-the-aforesaid duke with a-few had-occupied for
turbam armatorum non longe per oportuna loca in insidiis
a-crowd of-armed-men not far through convenient places in ambush
locaverat. Qui ut pugnam provocaret, nunc equum in rectam
he-had-placed who that a-fight he-might-provoke now his-horse into the-straight
cursus lineam inmisit, nunc in orbes flexit et reflexit,
of-the-course line he-let-go now into circles he-turned and turned-back
et si pares numero confligere secum auderent, inquisivit. Nec
and if equal in-number to-engage with-him they-dared he-asked nor
mora, transierunt ad eos totidem ex parte regis, mixtique
delay crossed to them as-many from the-side of-the-king and-mingled
inter se, vario reflexu nunc pugnam inferebant, nunc
among themselves with-varied wheeling now attack they-brought now
fugam agitabant. Interim unus et alter transito ponte,
flight they-practiced meanwhile one and another having-crossed the-bridge
sociorum numerum latenter auxit, et rupto certaminis pacto,
of-the-comrades the-number secretly increased and broken of-the-contest the-pact

ex aequali inaequalem fecit. Quod videns filius ducis, terga
from equal unequal made(-it) which seeing the-son of-the-duke his-back
cum suis vertit, non tam ut fugeret, quam ut falleret;
with his-men turned not so-much that he-might-flee as that he-might-deceive
nec tam ut fugiens periculum vitaret, quam ut sequentes
nor so-much that fleeing danger he-might-avoid as that the-pursuers
in periculum deduceret. Hi autem qui ex adversa ripa erant,
into danger he-might-lead these moreover who on the-opposite bank were
visa fuga, praecipiti cursu pontem transeuntes, fugientes
seen the-flight at-headlong pace the-bridge crossing the-fleeing
persequebantur, ignari futurae sortis et fraudis quae latebat.
pursued ignorant of-the-future lot and of-the-fraud which lay-hidden
Postquam autem ventum est ad locum, ubi dispositae
after moreover come it-was to the-place where placed
fuerant insidiae, exurgentes de insidiis, impetu magno in
had-been the-ambushes rising from the-ambushes with-onset great upon
persequentes ferebantur. Illi autem inopino territi periculo,
the-pursuers they-were-borne they moreover by-unexpected terrified danger
metuque turbante nil rationis in armis habentes, in
and-fear disturbing(-them) nothing of-reason in arms having into
fugam se retorserunt. Sed quid profuit avertisse
flight themselves turned-back but what did-it-profit to-have-turned-away
pectora, et vulneribus terga dedisse? Itaque multi capti,
their-breasts and to-wounds their-backs to-have-given and-so many captured
multi truncati, multi occisi sunt; victorque cruentus non
many maimed many killed were and-the-victor bloody not
alium modum sceleris habebat, nisi quem fastidium faciebat.
other limit of-crime had except what weariness made
Ad pontem vero ubi fugax multitudo se coartaverat, tanto
at the-bridge but where the-fleeing multitude itself had-crowded so-much
plus sceleris impia manus peregit, quanto minus constipata
more of-crime the-impious hand accomplished as less the-packed

turba se movere potuit. Sed multo plures fluvius absorbuit,
crowd itself to-move could but much more the-river swallowed
quam ensis hausit; nam cum hostis a tergo premeret,
than the-sword drained for when the-enemy from behind pressed
impellente metu in fluvium se praecipitabant, et
driving fear into the-river themselves they-threw and
attoniti confusique de morte in mortem ruebant. Erat
stunned and-confounded from death into death they-rushed it-was-possible
ibi cernere et aliam miseriam vel maximam, cum pons
there to-see also another misery even the-greatest when the-bridge
multitudine praegravatus repente corruit, et fluvius homines
by-the-multitude overloaded suddenly collapsed and the-river men
equosque pariter involvit. Nulli locus erat evadendi, nulli
and-horses alike engulfed for-no-one place was of-escaping for-no-one
profuit ingenium natandi; nam aut armorum pondere, aut
profited skill at-swimming for either of-arms by-the-weight or
inherentium conexione fatigatus, in profundum trahebatur.
of-those-clinging by-the-grip wearied into the-deep he-was-drawn
Quod malum ut scelestius esset, in ipsa die parasceuae
which evil that more-wicked it-might-be on the-very day of-the-Preparation
contigit, crevitque magnitudo sceleris ex reverentia temporis.
happened and-grew the-greatness of-the-crime from the-reverence of-the-time
His ita transactis, rex iter Coloniam convertit; sed
these-things thus transacted the-king his-journey to-Cologne turned but
cum illa quoque aditum sibi praeclusisset, in villa quae
since that-city also entry to-him had-barred in the-village which
dicitur Bunna dominica tantum paschae peracta, Mogontiam
is-called Bonn the-Lord's-day only of-Easter spent to-Mainz
festinus rediit, et sparsis ubique legatis querimoniam ad
hastily returned and scattered everywhere envoys a-complaint to
proceres in hunc modum direxit: Si per invasionem regnum
the-nobles in this manner he-directed if by invasion the-kingdom

occupassem, tamen resistentes potestati nostrae retunderem,
I-had-seized yet those-resisting to-power our I-would-beat-back
in quantum possem. Nunc autem cum in sumpta regni
in as-much-as I-could now moreover since in the-assumed of-the-kingdom
dignitate vestris paruerim praeceptis, ausus est quisquam
dignity to-your I-have-obeyed commands dared has anyone
impune, in publicam contumeliam regnum et nos armis
with-impunity to public insult the-kingdom and us with-arms
vexare? Cum enim Leodium ituri, ubi nobis curia pascalis
to-harass when for to-Liège about-to-go where by-us the-court paschal
habenda fuerat, ad fluvium Masa venissemus, episcopus
to-be-held had-been to the-river Meuse we-had-come the-bishop
Leodicensis et dux Heinricus, de quorum fide et obsequii
of-Liège and duke Henry of whose faith and of-service
devotione multum praesumebamus, nobis latenter insidias
the-devotion much we-presumed for-us secretly ambushes
posuerant, et nostros inscios et ad pugnam imparatos
had-placed and ours unaware and for fight unprepared
caedebant, capiebant, fugabant. Quae et quanta clades
they-slaughtered captured routed what and how-great a-disaster
ibi acciderit, tam pudet referre, quam inultum dimittere.
there befell as it-shames to-relate as unavenged to-let-go
Igitur constrictus et eventus asperitate et temporis
therefore constrained both of-the-outcome by-the-harshness and of-time
articulo, Coloniam diverti; quae cum me recipere satis
by-the-crisis to-Cologne I-turned-aside which when me to-receive quite
superbe refutaret, apud villam Bunnam sanctum diem
proudly refused at the-village of-Bonn the-holy day
paschae utcumque peregi. Cui umquam regiae personae
of-Easter somehow I-spent to-what ever royal person
tanta contumelia facta est? Nec solum me petit haec
so-great an-insult done was nor only me assails this

contumelia: vos despecti estis; isti praesumptores decreta
insult you despised are these presumptuous-men the-decrees
vestra auctoritatem habere nolunt, sua tantum statuta firma
your authority to-have wish-not their-own only statutes firm
esse volunt; denique in quos totum regni pondus se
to-be they-wish finally on whom the-whole of-the-kingdom weight itself
reclinet, haberi cupiunt. Regem quem constituistis, destituere
may-lean to-be-held they-desire the-king whom you-have-set-up to-overthrow
parant, ut nihil eorum quae vos decernitis, ratum
they-prepare that nothing of-those-things which you decree ratified
sit. Igitur haec iniuria mea, regni potius est, quam
be therefore this injury of-mine of-the-kingdom rather is than
mea; nam unius capitis licet summi deiectio, reparabile
mine for of-one head though highest the-casting-down a-repairable
regni dampnum est; principum autem conculcatio, ruina
of-the-kingdom loss is of-the-princes moreover the-trampling the-ruin
regni est. An haec inpune feremus, et ex ignobili
of-the-kingdom is or these-things with-impunity shall-we-bear and from ignoble
pacientia nostra magis tumebit eorum superbia? Absit, ut
patience our more will-swell their pride far-be-it that
qui dicimur inhonorati, dicamur et inulti. Pauca dixisse
we-who are-called dishonored be-called also unavenged few-things to-have-said
sat est; desides animi prolixae cohortationis stimulo opus
enough is idle minds of-lengthy exhortation of-the-goad need
habent. Causa magis ad incitamentum sit quam verba. Quia
have let-the-cause rather for incitement be than words since
igitur contra tam superbos hostes rei publicae viribus
therefore against such proud enemies of-the-state public strength
utendum est, expeditionem vobis et rogando praecipimus
to-be-used is an-expedition to-you both by-asking we-command
et praecipiendo rogamus, cuius collectioni et tempus
and by-commanding we-ask for-whose gathering both the-time

Kalendas Iulii et locum Wirziburgensem urbem praefinimus.
the-Kalends of-July and the-place the-Würzburg city we-fix-beforehand
Cum igitur audisset Heinricus dux, et Colonienses cum
when therefore had-heard Henry the-duke and the-men-of-Cologne with
Leodicensibus, quod super se rex exercitum ducere vellet,
the-men-of-Liège that against them the-king an-army to-lead wished
arma parabant, copias colligebant, urbes firmabant, et ad
arms they-prepared forces collected cities strengthened and for
resistendum pari voto studioque se accingebant. Sed et
resisting with-equal wish and-zeal themselves girded but also
imperatorem consiliis et precibus urguebant, ut imperialem
the-emperor with-counsels and prayers they-pressed that the-imperial
dignitatem, quam non ratione convictus, sed vi ferroque
dignity which not by-reason convicted but by-force and-sword
mortem intentante coactus dimisisset, resumeret; se
death threatening compelled he-had-given-up he-should-resume themselves
sibi nec armis defore nec animis; multos illum in brevi
to-him neither in-arms to-be-lacking nor in-spirit many him in brief
fautores habiturum, quia multi multum abhominarentur tam
supporters about-to-have because many greatly abhorred so
insolitum facinus et inhumanum. Quorum importunitati hac
unwonted a-crime and inhuman to-whose importunity with-this
ille ratione reniti coepit: impossibile esse amissum imperium
he reason to-resist began impossible to-be the-lost empire
armis repetere, quod possessum armis optinere nequivisset;
by-arms to-seek-again which possessed by-arms to-hold he-had-been-unable
illud sibi non esse tanti, ut multorum exitio
it to-himself not to-be of-such-worth that of-many by-the-destruction
recipiendum estimaret; beatius sibi et tutius fore, ut
to-be-recovered he-should-judge(-it) happier for-himself and safer to-be that
privatus, licet indigne deiectus, viveret. Sic utrimque data
a-private-man though unworthily cast-down he-should-live thus on-both-sides given

redditaque ratione, cum instare non desinerent, ne benignitatem
and-returned reason when to-press not they-ceased lest the-kindness
circa se removeret a se, nec ad integrum consensit,
toward himself he-should-remove from himself neither to the-whole did-he-consent
nec abnuit, providusque futuri praecipites eorum animos
nor refuse and-provident of-the-future headlong their minds
spe dubia suspendit. Igitur primo Coloniam, quae primum
with-hope doubtful he-suspended therefore first Cologne which the-first
impetum latura fuerat, vallo turribusque muniebat,
onset about-to-bear had-been with-rampart and-towers they-fortified
et congestis belli stipendiis, impositoque praesidio, periculum
and heaped-up of-war the-supplies and-imposed a-garrison danger
suum fortibus animis expectabant. Sic et alias urbes quas
their with-brave minds they-awaited thus also other cities which
invadendas credebant, munitione, machinis, et robore
to-be-invaded they-believed with-fortification with-engines and with-the-strength
militum firmabant. Sed et edictum sub comminatione
of-soldiers they-strengthened but also an-edict under threat
crudeli ubique properabat, ut adversus exercitum in magna
cruel everywhere hastened that against an-army in great
superbia super se venturum parati essent, et patriam,
pride upon them about-to-come ready they-should-be and the-homeland
libertatem, vitamque defenderent, neu sinerent vel uxores
liberty and-life defend nor allow either wives
suas corruptionis ludibrio substerni, vel agros in alienos
their of-corruption to-the-mockery to-be-laid-under or fields to foreign
dominos distrahi. Iam rex Renum cum exercitu valido
masters to-be-parceled-out now the-king the-Rhine with army strong
transierat, et primo Coloniam, quae quasi caput inter alias
had-crossed and first Cologne which as-if head among other
urbes eminebat, magno impetu invasit, reputans se sibi
cities stood-out with-great onset attacked reckoning himself to-himself

membra facilius subicere, contrito tam valido capite. Sed
the-limbs more-easily to-subject crushed so strong a-head but
res longe praeter spem evenit; nam cruenta repulsa
the-matter far beyond hope turned-out for by-a-bloody repulse
retroacti, procul locatis castris urbem obsidione vallabant.
driven-back far-off placed the-camp the-city with-a-siege they-surrounded
Magis autem dixerim, obsessores ab obsessis obsessos; nam
more moreover I-would-say the-besiegers by the-besieged besieged for
praereptis sibi navibus quae per Renum descendentes
snatched from-them the-ships which down the-Rhine coming-down
exercitui commeatum portabant, premente fame quasi quadam
for-the-army supplies were-carrying pressing hunger as-if by-a-certain
obsidione constricti laborabant. Interim ut urbem ab obsidione
siege constrained they-labored meanwhile that the-city from the-siege
liberarent, totius patriae robur undique coibat. Sed
they-might-free of-the-whole homeland the-strength from-all-sides came-together but
imperator tam cruentum nefas detestatus, pugnam obnixe
the-emperor so bloody a-crime detesting a-fight stubbornly
dissuadebat: cur eis tantus ardor pellendae obsidionis
dissuaded why in-them so-great ardor of-driving-off the-siege
inesset, quae non nisi magna sui clade pelli
should-be which not except with-great of-themselves disaster to-be-driven-off
posset; tolleret omnem sollicitudinem capiendae urbis,
could he-should-remove all anxiety of-to-be-captured the-city
quae et ex firmitate murorum et ex forti milite
which both from the-strength of-the-walls and from the-brave soldiery
tutissima, et omni victus genere esset opulentissima,
most-safe and in-every of-food kind was most-wealthy
accedente et Reni beneficio, qui per naves delicias quas
being-added also of-the-Rhine the-benefit which through ships delicacies which
appeterent, invito obsessore subministraret; sinerent potius
they-might-seek unwilling the-besieger might-supply they-should-allow rather

eos in cladem suam furere, et inexpugnabilem urbem,
them to disaster their-own to-rage and an-impregnable city
unde vulnera tantum caesosque reportarent, impugnare;
whence wounds only and-slain-men they-should-bring-back to-attack
sinerent eos late vastare, dum ruris copia
they-should-allow them widely to-lay-waste until of-the-countryside the-plenty
consumpta, esurire inciperent; sinerent eos grassari, dum
consumed to-hunger they-began they-should-allow them to-run-riot until
equos virosque labor enervaret: fore ut victoria sibi
horses and-men toil should-enervate to-come-about that victory for-them
parvo constaret, si paululum tolerantia et oportunitate
little should-cost if a-little with-patience and the-favorableness
temporis uti voluissent. Sic imperatoris hortatu a
of-time to-use they-had-been-willing thus of-the-emperor by-the-exhortation from
pugna revocati, hostiles tantum excursus observabant, et
fight recalled the-hostile only sallies they-watched and
ignaros loci passim caedentes, metum hosti, ne
unaware of-the-place here-and-there slaughtering fear into-the-enemy lest
longius evagaretur, incutiebant. Omnia vero quae praedixerat
farther he-should-wander they-struck all-things but which had-foretold
imperator, evenerunt. Quotiens enim temptabant portas
the-emperor happened as-often-as for they-tried the-gates
infringere, ariete murum perrumpere, tormentis turres
to-break with-the-ram the-wall to-break-through with-engines the-towers
deicere, infecto negotio, vulnera tantum et funera ad castra
to-throw-down unfinished the-business wounds only and deaths to the-camp
reportabant. Homines et equi exhausti tam alimentorum
they-brought-back men and horses exhausted as-much of-provisions
penuria quam laboris improbitate, viribus deficiebant; nam
by-scarcity as of-toil by-the-excess in-strength failed for
agris in circuitu vastatis, nihil reperiebant, sed nec ulterius
the-fields in the-circuit laid-waste nothing they-found but nor further

progredi latitante in insidiis hoste praesumebant; accessit
to-advance lurking in ambushes the-enemy they-presumed there-was-added
his malis etiam morbus, quem foetor castrorum, ut fieri
to-these evils also a-disease which the-stench of-the-camp as to-happen
solet, aere viciato concitaverat, qui non solum vulgus,
is-wont the-air polluted had-stirred which not only the-common-people
sed etiam ipsos principes aut aegritudine confecit, aut lęto
but even the-very princes either by-sickness wore-out or by-death
rapuit. Huiusmodi rerum adversitate fatigati, quid acturi
snatched of-this-kind of-things by-the-adversity wearied what about-to-do
essent, ambigebant, quia volentes mori occasionem pugnae non
they-were they-doubted because wishing to-die the-occasion of-fight not
inveniebant; aut si reditum pararent, certi quod hostis a
they-found or if a-return they-prepared sure that the-enemy from
tergo premeret, exercitum suum fuga spargendum metuebant.
behind would-press army their by-flight to-be-scattered they-feared
Qua tempestate mentis dum fluctuarent, subito fama
in-which tempest of-mind while they-wavered suddenly a-report
veniens, nubila tantae perturbationis in serenum convertit.
coming the-clouds of-such perturbation into fair-weather turned
Retulit enim, imperatorem mortis debitum persolvisse. Ad
it-reported for the-emperor of-death the-debt to-have-paid at
quam famam primo hesitabant; sed cum nuncius extremum
which report at-first they-hesitated but when the-messenger the-last
munus patris, anulum videlicet et gladium, cum mandatis
gift of-his-father the-ring namely and the-sword with commands
filio portans venisset, tanta laeticia oborta est, ut voces
to-the-son carrying had-come such joy arisen was that the-voices
gratulantium vix sedari possent. Sed non minor luctus
of-those-rejoicing scarcely to-be-calmed could but not lesser grief
circa funus imperatoris erat: proceres plangebant, vulgus
around the-funeral of-the-emperor was the-nobles bewailed the-common-people

lamentabatur, ubique gemitus, ubique planctus, ubique vox
lamented everywhere groaning everywhere wailing everywhere the-voice
dolentium audiebatur. Ad exequias illas viduae, pupilli, denique
of-those-grieving was-heard to obsequies those widows orphans finally
totius patriae pauperes conveniunt: deflent se orbatos
of-the-whole country the-poor come-together they-weep themselves bereaved
patre, fundunt in corpus lacrimas, deosculantur largas
of-a-father they-pour on the-body tears they-kiss the-generous
manus. Vix avellebantur ab amplexu extincti corporis,
hands scarcely were-they-torn from the-embrace of-the-dead body
vix illud condendi copia dabatur. Sed nec tumulum
scarcely it of-burying the-opportunity was-given but not-even the-tomb
deserebant, ibi vigiliis, lacrimis et orationibus vacabant,
did-they-desert there to-vigils to-tears and to-prayers they-gave-themselves
plangendo recitantes, et recitando plangentes, quaenam opera
by-wailing reciting and by-reciting wailing what works
misericordiae fecisset in se; quamquam mors eius plangenda
of-mercy he-had-done on them although the-death his to-be-bewailed
non fuit, quam bona vita praecessit, qui fidem rectam, spem
not was which a-good life preceded who faith right hope
firmam, compunctionem cordis amaram in extremis suis
firm compunction of-heart bitter in last-hours his
tenuit; quem nec de pudendis admissis publicam agere
held whom not about shameful committed-deeds a-public to-make
confessionem puduit, qui tota cordis aviditate dominici
confession shamed who with-whole of-heart eagerness of-the-Lord's
corporis cibum sumpsit. Felix es, imperator Heinrice,
body the-food took happy are-you emperor Henry
qui tales excubias, tales intercessores tibi parasti, qui
who such watchers such intercessors for-yourself have-prepared who
nunc multipliciter auctum de manu Domini recipis, quod
now manifold increased from the-hand of-the-Lord receive what

in manus pauperum abscondisti. Turbolentum regnum pro
into the-hands of-the-poor you-hid a-turbulent kingdom for
tranquillo, defectivum pro aeterno, terrenum pro coelesti
a-tranquil a-failing for an-eternal an-earthly for a-heavenly
mutasti. Nunc demum regnas, nunc diadema portas, quod
you-have-changed now at-last you-reign now a-diadem you-wear which
tibi nec heres tuus praeripiat, nec adversarius invideat.
from-you neither heir your may-snatch nor adversary begrudge
Ergo continendae sunt lacrimae, si contineri possent; huic
therefore to-be-held-back are tears if to-be-held-back they-could to-this
tuae felicitati debetur tripudium non luctus, exultatio non
your happiness is-owed dancing not grief exultation not
planctus; voces gratulantium, non dolentium. Post hunc
wailing voices of-those-rejoicing not of-those-grieving after this
rerum eventum hi qui contra regiam maiestatem bellum
of-things outcome those who against the-royal majesty war
susceperant, mortua spe sua animis et viribus deficiebant, et
had-taken-up dead hope their in-spirits and strength failed and
quod in illo rerum articulo faciendum fuit, ad gratiam regis
what at that of-things crisis to-be-done was to the-favor of-the-king
deditione, pecunia, quoque modo quisque poterat, recurrebant.
by-surrender by-money in-whatever way each could they-ran-back
Ecce habes de gestis, de expensis in pauperes, de
behold you-have about the-deeds about the-expenses on the-poor about
fortuna, de obitu imperatoris Heinrici, quae sicut non
the-fortune about the-death of-the-emperor Henry things-which as not
poterant absque lacrimis a me scribi, sic non poterunt
could without tears by me to-be-written so not they-will-be-able
absque lacrimis a te legi.
without tears by you to-be-read

GREGORY VII

Registrum

Letters and Acts on Henry IV

II 55a · Dictatus papae

II 55A · THE DICTATUS PAPAE

In twenty-seven terse propositions Gregory states the powers of the Roman see: the Roman church was founded by God alone and has never erred; the pope alone may depose and restore bishops, wear the imperial insignia, and have his feet kissed by princes; he may depose emperors, is judged by no one, and may absolve subjects from fealty to the wicked.

Quod Romana ecclesia a solo Domino sit fundata.
that the-Roman church by alone the-Lord was founded
Quod solus Romanus pontifex iure dicatur universalis.
that alone the-Roman pontiff by-right be-called universal
Quod ille solus possit deponere episcopos vel reconciliare.
that he alone can to-depose bishops or to-reconcile(-them)
Quod legatus eius omnibus episcopis praesit in concilio, etiam
that envoy his over-all bishops presides in council even
inferioris gradus; et adversus eos sententiam depositionis
of-lower rank and against them a-sentence of-deposition
possit dare.
can to-give
Quod absentes papa possit deponere.
that the-absent the-pope can to-depose
Quod cum excommunicatis ab illo inter cetera nec in
that with the-excommunicated by him among other-things not-even in
eadem domo debemus manere.
the-same house we-ought to-remain
Quod illi soli licet pro temporis necessitate novas
that for-him alone it-is-allowed according-to of-the-time the-necessity new
leges condere, novas plebes congregare, de canonica
laws to-establish new congregations to-gather from a-canonry

abbatiam facere, et e contra divitem episcopatum dividere
an-abbey to-make and on the-contrary a-rich bishopric to-divide
et inopes unire.
and poor-ones to-unite
Quod solus possit uti imperialibus insigniis.
that alone he-can to-use the-imperial insignia
Quod solius papae pedes omnes principes deosculentur.
that of-alone the-pope the-feet all princes should-kiss
Quod illius solius nomen in ecclesiis recitetur.
that his alone name in the-churches be-recited
Quod hoc unicum est nomen in mundo.
that this unique is the-name in the-world
Quod illi liceat imperatores deponere.
that for-him it-is-allowed emperors to-depose
Quod illi liceat de sede ad sedem, necessitate cogente,
that for-him it-is-allowed from see to see necessity compelling
episcopos transmutare.
bishops to-transfer
Quod de omni ecclesia, quocumque voluerit, clericum
that from every church wherever he-shall-have-wished a-cleric
valeat ordinare.
he-is-able to-ordain
Quod ab illo ordinatus alii ecclesiae praeesse potest,
that by him ordained over-another church to-preside can
sed non militare; et quod ab aliquo episcopo non debet
but not to-serve and that from any bishop not he-ought
superiorem gradum accipere.
higher rank to-receive
Quod nulla synodus absque praecepto eius debet generalis
that no synod without the-command his ought general
vocari.
to-be-called

Quod nullum capitulum nullusque liber canonicus habeatur
that no chapter and-no book canonical be-held
absque illius auctoritate.
without his authority
Quod sententia illius a nullo debeat retractari, et ipse
that the-sentence his by no-one ought to-be-retracted and he-himself
omnium solus retractare possit.
of-all alone to-retract can
Quod a nemine ipse iudicari debeat.
that by no-one he-himself to-be-judged ought
Quod nullus audeat condemnare apostolicam sedem apellantem.
that no-one dare to-condemn the-apostolic see (one)-appealing-to
Quod maiores causae cuiuscumque ecclesiae ad eam referri
that the-greater causes of-whatever church to it to-be-referred
debeant.
ought
Quod Romana ecclesia numquam erravit nec in perpetuum,
that the-Roman church never has-erred nor into perpetuity
scriptura testante, errabit.
scripture testifying will-err
Quod Romanus pontifex, si canonice fuerit ordinatus,
that the-Roman pontiff if canonically he-shall-have-been ordained
meritis beati Petri indubitanter efficitur sanctus, testante
by-the-merits of-blessed Peter undoubtedly is-made holy testifying
sancto Ennodio Papiensi episcopo, ei multis sanctis patribus
saint Ennodius of-Pavia bishop him many holy fathers
faventibus, sicut in decretis beati Symachi papae continetur.
favoring as in the-decrees of-blessed Symmachus pope is-contained
Quod illius praecepto et licentia subiectis liceat accusare.
that his by-the-command and permission for-subjects it-is-allowed to-accuse

Quod absque synodali conventu possit episcopos deponere
that without synodal assembly he-can bishops to-depose
et reconciliare.
and to-reconcile
Quod catholicus non habeatur, qui non concordat Romanae
that catholic not be-held he-who not agrees with-the-Roman
ecclesiae.
church
Quod a fidelitate iniquorum subiectos potest absolvere.
that from fealty to-the-wicked subjects he-can to-absolve

III 10 · GREGORY'S WARNING TO HENRY

Gregory sends his blessing only on condition of obedience, since Henry is said to communicate with the excommunicated, and bids him confess to a bishop and do penance. He contrasts the king's humble letters with his deeds at Milan, Fermo, and Spoleto, reminds him that Peter is the master of the church, defends the synod's decree, and offers to temper it if Henry's wise men show cause. He warns him with Saul's example and defers other answers until the envoys return.

Gregorius episcopus servus servorum Dei Henrico regi
Gregory bishop servant of-the-servants of-God to-Henry king
salutem et apostolicam benedictionem, si tamen apostolicae
greeting and apostolic blessing if yet the-apostolic
sedi, ut christianum decet regem, oboedierit.
see as a-Christian befits king he-shall-have-obeyed
Considerantes ac sollicite pensantes, quam districto iudici
considering and anxiously weighing how strict to-a-judge
de dispensatione crediti nobis per beatum Petrum
for the-dispensation of-the-entrusted to-us by blessed Peter
apostolorum principem ministerii rationem reddituri sumus,
of-the-apostles prince ministry account about-to-render we-are

cum dubitatione apostolicam tibi benedictionem mandavimus;
with hesitation the-apostolic to-you blessing we-have-sent
quoniam iudicio sedis apostolicae ac synodali censura
since by-the-judgment of-the-see apostolic and by-synodal censure
excommunicatis communionem tuam scienter exhibere diceris.
to-the-excommunicated communion your knowingly to-show you-are-said
Quod si verum est, tu ipse cognoscis: quod nec divinae
which if true it-is you yourself know that neither of-divine
nec apostolicae benedictionis gratiam percipere possis, nisi,
nor of-apostolic blessing the-grace to-receive you-can unless
his qui excommunicati sunt a te separatis et compulsis ad
those who excommunicated are from you separated and compelled to
poenitentiam, de transgressione tua condigna penitudine et
penance for transgression your by-fitting repentance and
satisfactione prius absolutionem consequaris et indulgentiam.
satisfaction first absolution you-obtain and indulgence
Unde excellentiae tuae consulimus: ut, si in hac re te
whence to-excellence your we-counsel that if in this matter yourself
culpabilem sentis, celeri confessione ad consilium alicuius
guilty you-feel with-swift confession to the-counsel of-some
religiosi episcopi venias. Qui, cum nostra licentia, congruam
religious bishop you-come who with our permission a-fitting
tibi pro hac culpa iniungens poenitentiam, te absolvat;
on-you for this fault enjoining penance you may-absolve
et nobis tuo consensu modum poenitentiae tuae per
and to-us with-your consent the-manner of-penance your through
epistolam suam veraciter intimare studeat.
letter his truthfully to-intimate may-strive
De cetero mirum nobis valde videtur: quod totiens nobis tam
for the-rest wonderful to-us very it-seems that so-often to-us such
devotas epistolas et tantam humilitatem tuae celsitudinis
devoted letters and such humility of-your highness

per legatorum tuorum verba transmittis; filium te
through of-envoys your the-words you-send son yourself
sanctae matris ecclesiae et nostrum vocas, in fide subiectum,
of-holy mother church and ours you-call in faith subject
in dilectione unicum, in devotione praecipuum; postremo cum
in love unique in devotion foremost finally with
omni affectu dulcedinis et reverentiae te commendas; re
all affection of-sweetness and reverence you commend-yourself in-fact
tamen et factis asperrimum canonicis atque apostolicis decretis
yet and in-deeds most-harsh to-canonical and apostolic decrees
in his, quae ecclesiastica religio maxime poscit, te
in those-things which ecclesiastical religion most demands yourself
contrarium ostendis. Nam, ut de reliquis taceamus, quod
contrary you-show for that about the-rest we-may-keep-silent what
de causa Mediolanensi per matrem tuam, per confratres
about the-cause of-Milan through mother your through fellow-brothers
nostros episcopos, quos ad te misimus, nobis promiseras,
our bishops whom to you we-sent to-us you-had-promised
qualiter attenderis aut quo animo promiseris, ipsa
how you-have-attended-to(-it) or with-what mind you-promised(-it) the-very
res indicat. Et nunc quidem, ut vulnus vulneri infligeres,
matter indicates and now indeed that wound on-wound you-might-inflict
contra statuta apostolicae sedis tradidisti Firmanam et
against the-statutes of-the-apostolic see you-have-handed-over the-Fermo and
Spoletanam ecclesiam — si tamen ab homine tradi
Spoleto church if yet by man to-be-handed-over
ecclesia aut donari potest — quibusdam personis nobis
a-church or to-be-given can to-certain persons to-us
etiam ignotis; quibus non licet, nisi probatis et ante
even unknown on-whom not it-is-allowed except proved and before
bene cognitis, regulariter manum imponere.
well known regularly a-hand to-lay

Decuerat regiam dignitatem tuam, cum te filium ecclesiae
it-had-befitted royal dignity your since yourself son of-the-church
confiteris, honorabilius magistrum ecclesiae, hoc est beatum
you-confess more-honorably the-master of-the-church that is blessed
Petrum apostolorum principem, intueri. Cui, si de dominicis
Peter of-the-apostles prince to-regard to-whom if of the-Lord's
ovibus es, dominica voce et potestate ad pascendum traditus
sheep you-are by-the-Lord's voice and power for feeding handed-over
es, dicente sibi Christo: Petre, pasce oves meas, et iterum:
you-are saying to-him Christ Peter feed sheep my and again
Tibi tradite sunt claves regni caelorum; et quodcumque
to-you handed-over are the-keys of-the-kingdom of-the-heavens and whatever
ligaveris super terram, erit ligatum et in caelis; et
you-shall-have-bound upon earth will-be bound also in the-heavens and
quodcumque solveris super terram, erit solutum et
whatever you-shall-have-loosed upon earth will-be loosed also
in caelis. In cuius sede et apostolica administratione dum
in the-heavens in whose see and apostolic administration while
nos qualescunque peccatores et indigni divina dispositione
we whatever-kind-of sinners and unworthy by-divine disposition
vicem suae potestatis gerimus, profecto, quicquid ad nos vel
the-office of-his power bear surely whatever to us either
per scripta aut nudis verbis miseris, ipse recipit. Et
through writings or in-bare words you-shall-have-sent he-himself receives and
dum nos aut elementa percurrimus aut loquentium voces
while we either the-letters run-through or of-the-speakers the-voices
auscultamus, ipse, ex quo corde mandata prodierint,
listen-to he-himself from what heart the-commands have-come-forth
subtili inspectione discernit. Quapropter providendum esset
with-subtle inspection discerns wherefore to-be-provided it-would-be
tuae celsitudini: ne erga sedem apostolicam in verbis et
for-your highness lest toward the-see apostolic in words and

legationibus tuis aliqua inveniretur discrepantia voluntatis; et
embassies your any should-be-found discrepancy of-will and
in his, per quae christiana fides et status ecclesiae
in those-things through which the-Christian faith and the-state of-the-church
ad aeternam salutem maxime proficit, non nobis sed Deo
to eternal salvation most advances not to-us but to-God
omnipotenti debitam non denegares reverentiam; quamquam
almighty the-due not you-should-deny reverence although
apostolis eorumque successoribus Dominus dicere dignatus sit:
to-the-apostles and-their successors the-Lord to-say deigned has
Qui vos audit, me audit, et qui vos spernit, me spernit.
he-who you hears me hears and he-who you spurns me spurns
Scimus enim, quoniam, qui fidelem Deo oboedientiam
we-know for that he-who faithful to-God obedience
exhibere non rennuit, in his, quae sanctorum patrum
to-show not refuses in those-things which of-the-holy fathers
statuta sequentes dixerimus, veluti si ab ore ipsius
the-statutes following we-shall-have-said as if from the-mouth of-the-very
apostoli accepisset, nostra monita servare non spernit. Nam,
apostle he-had-received our admonitions to-keep not spurns for
si propter reverentiam cathedre Moysi Dominus praecepit
if for reverence of-the-chair of-Moses the-Lord commanded
apostolis, ut quaecunque scribae et Farisei super eam sedentes
the-apostles that whatever-things the-scribes and Pharisees upon it sitting
dicerent observarent, non dubium est, quin apostolica et
should-say they-should-observe not doubtful it-is but-that the-apostolic and
euangelica doctrina, cuius sedes et fundamentum Christus est,
gospel doctrine whose seat and foundation Christ is
cum omni veneratione a fidelibus per eos, qui in ministerium
with all veneration by the-faithful through those who into the-ministry
praedicationis electi sunt, suscipienda et tenenda sit.
of-preaching chosen have-been to-be-received and to-be-held is

Congregata nanque hoc in anno apud sedem apostolicam
assembled for this in year at the-see apostolic
synodo — cui nos superna dispensatio praesidere voluit,
a-synod over-which us the-supernal dispensation to-preside wished
cui etiam nonnulli tuorum interfuere fidelium — videntes
at-which also some of-your were-present faithful seeing
ordinem christianae religionis multis iam labefactatum
the-order of-the-Christian religion for-many now shaken
temporibus, et principales ac proprias lucrandarum animarum
times and the-principal and proper of-to-be-won souls
causas diu prolapsas et suadente diabolo conculcatas,
causes long fallen and persuading the-devil trampled
concussi periculo et manifesta perditione dominici gregis,
struck by-the-danger and manifest perdition of-the-Lord's flock
ad sanctorum patrum decreta doctrinamque recurrimus; nichil
to of-the-holy fathers the-decrees and-teaching we-had-recourse nothing
novi, nichil adinventione nostra statuentes; sed primam et
new nothing by-invention our establishing but the-first and
unicam ecclesiasticae disciplinae regulam et tritam sanctorum
only of-ecclesiastical discipline rule and the-worn of-the-saints
viam relicto errore repetendam et sectandam esse censuimus.
way abandoned error to-be-sought-again and to-be-followed to-be we-judged
Neque enim alium nostrae salutis et aeternae vitae introitum
nor for another of-our salvation and of-eternal life entrance
Christi ovibus eorumque pastoribus patere cognoscimus,
of-Christ to-the-sheep and-their shepherds to-lie-open we-know
nisi quem, ab ipso monstratum qui dixit: Ego sum ostium;
except that-which by him shown who said I am the-door
per me si quis introierit, salvabitur et pascua inveniet,
through me if anyone shall-have-entered he-will-be-saved and pastures will-find
et ab apostolis praedicatum, et a sanctis patribus observatum,
and by the-apostles preached and by the-holy fathers observed

in euangelica et in omni divinarum scripturarum pagina
in the-gospel and in every of-the-divine scriptures page
didicimus. Huius autem decreti — quod quidam dicunt,
we-have-learned of-this moreover decree which some call
humanos divinis honoribus praeponentes, importabile pondus
human(-honors) to-divine honors preferring an-unbearable weight
et immensam gravitudinem, nos autem magis proprio
and immense heaviness we moreover rather by-the-proper
vocabulo: recuperandae salutis necessariam veritatem vocamus
name of-to-be-recovered salvation the-necessary truth we-call
et lucem — non solum a te vel ab his, qui in regno tuo sunt,
and light not only by you or by those who in kingdom your are
sed ab omnibus terrarum principibus et populis, qui Christum
but by all of-the-earth princes and peoples who Christ
confitentur et colunt, devote suscipiendam et observandam
confess and worship devoutly to-be-received and to-be-observed
adiudicavimus; quamquam hoc multum desideremus et te
we-have-adjudged although this much we-desire and you
permaxime deceret, ut, sicut caeteris gloria honore virtuteque
most-greatly would-befit that as than-the-rest in-glory in-honor and-in-virtue
potentior, ita esses et in Christi devotione sublimior.
more-powerful so you-should-be also in of-Christ devotion loftier
Attamen, ne haec supra modum tibi gravia aut iniqua
nevertheless lest these-things beyond measure to-you heavy or unjust
viderentur, per tuos fideles tibi mandavimus: ne pravae
should-seem through your faithful to-you we-sent-word lest of-a-wicked
consuetudinis mutatio te commoveret; mitteres ad nos,
custom the-change you should-disturb you-should-send to us
quos sapientes et religiosos in regno tuo invenire posses;
those-whom wise and religious in kingdom your to-find you-could
qui si aliqua ratione demonstrare vel adstruere possent, in
who if by-any reason to-demonstrate or to-establish they-could in

quo, salvo aeterni Regis honore et sine periculo animarum
what saving of-the-eternal King the-honor and without danger of-souls
nostrarum, promulgatam sanctorum patrum possemus temperare
our the-promulgated of-the-holy fathers we-could to-temper
sententiam, eorum consiliis condescenderemus. Quod quidem
sentence to-their counsels we-would-condescend which indeed
etsi a nobis tam amicabiliter monitus non fuisses, aequum
even-if by us so amicably admonished not you-had-been fair
tamen fuerat: ut prius, in quo te gravaremus aut tuis
nevertheless it-had-been that first in what you we-burdened or to-your
honoribus obstaremus, rationabiliter a nobis exigeres,
honors stood-in-the-way reasonably from us you-should-demand
quam apostolica decreta violares. Verum, quanti aut
than the-apostolic decrees you-should-violate but of-what-account either
nostra monita aut observantiam iustitiae feceris, in his,
our admonitions or the-observance of-justice you-have-made in those-things
quae postmodum a te gesta et disposita sunt, declaratur.
which afterward by you done and arranged have-been is-declared
Sed quia, dum adhuc longa Dei patientia ad emendationem
but because while still the-long of-God patience to amendment
te invitat, crescente intelligentia tua, ad oboedientiam
you invites growing understanding your to obedience
mandatorum Dei cor et animum tuum flecti posse
of-the-commands of-God heart and mind your to-be-bent to-be-able
speramus; paterna te caritate monemus: ut, Christi super
we-hope with-paternal you charity we-admonish that of-Christ over
te imperium recognoscens, honorem tuum eius honori
you the-command recognizing honor your to-his honor
praeponere, quam sit periculosum cogites; et libertatem
to-prefer how it-is dangerous you-should-reflect and the-liberty
ecclesiae, quam sponsam sibi coelesti consortio iungere
of-the-church which as-bride to-himself in-heavenly union to-join

dignatus est, non iam tua occupatione impedias;
deigned he-has not any-longer by-your occupation you-should-hinder
sed, quo maxime crescat, Deo omnipotenti et beato
but by-which most it-may-grow to-God almighty and to-blessed
Petro, a quibus et tua mereatur amplificari gloria, auxilium
Peter by whom also your may-merit to-be-amplified glory the-help
tuae virtutis fideli devotione exhibere incipias. Quod
of-your strength with-faithful devotion to-show you-should-begin which
nimirum pro collata tibi ex hostibus tuis victoria nunc a
surely for the-conferred on-you over enemies your victory now by
te permaxime illis debitum fore, cognoscere debes; ut, dum
you most-greatly to-them due to-be to-recognize you-ought that while
te memorabili prosperitate laetificant, ex concessis beneficiis
you with-memorable prosperity they-gladden from the-granted benefits
devotiorem videant. Atque hoc ut timor Dei, in cuius manu
more-devoted they-may-see and this that the-fear of-God in whose hand
et potestate omne regnum est et imperium, praecordiis tuis
and power every kingdom is and empire in-the-heart your
altius quam nostra admonitio infigat, in mente habeas:
more-deeply than our admonition may-fix in mind have
quid Sauli, post adeptam victoriam, qua propheta iubente
what to-Saul after the-obtained victory which the-prophet commanding
usus est, de suo triumpho glorianti et eiusdem prophetae
used he-has over his triumph boasting and of-the-same prophet
monita non exequenti, acciderit et qualiter a Domino
the-admonitions not carrying-out befell and how by the-Lord
reprobatus sit; quanta vero gratia David regem ex merito
rejected he-was how-great but grace David the-king from the-merit
humilitatis inter virtutum insignia subsecuta fuit.
of-humility among of-virtues the-insignia followed has

Denique super his, quae in epistolis tuis visa ac cognita
finally about those-things which in letters your seen and recognized
reticemus, non antea tibi certa responsa dabimus, donec
we-keep-silent not before to-you certain answers we-shall-give until
legati tui Rabbodi, Adelpreth et Uodescalki, quos his
the-envoys your Rapoto Adalbert and Udalscalc whom to-these
adiuncximus, ad nos reversi, super his, quae illis tecum
we-have-joined to us returned about those-things which to-them with-you
agenda commisimus, tuam nobis plenius aperiant voluntatem.
to-be-treated we-have-committed your to-us more-fully may-lay-open will
Data Romae 6 Idus Ianuarii, indictione 14.
given at-Rome on-the-sixth Ides of-January in-the-indiction fourteenth

III 10a · De synodo

III 10A · THE LENTEN SYNOD OF 1076

The synod at Rome suspends Siegfried of Mainz and the bishops who willingly signed his schism, gives those who signed unwillingly until the feast of Saint Peter to make satisfaction, suspends the Lombard bishops who conspired against Peter, and excommunicates bishops and lords beyond the Alps. It ends with Gregory's prayer to Saint Peter, in which he forbids Henry to rule the German kingdom and Italy, frees all Christians from their oaths to him, forbids anyone to serve him as king, and binds him with anathema.

Anno ab incarnatione Domini millesimo septuagesimo
in-the-year from the-incarnation of-the-Lord thousandth seventieth
quinto, indictione 14, celebravit ipse domnus Gregorius
fifth in-the-indiction fourteenth celebrated himself lord Gregory
papa Rome synodum in ecclesia domini Salvatoris, quae
pope at-Rome a-synod in the-church of-the-Lord Savior which

Constantiniana dicitur; ubi interfuit episcoporum et abbatum
Constantinian is-called where was-present of-bishops and of-abbots
atque diversi ordinis clericorum et laicorum copia.
and of-various order of-clerics and of-laymen a-multitude
In qua, inter caetera decreta quae ibi gesta sunt,
in which among the-other decrees which there done were
excommunicavit Sigefredum Moguntinum archiepiscopum in
he-excommunicated Siegfried of-Mainz archbishop in
hunc modum: Sigefredum Moguntinum archiepiscopum, qui
this manner Siegfried of-Mainz archbishop who
conatus est episcopos atque abbates regni Teutonicorum
tried has the-bishops and abbots of-the-kingdom of-the-Teutons
a sancta Romana ecclesia, videlicet spirituali matre sua,
from the-holy Roman church namely spiritual mother their
scindere, iudicio sancti Spiritus et auctoritate beatorum
to-split by-the-judgment of-the-holy Spirit and by-the-authority of-the-blessed
apostolorum Petri et Pauli ab omni episcopali officio
apostles Peter and Paul from every episcopal office
suspendimus et a communione corporis et sanguinis Domini
we-suspend and from the-communion of-the-body and blood of-the-Lord
separamus; nisi forte mortis periculum superveniat; ita tamen,
we-separate unless perhaps of-death danger come-upon(-him) so yet
ut poenitentia ductus resipiscat. Caeteros vero, qui sua
that by-penitence led he-come-to-his-senses the-others but who of-their
sponte eius scismati consentiendo subscripserunt et in ea
own-accord with-his schism by-consenting subscribed and in that
iniquitate perdurare volunt, similiter ab omni episcopali officio
iniquity to-persist wish likewise from every episcopal office
suspendimus. Illos vero, qui non sponte consenserunt, usque
we-suspend those but who not willingly consented until
ad festivitatem sancti Petri sufferimus, eo quidem respectu,
to the-feast of-Saint Peter we-bear-with by-that indeed consideration

ut, si infra istum terminum idoneam aut per se aut
that if within that term fitting either through themselves or
per nuncios suos satisfactionem praesentiae nostrae non
through messengers their satisfaction to-presence our not
obtulerint, episcopali deinceps officio priventur.
they-shall-have-offered of-episcopal henceforth office they-be-deprived

Excommunicatio episcoporum Longobardiae.
excommunication of-the-bishops of-Lombardy

Episcopos Longobardiae, qui, spreta canonica et apostolica
the-bishops of-Lombardy who having-spurned canonical and apostolic
auctoritate, contra beatum Petrum apostolorum principem
authority against blessed Peter of-the-apostles prince
sacramento conspiraverunt, auctoritate eiusdem beati Petri
by-oath conspired by-the-authority of-the-same blessed Peter
ab omni episcopali officio suspendimus et a communione
from every episcopal office we-suspend and from the-communion
sanctae ecclesiae separamus.
of-holy church we-separate

Excommunicatio episcoporum ultramontanorum.
excommunication of-the-bishops beyond-the-mountains

Agathensem episcopum Berengarium, quia Nerbonensi
of-Agde the-bishop Berengar because with-the-Narbonne
episcopo excommunicato communicavit et vices episcopales
bishop excommunicated he-communicated and the-functions episcopal
pro illo fecit, excommunicamus. Viennensem episcopum
for him performed we-excommunicate of-Vienne the-bishop
Herimannum, iuste depositum pro simonia periuriis sacrilegiis
Hermann justly deposed for simony perjuries sacrileges
et apostasia, quia Viennensem ecclesiam infestare non
and apostasy because the-Vienne church to-infest not
desistit, excommunicamus; et ecclesiis Romanensi et
he-ceases we-excommunicate and for-the-churches of-Romans and

sancti Hyrenei Lugdunensi, quo usque eas occupaverit,
of-Saint Irenaeus at-Lyon up until them he-shall-have-occupied
divinum interdicimus officium. Desiderium et Romanensis
the-divine we-forbid office Desiderius and of-Romans
ecclesiae clericos, qui regulares nostros ab ea expulerunt et
church the-clerics who regular-canons our from it expelled and
excommunicatis communicaverunt, inde donec satisfaciant,
with-the-excommunicate communicated thenceforth until they-make-satisfaction
excommunicamus. Abbatem Sancti Egidii similiter et comitem
we-excommunicate the-abbot of-Saint Giles likewise and the-count
Sancti Egidii propter consanguineam; et comitem Forensem
of-Saint Giles on-account-of a-kinswoman and the-count of-Forez
et Umbertum de Belloioco propter infestationes Lugdunensis
and Humbert of Beaujeu on-account-of the-harassments of-the-Lyon
ecclesiae; Podiensem symoniacum homicidam Stephanum,
church of-Le-Puy the-simoniac murderer Stephen
scilicet a legatis nostris excommunicatum, et Pontium
namely by legates our excommunicated and Pons
Gratianopolitanum, quo usque resipiscat, excommunicamus.
of-Grenoble up until he-come-to-his-senses we-excommunicate
Et ea, quae Diensis episcopus in episcopatu Diensi de
and those-things which the-Die bishop in the-bishopric of-Die about
decimis et primitiis et ecclesiis fecit, et caetera, quae
tithes and first-fruits and churches did and the-other-things which
in legatione nostra statuit, nos quoque confirmamus.
in legation our he-established we also confirm
Excommunicatio Heinrici regis Teutonicorum.
excommunication of-Henry king of-the-Teutons
Beate Petre apostolorum princeps, inclina, quaeso, pias aures
blessed Peter of-the-apostles prince incline I-beseech kindly ears
tuas nobis et audi me servum tuum, quem ab infantia
your to-us and hear me servant your whom from infancy

nutristi et usque ad hunc diem de manu iniquorum
you-have-nourished and all-the-way to this day from the-hand of-the-wicked
liberasti, qui me pro tua fidelitate oderunt et odiunt. Tu
you-have-freed who me for your fidelity have-hated and hate you
michi testis es et domina mea mater Dei et beatus Paulus
to-me witness are and lady my the-mother of-God and blessed Paul
frater tuus inter omnes sanctos: quod tua sancta Romana
brother your among all the-saints that your holy Roman
ecclesia me invitum ad sua gubernacula traxit, et ego non
church me unwilling to its helm drew and I not
rapinam arbitratus sum ad sedem tuam ascendere, potiusque
robbery thought(-it) I-have to see your to-ascend and-rather
volui vitam meam in peregrinatione finire, quam locum
I-wished life my in pilgrimage to-end than place
tuum pro gloria mundi saeculari ingenio arripere. Et ideo
your for the-glory of-the-world by-worldly ingenuity to-seize and therefore
ex tua gratia non ex meis operibus credo quod tibi placuit
by your grace not by my works I-believe that to-you it-pleased
et placet: ut populus christianus, tibi specialiter commissus,
and pleases that the-people Christian to-you especially entrusted
mihi oboediat. Specialiter pro vice tua michi commissa et
me should-obey especially for office your to-me committed and
michi tua gratia est potestas a Deo data ligandi atque
to-me by-your grace is the-power by God given of-binding and
solvendi in celo et in terra. Hac itaque fiducia fretus, pro
of-loosing in heaven and on earth by-this and-so trust relying for
ecclesiae tuae honore et defensione, ex parte omnipotentis
of-church your the-honor and defense from the-side of-almighty
Dei Patris et Filii et Spiritus sancti per tuam potestatem
God the-Father and the-Son and the-Spirit holy through your power
et auctoritatem Heinrico regi, filio Heinrici imperatoris, qui
and authority to-Henry the-king son of-Henry the-emperor who

contra tuam ecclesiam inaudita superbia insurrexit, totius
against your church with-unheard-of pride has-risen-up of-the-whole
regni Teutonicorum et Italiae gubernacula contradico;
kingdom of-the-Teutons and of-Italy the-government I-forbid
et omnes christianos a vinculo iuramenti, quod sibi
and all Christians from the-bond of-the-oath which to-him
fecerunt vel facient, absolvo; et, ut nullus ei sicut regi
they-have-made or will-make I-absolve and that no-one him as king
serviat, interdico. Dignum est enim, ut, qui studet honorem
serve I-forbid worthy it-is for that he-who strives the-honor
ecclesiae tuae imminuere, ipse honorem amittat, quem
of-church your to-diminish he-himself the-honor should-lose which
videtur habere. Et quia sicut christianus contempsit oboedire
he-seems to-have and because as a-Christian he-has-scorned to-obey
nec ad Dominum rediit quem dimisit — participando
nor to the-Lord has-returned whom he-abandoned by-sharing
excommunicatis; et multas iniquitates faciendo; meaque
with-the-excommunicate and many iniquities by-doing and-my
monita, quae pro sua salute sibi misi te teste, spernendo;
admonitions which for his salvation to-him I-sent you witness by-spurning
seque ab ecclesia tua, temptans eam scindere, separando —
and-himself from church your trying it to-split by-separating
vinculo eum anathematis vice tua alligo. Et sic eum ex
with-the-bond him of-anathema in-place your I-bind and thus him from
fiducia tua alligo: ut sciant gentes et comprobent, quia tu
trust your I-bind that may-know the-nations and prove that you
es Petrus et super tuam petram filius Dei vivi aedificavit
are Peter and upon your rock the-Son of-God living has-built
ecclesiam suam et porte inferi non praevalebunt adversus eam.
church his and the-gates of-hell not will-prevail against it

Gregory thanks God that the faithful he addresses, unlike most, prefer Him to earthly favor. He recalls how he warned Henry as deacon and as pope and how Henry tried to split the church. He asks them to draw the king from the devil to penance, on terms that keep him from harming it again; if Henry refuses, they will decide together how to save the church. They are to receive back the king's adherents who repent and shun those who do not.

Gregorius episcopus servus servorum Dei omnibus in Christo
Gregory bishop servant of-the-servants of-God to-all in Christ
fratribus, episcopis videlicet abbatibus atque sacerdotibus,
brothers bishops namely abbots and priests
ducibus etiam principibus atque militibus omnibusque
dukes also princes and knights and-to-all
christianam fidem et beati Petri honorem re vera
the-Christian faith and of-blessed Peter the-honor in truth
diligentibus, in Romano imperio habitantibus, salutem et
loving in the-Roman empire dwelling greeting and
apostolicam benedictionem.
apostolic blessing
Gratias agimus omnipotenti Deo — qui propter nimiam
thanks we-give to-almighty God who on-account-of exceeding
caritatem suam qua dilexit nos proprio filio suo non pepercit,
charity his with-which he-loved us his-own son his not spared
sed pro nobis omnibus tradidit illum — quia ultra meritum,
but for us all handed-over him because beyond merit
ultra spem etiam bonorum hominum ecclesiam suam protegit
beyond the-hope even of-good men church his he-protects
gubernat et defendit. Scitis enim fratres karissimi, quia hoc
governs and defends you-know for brothers dearest that in-this
periculoso tempore, quando antichristus in suis membris iam
perilous time when antichrist in his members already

operatur ubique, vix aliquis solet inveniri, qui re vera Deum
works everywhere scarcely anyone is-wont to-be-found who in truth God
et honorem eius diligat et eius praecepta seculari commodo
and honor his loves and his precepts to-worldly advantage
et gratiae terrenorum principum praeponat. Sed ille, qui
and to-the-favor of-earthly princes prefers but he who
non repellit plebem suam et cotidie peccatores a sinistra in
not repels people his and daily sinners from the-left to
dexteram commutat, vos propitio ac sereno vultu respexit
the-right changes you with-propitious and serene countenance has-regarded
et contra suos inimicos ad salutem multarum gentium
and against his enemies for the-salvation of-many nations
erexit, ut magis vobis libeat, in periculo transitoriae vitae
has-raised so-that more to-you it-may-please in the-danger of-transitory life
consistere, quam aeterni regis gloriam et honorem humanae
to-stand than of-the-eternal king the-glory and honor to-human
gratiae postponere. Haec itaque facientes, non aure surda
favor to-put-after these-things and-so doing not with-ear deaf
apostolorum principem dicentem transitis: Genus electum,
of-the-apostles prince saying you-pass-by a-race chosen
regale sacerdotium; obedire magis oportet Deo quam hominibus.
a-royal priesthood to-obey rather it-behooves God than men
Nam vestra fraternitas minime ignorat: quanto tempore
for your fraternity by-no-means is-ignorant for-how-long time
sancta ecclesia inauditas pravitates et diversas iniquitates
holy church the-unheard-of depravities and various iniquities
regis, et utinam christiani et vestri, sustinuit; et quantae
of-the-king and would-that Christian and yours has-borne and to-how-great
ruinae quantaeque calamitati, ipso auctore, hoste antiquo
ruin and-to-how-great calamity he-himself as-author the-enemy ancient
praecedente, patuit. Cui nos, fraterna dilectione et
going-before it-has-lain-open to-whom we by-brotherly love and

amore patris et matris eius ducti, adhuc in diaconatu positi,
by-love of-the-father and mother his led still in the-diaconate placed
admonitionis verba transmisimus; et postquam ad officium
of-admonition words sent and after to the-office
sacerdotii licet indigni venimus, ut resipisceret,
of-the-priesthood though unworthy we-came that he-might-come-to-his-senses
summopere et frequenter per viros religiosos admonere
most-earnestly and often through men religious to-admonish
procuravimus. Ipse vero quid contra egerit; et quomodo
we-took-care he-himself but what contrariwise he-has-done and how
malum pro bono reddiderit; vel qualiter, calcaneum suum
evil for good he-has-returned or how heel his
contra beatum Petrum erigendo, sanctam ecclesiam, quam
against blessed Peter by-raising holy church which
sibi omnipotens Deus commisit, scindere procuraverit; vestra
to-him almighty God committed to-split he-has-endeavored your
novit caritas et per omnia mundi iam personuit climata.
knows charity and through all of-the-world now has-resounded the-regions
Sed quia nostri est officii: homines non vitia diligere,
but because of-our it-is office men not vices to-love
et pravis ut resipiscant resistere, et impietates
and to-the-wicked that they-come-to-their-senses to-resist and impieties
non homines abhorrere; auctoritate beati Petri apostolorum
not men to-abhor by-the-authority of-blessed Peter of-the-apostles
principis monemus vos et ut karissimos fratres rogamus:
prince we-admonish you and as dearest brothers we-ask
ammodo studete illum de manu diaboli eruere et ad veram
henceforth strive him from the-hand of-the-devil to-rescue and to true
poenitentiam provocare, ut eum possimus Deo favente ad
penance to-call-forth that him we-may-be-able God favoring to
sinum communis matris nostrae, quam conatus est scindere,
the-bosom of-the-common mother our which tried he-has to-split

fraterna ducti caritate, revocare; ita tamen, ut nulla fraude
by-brotherly led charity to-recall so yet that by-no fraud
possit recidiva clade christianam religionem confundere
he-may-be-able by-renewed disaster the-Christian religion to-confound
et sanctam ecclesiam pedibus suis conculcare. Quodsi vos
and holy church with-feet his to-trample but-if you
non audierit; et diabolum potius quam Christum sequi
not he-shall-have-heard and the-devil rather than Christ to-follow
elegerit; et eorum, qui pro symoniaca heresi iam
he-shall-have-chosen and of-those who for simoniac heresy now
per longa tempora excommunicati sunt, consilium vobis
for long times excommunicated are the-counsel to-you
praetulerit; divina inspirante potentia simul inveniamus
he-shall-have-preferred divine inspiring power together let-us-find
simulque statuamus: ut, Deum homini praeponentes, universali
and-together let-us-decide that God to-man preferring the-universal
ecclesiae iam iam pene labenti viriliter succurramus.
church now now almost falling manfully we-may-succor
Quicunque ex his resipuerit, qui praedictum regem
whoever of these shall-have-come-to-his-senses who the-aforesaid king
non erubuerunt omnipotenti Deo praeponere et christianam
not blushed to-almighty God to-prefer and the-Christian
legem, si non verbis, operibus tamen negare — sicut dicit
law if not in-words in-works yet to-deny as says
apostolus: Ore quidem fatentur Deum, factis autem
the-apostle with-mouth indeed they-confess God in-deeds moreover
negant — vos, fratres mei et consacerdotes, illos auctoritate
they-deny you brothers my and fellow-priests them by-the-authority
beati Petri suscipite et ad gremium matris nostrae sanctae
of-blessed Peter receive and to the-bosom of-mother our holy
ecclesiae reducite, ut mereamini gaudium in coelo angelis
church lead-back that you-may-merit joy in heaven for-the-angels

Dei innovare; in omnibus tamen, sicut decet karissimos filios,
of-God to-renew in all-things nevertheless as befits dearest sons
honorem pii patris vestri apostolorum principis prae oculis
the-honor of-the-dutiful father your of-the-apostles prince before eyes
habete. Quicumque autem episcoporum vel laicorum, timore
have whoever moreover of-the-bishops or laymen by-fear
vel gratia humana seducti, a communione regis se
or by-favor human seduced from the-communion of-the-king themselves
non subtraxerunt, sed ei faventes animam suam et illius
not have-withdrawn but to-him favoring soul their and his
diabolo tradere non timuerunt, si non resipuerint
to-the-devil to-hand-over not have-feared if not they-shall-have-come-to-their-senses
et condignam poenitentiam egerint, nullam cum eis
and fitting penance shall-have-done no with them
communionem vel amicitiam habeatis. Isti enim sunt, qui
communion or friendship you-should-have these for are those-who
animam suam et regis odio habent et occidunt, et regnum
soul their and the-king's in-hatred have and kill and the-kingdom
patriam christianamque religionem confundere non erubescunt.
homeland and-the-Christian religion to-confound not blush
Sicut enim nobis imminet, quod per prophetam dicitur:
as for over-us hangs what through the-prophet is-said
Si non annunciaveris iniquo iniquitatem suam, animam
if not you-shall-have-announced to-the-wicked iniquity his the-soul
eius de manu tua requiram; et: Maledictus, qui prohibet
his from hand your I-shall-require and cursed he-who withholds
gladium suum a sanguine, id est verbum correctionis a
sword his from blood that is the-word of-correction from
prave viventium increpatione; ita illis imminet, si non
wickedly of-those-living the-rebuke so over-them hangs if not
oboedierint, ira divini iudicii et ultio, testante
they-shall-have-obeyed the-wrath of-divine judgment and the-vengeance testifying

Samuhele, idolatriae sceleris. Testis enim nobis est Deus:
Samuel of-idolatry of-the-crime witness for to-us is God
quia nulla nos commoda secularis respectus contra pravos
that no us advantages of-worldly regard against wicked
principes et impios sacerdotes impellit, sed consideratio nostri
princes and impious priests impel but the-consideration of-our
officii et potestas, qua cotidie angustamur, apostolicae
office and the-power by-which daily we-are-straitened of-the-apostolic
sedis. Melius est enim nobis, debitam mortem carnis per
see better it-is for for-us the-due death of-the-flesh through
tyrannos si oportuerit subire, quam nostro silentio
tyrants if it-shall-have-behooved to-undergo than by-our silence
timore vel commodo christianae legis destructioni consentire.
by-fear or advantage of-the-Christian law to-the-destruction to-consent
Sanctos quidem patres nostros dixisse scimus: Qui pravis
the-holy indeed fathers our to-have-said we-know he-who to-wicked
hominibus sui consideratione officii non contradicit, consentit;
men of-his from-consideration office not gainsays consents
et qui resecanda non aufert, committit. Omnipotens
and he-who the-things-to-be-cut-away not removes commits(-them) almighty
Deus, a quo cuncta bona procedunt, meritis dominae
God from whom all good-things proceed by-the-merits of-lady
nostrae coelestis reginae ac beatorum apostolorum Petri et
our of-the-heavenly queen and of-the-blessed apostles Peter and
Pauli intercessione corda vestra confirmet et custodiat, et
Paul by-the-intercession hearts your may-be-confirm and guard and
spiritus sui gratiam superinfundat; ut, quae sunt ei
of-spirit his the-grace pour-upon that the-things-which are to-him
placita facientes, mereamini sponsam eius, matrem videlicet
pleasing doing you-may-merit bride his the-mother namely
nostram de faucibus luporum eripere, atque ad supernam
our from the-jaws of-wolves to-snatch and to supernal

illius gloriam, ab omnibus peccatis absoluti, pervenire. Data
his glory from all sins absolved to-arrive given
Laurenti 8 Kalendas Augusti, indictione 14.
at-Lorenzo on-the-eighth Kalends of-August in-the-indiction fourteenth

IV 2 · TO HERMANN OF METZ

Gregory tells Hermann that those who communicate with Henry are excommunicated. Against those who say a king cannot be excommunicated, he cites Peter's charge to the Christian people at Clement's ordination, Zachary's deposition of the Frankish king, Gregory the Great, and Ambrose's ban on Theodosius: the keys exclude no one, and the episcopal dignity surpasses the royal. Bishops may absolve those who left the king, but no one may absolve Henry until his penance is proven to the pope.

Gregorius episcopus servus servorum Dei Herimanno Metensi
Gregory bishop servant of-the-servants of-God to-Hermann of-Metz
episcopo salutem et apostolicam benedictionem.
bishop greeting and apostolic blessing
Multa interrogando a me, valde occupato, requiris; et
many-things by-asking from me greatly occupied you-seek and
nuncium, qui me nimis impellat ad sui licentiam, transmittis.
a-messenger who me too-much presses for his leave you-send
Quocirca, si non satis respondeo, patienter feras rogo.
wherefore if not enough I-answer patiently bear(-it) I-ask
Qualiter itaque in corpore meo me habeam, vel qualiter Romani
how and-so in body my myself I-hold or how the-Romans
seu Normanni circa me suos mores ostendant, horum portitor
or the-Normans toward me their ways show of-these the-bearer
tibi dicat. De aliis autem rebus, super quibus me interrogasti,
to-you may-tell about other moreover things concerning which me you-asked

utinam beatus Petrus per me respondeat; qui saepe in
would-that blessed Peter through me may-answer who often in
me, qualicunque suo famulo, honoratur vel iniuriam patitur.
me whatever-sort-of his servant is-honored or injury suffers
Episcopi namque, qui sint excommunicati sacerdotes vel laici,
the-bishops for who be excommunicated priests or laymen
non est opus ut a me queratis. Quia indubitanter illi sunt,
not there-is need that from me you-should-ask because undoubtedly those are
qui excommunicato regi Heinrico — si fas est dici rex —
who with-the-excommunicated king Henry if right it-is to-be-called king
communicare cognoscuntur. Non enim verentur, humanam
to-communicate are-known not for they-fear human
gratiam vel timorem regis aeterni praecepto praeponere; neque
favor or fear of-the-king eternal to-the-precept to-prefer nor
timent, suo favore ad iram Dei omnipotentis eumdem
fear by-their favor to the-wrath of-God almighty the-same
regem impellere. Ille quidem, suis communicando familiaribus
king to-drive he indeed with-his by-communicating intimates
excommunicatis pro symoniaca heresi, excommunicationem
excommunicated for simoniac heresy excommunication
incurrere non timuit; et alios, ut secum communicando
to-incur not feared and others that with-him by-communicating
excommunicentur, attrahere non erubescit. De talibus quid
they-may-be-excommunicated to-draw not blushes about such-men what
restat ut sentiamus, nisi quod in psalmis didicimus: Dixit
remains that we-should-think except what in the-psalms we-have-learned said
insipiens in corde suo: Non est Deus, et iterum: Omnes
the-fool in heart his not there-is God and again all
simul inutiles facti sunt in voluntatibus suis.
together useless made have-been in wills their

Eis autem, qui dicunt: regem non oportet excommunicari,
to-those moreover who say the-king not ought to-be-excommunicated
licet pro magna fatuitate nec etiam respondere debeamus,
although for great folly not even to-answer we-ought
tamen, ne impatienter illorum insipientiam praeterire videamur,
nevertheless lest impatiently their foolishness to-pass-over we-may-seem
ad sanctorum patrum dicta vel facta illos mittimus, ut eos
to of-the-holy fathers the-sayings or deeds them we-send that them
ad sanam doctrinam revocemus. Legant itaque, quid beatus
to sound doctrine we-may-recall let-them-read and-so what blessed
Petrus in ordinatione sancti Clementis populo christiano
Peter at the-ordination of-Saint Clement to-the-people Christian
praecepit de eo, quem scirent non habere gratiam
commanded about him whom they-should-know not to-have the-favor
pontificis. Addiscant, cur apostolus dicat: Habentes in promptu
of-the-pontiff let-them-learn why the-apostle says having in readiness
ulcisci omnem inoboedientiam; et de quibus dicit: Cum
to-avenge all disobedience and about whom he-says with
huiusmodi nec cibum sumere. Considerent, cur Zacharias
such-men not-even food to-take let-them-consider why Zachary
papa regem Francorum deposuerit et omnes Francigenas a
pope the-king of-the-Franks deposed and all the-Franks from
vinculo iuramenti, quod sibi fecerant, absolverit. In registro
the-bond of-the-oath which to-him they-had-made absolved in the-register
beati Gregorii addiscant, quia in privilegiis, quae quibusdam
of-blessed Gregory let-them-learn that in privileges which for-certain
ecclesiis fecit, reges et duces contra sua dicta venientes non
churches he-made kings and dukes against his words coming not
solum excommunicavit sed etiam, ut dignitate careant,
only he-excommunicated but also that of-their-dignity they-should-be-deprived
iudicavit. Nec praetermittant, quod beatus Ambrosius non solum
he-judged nor let-them-pass-over that blessed Ambrose not only

regem sed etiam re vera imperatorem moribus et potestate
a-king but also in truth an-emperor in-character and power
Theodosium non tantum excommunicavit, sed etiam, ne
Theodosius not only excommunicated but also lest
praesumeret in loco sacerdotum in ecclesia manere, interdixit.
he-presume in the-place of-the-priests in the-church to-stay forbade
Sed forte hoc volunt praedicti viri subintelligere: quod, quando
but perhaps this wish the-aforesaid men to-understand that when
Deus ecclesiam suam ter beato Petro commisit dicens:
God church his thrice to-blessed Peter committed saying
Pasce oves meas, reges exceperit. Cur non adtendunt vel
feed sheep my kings he-excepted why not do-they-heed or
potius erubescendo confitentur: quia, ubi Deus beato Petro
rather by-blushing confess that where God to-blessed Peter
principaliter dedit potestatem ligandi et solvendi in coelo et
principally gave the-power of-binding and of-loosing in heaven and
in terra, nullum excepit, nichil ab eius potestate subtraxit.
on earth none he-excepted nothing from his power withdrew
Nam qui se negat non posse ecclesiae vinculo alligari,
for he-who himself denies not to-be-able of-the-church by-the-bond to-be-bound
restat ut neget, se non posse ab eius potestate absolvi;
it-remains that he-deny himself not to-be-able from its power to-be-absolved
et qui hoc impudenter negat, se a Christo omnino
and he-who this shamelessly denies himself from Christ altogether
sequestrat. Quodsi sancta sedes apostolica, divinitus sibi
separates but-if the-holy see apostolic divinely to-itself
collata principali potestate, spiritualia decernens diiudicat, cur
conferred by-principal power spiritual-things deciding judges why
non et secularia? Reges quidem et principes huius seculi, qui
not also secular-things kings indeed and princes of-this world who
honorem suum et lucra temporalia iustitiae Dei praeponunt
honor their and gains temporal to-the-justice of-God prefer

eiusque honorem negligendo proprium quaerunt, cuius sint
and-his honor by-neglecting their-own seek of-whom they-be
membra cuive adhaereant, vestra non ignorat caritas. Nam
limbs or-to-whom they-cling your not is-ignorant charity for
sicut illi, qui omni suae voluntati Deum praeponunt eiusque
as those who to-all their will God prefer and-his
praecepto plus quam hominibus oboediunt, membra sunt
precept more than men obey limbs are
Christi, ita et illi, de quibus supra diximus, membra sunt
of-Christ so also those about whom above we-have-spoken limbs are
antichristi. Si ergo spirituales viri, cum oportet, iudicantur,
of-antichrist if therefore spiritual men when it-behooves are-judged
cur non seculares amplius de suis pravis actibus constringantur?
why not secular-men more for their wicked acts should-be-constrained
Sed forte putant, quod regia dignitas episcopalem praecellat.
but perhaps they-think that the-royal dignity the-episcopal surpasses
Ex earum principiis colligere possunt, quantum a se
from their beginnings to-gather they-can how-much from each-other
utraque differunt. Illam quidem superbia humana repperit, hanc
both differ that-one indeed pride human found this-one
divina pietas instituit. Illa vanam gloriam incessanter captat,
divine piety instituted that-one vain glory incessantly catches-at
haec ad coelestem vitam semper aspirat. Et addiscant, quid
this-one to heavenly life always aspires and let-them-learn what
beatus Anastasius papa Anastasio imperatori de his dignitatibus
blessed Anastasius pope to-Anastasius the-emperor about these dignities
scripserit; et quid beatus Ambrosius in suo pastorali
wrote and what blessed Ambrose in his pastoral(-book)
inter has dignitates decreverit: Honor inquiens et sublimitas
between these dignities decided the-honor saying and loftiness
episcopalis nullis poterit comparationibus adaequari. Si regum
episcopal by-no will-be-able comparisons to-be-equaled if of-kings

fulgori compares et principum diademati, longe erit
to-the-brightness you-compare and of-princes to-the-diadem far it-will-be
inferius, quam si plumbi metallum ad auri fulgorem compares.
inferior than if of-lead the-metal to of-gold the-brightness you-compare
Haec non ignorans, Constantinus Magnus imperator non
these-things not being-ignorant-of Constantine the-Great emperor not
primum sessionis sed ultimum inter episcopos elegit locum;
the-first of-seating but the-last among the-bishops chose place
scivit enim, quia superbis Deus resistit, humilibus dat gratiam.
he-knew for that the-proud God resists to-the-humble gives grace
Interea notum sit fraternitati tuae, quia, litteris acceptis
meanwhile known be-it to-fraternity your that the-letters received
quorumdam fratrum nostrorum praesulum et ducum,
of-certain brothers our prelates and dukes
auctoritate apostolicae sedis licentiam dedimus his
by-the-authority of-the-apostolic see license we-have-given to-those
episcopis: excommunicatos a nobis absolvere, qui non
bishops those-excommunicated by us to-absolve who not
timuerunt se a communione regis abstinere.
have-feared themselves from the-communion of-the-king to-abstain
De ipso autem rege omnino contradiximus: ut nullus eum
about the-very moreover king altogether we-have-forbidden that no-one him
praesumat absolvere, quo usque illius certa poenitentia et sincera
presume to-absolve up until his certain penance and sincere
satisfactio nobis per idoneos testes fuerit notificata; ut
satisfaction to-us through suitable witnesses shall-have-been made-known that
simul inveniamus, qualiter, si eum divina pietas respexerit, ad
together we-may-find how if him divine piety shall-have-regarded to
honorem Dei et illius salutem eum absolvamus. Non enim nos
the-honor of-God and his salvation him we-may-absolve not for us
latet, quod sint aliqui vestrum, qui, aliqua occasione quasi a
escapes that there-are some of-you who with-some occasion as-if from

nobis accepta, timore vel humana gratia seducti, praesumerent:
us received by-fear or by-human favor seduced would-presume
eum, si non contradicerem, absolvere vulnerique pro medicina
him if not I-forbade to-absolve and-to-a-wound for medicine
vulnus adhibere; quibus si aliqui re vera episcopi contradicerent,
a-wound to-apply whom if some in truth bishops gainsaid
non eos iustitiam defendere sed inimicitias exercere, iudicarent.
not them justice to-defend but enmities to-exercise they-would-judge
Episcoporum autem, qui excommunicato regi communicare
of-the-bishops moreover who with-the-excommunicated king to-communicate
praesumunt, ordinatio et consecratio apud Deum, teste beato
presume the-ordination and consecration before God witness blessed
Gregorio, fit execratio. Cum enim oboedire apostolicae
Gregory becomes execration since for to-obey the-apostolic
sedi superbe contemnunt, scelus idolatriae, teste Samuhele,
see proudly they-scorn the-crime of-idolatry witness Samuel
incurrunt. Nam si ille Dei dicitur, qui ad ferienda vitia
they-incur for if he of-God is-called who for striking vices
zelo divini amoris excitatur, profecto esse se Dei
by-the-zeal of-divine love is-roused surely to-be himself God's
denegat, qui, in quantum sufficit, increpare vitam carnalium
he-denies who in as-much-as suffices to-rebuke the-life of-the-carnal
recusat. Et si ille maledictus est, qui prohibet gladium suum
refuses and if he cursed is who withholds sword his
a sanguine, id est praedicationis verbum a carnalis vitae
from blood that is of-preaching the-word from of-carnal life
interfectione, quanto amplius ille maledictus est, qui timore vel
the-slaying how-much more he cursed is who by-fear or
favore impellit animam fratris sui in aeternam perditionem.
by-favor drives the-soul of-brother his into eternal perdition
Ut autem maledicti et excommunicati possint benedicere et
that moreover the-cursed and the-excommunicated can to-bless and

divinam gratiam, quam non timent operibus denegare, alicui
the-divine grace which not they-fear by-works to-deny on-anyone
largiri, in nullius sanctorum patrum praecepto potest inveniri.
to-bestow in of-none of-the-holy fathers precept can to-be-found
Interea iubemus, ut alloquamini venerabilem archiepiscopum
meanwhile we-order that you-address the-venerable archbishop
Treverensem, fratrem videlicet nostrum, ut Tullensi episcopo,
of-Trier brother namely our that to-the-Toul bishop
ne se intromittat de abbatissa monasterii Montis
lest himself he-should-intrude about the-abbess of-the-monastery of-the-Mount
Romarici, interdicat; et, quicquid contra eam statuit,
of-Romaric he-should-forbid and whatever against her he-has-established
una tecum in irritum ducat.
together with-you into void he-should-bring
De Mathilda vero communi nostra filia et beati Petri fideli
about Matilda but common our daughter and of-blessed Peter faithful
ancilla quod vis, volo. Sed in quo statu sit mansura
handmaid what you-wish I-wish but in what state she-may-be about-to-remain
Deo gubernante, adhuc certum non teneo. Gotifredi autem
God governing still certain not I-hold of-Godfrey moreover
quondam illius viri, indubitanter scias, quod frequenter apud
formerly her husband undoubtedly know that frequently before
Deum, licet peccator, habeam memoriam; quia non me illius
God though a-sinner I-have memory because not me his
inimicitia vel aliqua impedit vanitas, sed, motus fraterna
enmity or any binders vanity but moved by-brotherly
dilectione tua et Mathildae deprecatione, illius exopto salutem.
love your and of-Matilda by-the-entreaty his I-long-for salvation
Omnipotens Deus — intercessione coelestis reginae semper
almighty God by-the-intercession of-the-heavenly queen ever
virginis Mariae et auctoritate beatorum apostolorum Petri
virgin Mary and by-the-authority of-the-blessed apostles Peter

et Pauli, a se illis concessa — te nostrosque omnes
and Paul by him to-them granted you and-our all
fratres, in quocunque sunt ordine, qui christianam defendunt
brothers in whatever they-are order who the-Christian defend
religionem et apostolicae sedis dignitatem, a cunctis
religion and of-the-apostolic see the-dignity from all
peccatis absolvat; vobisque augens fidem spem et caritatem,
sins may-absolve and-to-you increasing faith hope and charity
in suae legis defensione vos corroboret, ut mereamini ad
in of-his law the-defense you may-strengthen that you-may-merit to
aeternam pervenire salutem. Data Tiburis 8 Kalendas
eternal to-arrive salvation given at-Tivoli on-the-eighth Kalends
Septembris, indictione 14.
of-September in-the-indiction fourteenth

IV 3 · TO THE GERMAN PRINCES

Gregory asks the princes to receive Henry kindly if he truly repents, and to remove his wicked counselors. No one is to absolve him without the pope's word. If he does not repent, they may choose a worthy king, but they must report the candidate so that the pope can confirm the election. The oath sworn to Henry's mother, the empress Agnes, need not stop them, though she and the pope should be consulted on the choice.

Gregorius episcopus servus servorum Dei omnibus dilectis in
Gregory bishop servant of-the-servants of-God to-all beloved in
Christo fratribus et coepiscopis, ducibus, comitibus, universis
Christ brothers and fellow-bishops dukes counts to-all
quoque fidem christianam defendentibus, in regno videlicet
also the-faith Christian defending in the-kingdom namely

Teutonico habitantibus, salutem et omnium peccatorum
Teutonic dwelling greeting and of-all sins
absolutionem per apostolicam benedictionem.
absolution through apostolic blessing
Si litteras, quibus Heinricus dictus rex in sancta synodo
if the-letter by-which Henry called king in the-holy synod
iudicio sancti Spiritus excommunicatus est, diligenter
by-the-judgment of-the-holy Spirit excommunicated was diligently
perpenditis, quid de eo debeat fieri, indubitanter
you-weigh what about him ought to-be-done undoubtedly
cognoscetis. Ex illis enim intelligitur: cur sit
you-will-recognize from them for is-understood why he-has-been
anathematis vinculo alligatus et a regia dignitate
of-anathema with-the-bond bound and from royal dignity
depositus; et quod omnis populus quondam sibi subiectus
deposed and that all the-people formerly to-him subject
a vinculo iuramenti eidem promissi sit absolutus.
from the-bond of-the-oath to-him promised has-been absolved
Sed quia nos contra eum non movit Deo teste secularis
but because us against him not moved God witness worldly
superbia nec vana mundi cupiditas, sed sanctae sedis et
pride nor vain of-the-world greed but of-the-holy see and
universalis matris ecclesiae sollicitudo et disciplina, monemus
of-the-universal mother church the-care and discipline we-admonish
vos in domino Iesu et rogamus sicut karissimos fratres: ut
you in the-Lord Jesus and ask as dearest brothers that
eum benigne, si ex toto corde ad Deum conversus fuerit,
him kindly if from whole heart to God converted he-shall-have-been
suscipiatis et circa eum non tantum iustitiam, quae illum
you-receive and toward him not only justice which him
regnare prohibet, sed misericordiam, quae multa delet scelera,
to-reign forbids but mercy which many deletes crimes

ostendatis. Estote, quaeso, memores humanae conditionis et
you-show be I-beseech mindful of-the-human condition and
communis fragilitatis; nec vos praetereat pia et nobilis
of-common frailty nor you may-escape the-dutiful and noble
memoria patris eius et matris, quibus non possunt
memory of-the-father his and of-the-mother to-whom not can
nostra aetate ad imperii gubernacula inveniri aequales.
in-our age for of-the-empire the-helm to-be-found equals
Sic tamen adhibete vulneribus eius oleum pietatis: ne,
so nevertheless apply to-wounds his the-oil of-piety lest
vino disciplinae neglecto, cicatrices eius in peius quod
the-wine of-discipline neglected the-scars his for the-worse which
absit putrescant et honor sanctae ecclesiae Romanique
God-forbid fester and the-honor of-holy church and-of-the-Roman
imperii nostra negligentia magnae ruinae patescat. Procul
empire by-our negligence to-great ruin lie-open far
ab eo pravi removeantur consiliarii, qui, pro symoniaca
from him the-wicked let-be-removed counselors who for simoniac
heresi excommunicati, non erubuerunt dominum suum
heresy excommunicated not blushed lord their
propria lepra contaminare et, per diversa crimina eum
with-their-own leprosy to-contaminate and through various crimes him
seducendo, ad scindendum sanctam ecclesiam provocare et
by-seducing to splitting holy church to-provoke and
in iram Dei et sancti Petri impellere. Adhibeantur
into the-wrath of-God and of-Saint Peter to-drive let-be-applied
illi tales consiliarii, qui non sua tantum sed eum
to-him such counselors who not their-own only but him
diligant et seculari lucro per omnia Deum praeponant.
love and to-worldly gain in all-things God prefer
Non ultra putet sanctam ecclesiam sibi subiectam ut
not further let-him-think holy church to-himself subject like

ancillam, sed praelatam ut dominam. Non inflatus spiritu
a-handmaid but set-over(-him) like a-mistress not puffed-up by-the-spirit
elationis consuetudines superbiae, contra libertatem sanctae
of-elation the-customs of-pride against the-liberty of-holy
ecclesiae inventas, defendat; sed observet sanctorum patrum
church invented let-him-defend but let-him-observe of-the-holy fathers
doctrinam, quam pro salute nostra eos docuit potestas divina.
the-doctrine which for salvation our them taught power divine
Quodsi de his et aliis iure ab eo exigendis nos
but-if about these and other-things by-right from him to-be-demanded us
securos modis quibus oportet reddiderit, statim volumus
secure in-the-ways in-which it-behooves he-shall-have-made at-once we-wish
per vestros idoneos legatos de omnibus informari, ut, quid
through your suitable envoys about all-things to-be-informed that what
debeat fieri, communi consilio Deo aspirante valeat inveniri.
ought to-be-done by-common counsel God inspiring may-be-able to-be-found
Illud autem inter omnia ex parte beati Petri interdicimus:
this moreover among all-things from the-side of-blessed Peter we-forbid
ut nullus vestrum eum praesumat ab excommunicatione
that none of-you him presume from excommunication
absolvere, quo usque, eis quae praediximus nobis
to-absolve up until those-things which we-have-said-before to-us
indicatis, apostolicae sedis consensum et iteratum responsum
indicated of-the-apostolic see the-consent and a-repeated answer
recipiatis. De diversorum quidem diversis consiliis dubitamus;
you-receive about of-various-men indeed the-various counsels we-doubt
et humanam gratiam vel timorem suspicioni habemus.
and human favor or fear in-suspicion we-hold
Quodsi exigentibus multorum peccatis, quod non optamus,
but-if demanding(-it) of-many the-sins which not we-wish
ex corde non fuerit ad Deum conversus, talis ad
from the-heart not he-shall-have-been to God converted such-a-one for

regni gubernacula Deo favente inveniatur, qui ea
of-the-kingdom the-helm God favoring be-found who those-things
quae praediximus et cetera, quae videntur christianae
which we-have-said-before and the-other-things which seem for-the-Christian
religioni et totius imperii saluti necessaria, se
religion and of-the-whole empire for-the-salvation necessary himself
certa ac indubitabili promissione observaturum promittat.
with-sure and undoubted promise about-to-observe may-promise
Ut autem vestram electionem — si valde oportet ut fiat —
that moreover your election if greatly it-behooves that it-take-place
apostolica auctoritate firmemus, et novam ordinationem
by-apostolic authority we-may-confirm and the-new ordination
nostris temporibus corroboremus, sicut a sanctis nostris
in-our times we-may-strengthen as by holy our
patribus factum esse cognoscimus: negocium personam
fathers done to-have-been we-know the-business the-person
et mores eius quantocius potestis nobis indicate; ut, sancta
and character his as-quickly-as you-can to-us indicate that with-holy
et utili intentione incedentes, mereamini, sicut nobis causae
and useful intention proceeding you-may-merit as to-us the-causes
notae, apostolicae sedis favorem per divinam gratiam et
known of-the-apostolic see the-favor through divine grace and
beati Petri apostolorum principis per omnia benedictionem.
of-blessed Peter of-the-apostles prince in all-things the-blessing
De iuramento autem — quod factum est karissimae filiae
about the-oath moreover which made has-been to-dearest daughter
nostrae Agneti imperatrici augustae: si filius eius ex hac vita
our Agnes the-empress august if son her from this life
ante ipsam migraret — non est opus adhuc dubitare. Quia —
before herself should-depart not there-is need still to-doubt because
si nimia pietate circa filium ducta iustitiae restiterit,
if by-excessive piety toward (her)-son led to-justice she-shall-have-resisted

vel iustitiae favens ut abiciatur a regno consenserit —
or to-justice favoring that he-be-cast-off from the-kingdom shall-have-consented
quid restet, vos ipsi comprehenditis. Hoc tamen videtur
what remains you yourselves comprehend this nevertheless seems
laudabile: postquam certum fuerit apud vos et omnino
praiseworthy after certain it-shall-have-been among you and wholly
firmatum, quod eius filius a regno removeatur, consilium
confirmed that her son from the-kingdom be-removed counsel
ab ea et a nobis requiratur de inventa persona ad
from her and from us be-sought about the-found person for
regni gubernacula. Tunc aut nostro communi consilio
of-the-kingdom the-helm then either to-our common counsel
assensum praebebit, aut apostolicae sedis auctoritas omnia
assent she-will-offer or of-the-apostolic see the-authority all
vincula quae videntur iustitiae contradicere, removebit.
bonds which seem to-justice to-contradict will-remove
De excommunicatis autem iam me vobis dedisse
about the-excommunicated moreover already me to-you to-have-given
licentiam — qui fidem christianam, ut decet episcopos,
license you-who the-faith Christian as befits bishops
defenditis — ut eos absolvatis, recordor; et adhuc hoc idem
defend that them you-may-absolve I-remember and still this same
confirmo, si re vera resipuerint et humiliter
I-confirm if in truth they-shall-have-come-to-their-senses and humbly
poenitentiam egerint. Data Laurenti 3 Nonas
penance shall-have-done given at-Lorenzo on-the-third Nones
Septembris, indictione incipiente 15.
of-September in-the-indiction beginning fifteenth

Gregory tells the German princes how he waited in Lombardy for their escort, which never came. Henry came to Canossa and stood three days barefoot in wool before the castle gate, weeping, until all who saw him pleaded for him, and the pope absolved him on the securities that follow. The whole case remains open until he can come to them; they are to stand firm, since he has promised the king only what justice or mercy allows.

Gregorius episcopus servus servorum Dei omnibus
Gregory bishop servant of-the-servants of-God to-all
archiepiscopis episcopis ducibus comitibus caeterisque
archbishops bishops dukes counts and-to-the-other
principibus regni Teutonicorum christianam fidem
princes of-the-kingdom of-the-Teutons the-Christian faith
defendentibus salutem et apostolicam benedictionem.
defending greeting and apostolic blessing
Quoniam pro amore iustitiae communem nobiscum in agone
since for love of-justice common with-us in the-contest
christianae militiae causam et periculum suscepistis;
of-Christian warfare the-cause and danger you-have-undertaken
qualiter rex, humiliatus ad poenitentiam, absolutionis veniam
how the-king humbled to penance of-absolution the-pardon
impetraverit, et quomodo tota causa post introitum eius
obtained and how the-whole cause after the-entrance his
in Italiam huc usque deducta sit, vestrae dilectioni
into Italy hither all-the-way brought has-been to-your love
sincera caritate indicare curavimus.
with-sincere charity to-indicate we-have-taken-care
Sicut constitutum fuit cum legatis, qui ad nos de vestris
as agreed it-was with the-envoys who to us from your
partibus missi sunt, in Longobardiam venimus circiter viginti
parts sent were into Lombardy we-came about twenty

dies ante terminum, in quo aliquis ducum ad clusas nobis
days before the-term in which one of-the-dukes at the-passes us
occurrere debuit; expectantes adventum illorum, quatenus ad
to-meet was-to awaiting the-coming of-them so-that to
partes illas transire possemus. Verum cum, iam decurso
parts those to-cross we-might-be-able but when now run-out
termino, hoc nobis nunciaretur: his temporibus prae
the-term this to-us was-announced in-these times on-account-of
multis — quod et nos quidem credimus — difficultatibus
many which also we indeed believe difficulties
ducatum nobis obviam mitti non posse; nec aliunde
an-escort to-us to-meet to-be-sent not to-be-able nor from-elsewhere
copiam ad vos transeundi haberemus; non parva sollicitudine,
the-means to you of-crossing we-had not small with-anxiety
quid potissimum nobis agendum foret, circumventi sumus.
what most by-us to-be-done would-be beset we-were
Interim vero, regem adventare, certe cognovimus. Qui
meanwhile but the-king to-be-approaching certainly we-learned who
etiam, priusquam intrasset Italiam, supplices ad nos legatos
also before he-had-entered Italy suppliant to us envoys
praemittens, per omnia se satisfacturum Deo et sancto
sending-ahead in all-things himself about-to-make-satisfaction to-God and to-Saint
Petro ac nobis, obtulit; et, ad emendationem vitae suae
Peter and to-us offered and for the-amendment of-life his
omnem se servaturum oboedientiam, repromisit; dummodo
all himself about-to-keep obedience promised-again provided-that
apud nos absolutionis et apostolicae benedictionis gratiam
from us of-absolution and of-apostolic blessing the-grace
impetrare mereretur. Quod cum diu multis consultationibus
to-obtain he-might-merit which when long with-many deliberations
differentes, acriter eum de suis excessibus per omnes qui
postponing sharply him for his excesses through all who

intercurrebant nuncios redargueremus; tandem per semet
passed-between messengers we-reproved at-last by himself
ipsum, nichil hostile aut temerarium ostentans, ad oppidum
in-person nothing hostile or rash displaying to the-town
Canusii, in quo morati sumus, cum paucis advenit. Ibique
of-Canossa in which stayed we-have with a-few he-came and-there
per triduum ante portam castri, deposito omne regio
for three-days before the-gate of-the-castle laid-aside all royal
cultu, miserabiliter, utpote discalciatus et laneis indutus,
adornment wretchedly as-being unshod and in-wool clothed
persistens, non prius cum multo fletu apostolicae miserationis
persisting not before with much weeping of-apostolic compassion
auxilium et consolationem implorare destitit, quam omnes,
the-help and consolation to-implore he-ceased than all
qui ibi aderant et ad quos rumor ille pervenit, ad tantam
who there were-present and to whom rumor that came to such
pietatem et compassionis misericordiam movit: ut, pro eo
piety and of-compassion mercy he-moved that for him
multis precibus et lacrimis intercedentes, omnes quidem
with-many prayers and tears interceding all indeed
insolitam nostrae mentis duritiam mirarentur, nonnulli vero,
the-unwonted of-our mind hardness wondered-at some but
in nobis non apostolicae severitatis gravitatem sed quasi
in us not of-apostolic severity the-gravity but as-it-were
tyrannicae feritatis crudelitatem esse, clamarent.
of-tyrannical ferocity the-cruelty to-be cried
Denique instantia compunctionis eius et tanta omnium
finally by-the-insistence of-compunction his and so-great of-all
qui ibi aderant supplicatione devicti, tandem eum, relaxato
who there were-present by-the-supplication overcome at-last him relaxed
anathematis vinculo, in communionis gratiam et sinum sanctae
of-anathema the-bond into of-communion the-grace and bosom of-holy

matris ecclesiae recepimus; acceptis ab eo securitatibus, quae
mother church we-received having-received from him securities which
inferius scriptae sunt. Quarum etiam confirmationem per
below written are of-which also the-confirmation through
manus abbatis Cluniacensis et filiarum nostrarum Mathildis
the-hands of-the-abbot of-Cluny and of-daughters our Matilda
et comitissae Adelaiae et aliorum principum, episcoporum
and the-countess Adelaide and of-other princes bishops
et laicorum, qui nobis ad hoc utiles visi sunt, recepimus.
and laymen who to-us for this useful seemed have we-received
His itaque sic peractis, ut ad pacem ecclesiae et
these-things and-so thus accomplished that for the-peace of-the-church and
concordiam regni, sicut diu desideravimus, omnia plenius
the-concord of-the-kingdom as long we-have-desired all-things more-fully
Deo adiuvante coaptare possimus, ad partes vestras data
God helping to-fit we-may-be-able to parts your given
primum oportunitate transire cupimus. Hoc enim dilectionem
first opportunity to-cross we-desire this for love
vestram indubitanter scire volumus, quoniam, sicut in
your undoubtedly to-know we-wish that as in
descriptis securitatibus cognoscere potestis, ita adhuc totius
the-written securities to-recognize you-can so still of-the-whole
negocii causa suspensa est, ut et adventus noster et
business the-cause suspended is so-that both coming our and
consiliorum vestrorum unanimitas permaxime necessaria esse
of-counsels your the-unanimity most-greatly necessary to-be
videantur. Quapropter in ea fide quam coepistis et
may-seem wherefore in that faith which you-have-begun and
amore iustitiae omnes permanere studete; scientes: nos non
love of-justice all to-remain strive knowing us not
aliter regi obligatos esse, nisi quod puro sermone —
otherwise to-the-king bound to-be except that with-pure speech

sicut michi mos est — in his eum de nobis sperare
as to-me the-way is in these-things him from us to-hope
dixerimus, in quibus eum ad salutem et honorem suum,
we-have-said in which him to salvation and honor his
aut cum iustitia aut cum misericordia, sine nostrae et
either with justice or with mercy without of-our and
illius animae periculo adiuvare possimus.
of-his soul danger to-help we-may-be-able

IV 12a · Iusiurandum Henrici regis Teutonicorum

IV 12A · HENRY'S OATH AT CANOSSA

Henry swears to give justice or make peace with the princes within the term the pope sets, and to give the pope and his escort safe conduct wherever he travels. The oath is dated at Canossa on 28 January 1077 and witnessed by cardinals, bishops, and the abbot of Cluny.

Ego Henricus rex de murmuratione et dissensione, quam
I Henry king about the-murmuring and dissension which
nunc habent contra me archiepiscopi et episcopi, duces comites
now have against me the-archbishops and bishops dukes counts
ceterique principes regni Teutonicorum et alii, qui eos
and-the-other princes of-the-kingdom of-the-Teutons and others who them
in eadem dissensionis causa sequuntur, infra terminum, quem
in the-same of-dissension cause follow within the-term which
domnus papa Gregorius constituerit, aut iustitiam secundum
lord pope Gregory shall-have-appointed either justice according-to
iudicium eius aut concordiam secundum consilium eius faciam;
judgment his or concord according-to counsel his I-shall-do
nisi certum impedimentum mihi vel sibi obstiterit;
unless a-certain impediment to-me or to-him shall-have-stood-in-the-way

quo transacto, ad peragendum idem paratus ero. Item, si
which having-passed for accomplishing the-same ready I-shall-be likewise if
idem domnus papa Gregorius ultra montes seu ad alias
the-same lord pope Gregory beyond the-mountains or to other
partes terrarum ire voluerit, securus erit ex mei parte
parts of-the-earth to-go shall-have-wished safe he-will-be on my part
et eorum, quos constringere potero, ab omni laesione vitae
and of-those whom to-constrain I-shall-be-able from all injury of-life
et membrorum eius seu captione — tam ipse quam qui
and limbs his or capture both he-himself and those-who
in eius conductu et comitatu fuerint seu qui ab illo
in his escort and company shall-have-been or who by him
mittuntur vel ad eum de quibuscumque terrarum partibus
are-sent or to him from whatever of-the-earth parts
venerint — in eundo et ibi morando seu inde redeundo.
shall-have-come in going and there staying or thence returning
Neque aliud aliquod impedimentum habebit ex meo
nor other any impediment he-will-have with my
consensu, quod contra honorem suum sit; et si quis ei
consent which against honor his may-be and if anyone to-him
fecerit, cum bona fide secundum posse meum illum
shall-have-done(-it) with good faith according-to power my him
adiuvabo. [Ita me Deus adiuvet et haec sancta euangelia.]
I-shall-help so me God help and these holy gospels
Actum Canusiae 5 Kalendas Februarii, indictione
done at-Canossa on-the-fifth Kalends of-February in-the-indiction
15, [anno domini nostri Iesu Christi 1077, praesentibus
fifteenth in-the-year of-the-Lord our Jesus Christ 1077 being-present
episcopis: Umberto Praenestino, Giraldo Ostiensi; cardinalibus
the-bishops Humbert of-Palestrina Gerald of-Ostia cardinals
Romanis: Petro tituli S. Chrisogoni et Conone tituli
Roman Peter of-the-title of-Saint Chrysogonus and Cuno of-the-title

S. Anastasie; Romanis diaconibus Gregorio et Bernardo;
of-Saint Anastasia Roman deacons Gregory and Bernard
et subdiacono Umberto. Item ex parte regis interfuerunt:
and subdeacon Humbert likewise on the-side of-the-king were-present
Bremensis archiepiscopus, et episcopi Vercellensis et
of-Bremen the-archbishop and the-bishops of-Vercelli and
Osnabrugensis, et abbas Cluniacensis et multi nobiles viri.]
of-Osnabrück and the-abbot of-Cluny and many noble men

VII 14a · Acta concilii Romani

VII 14A · THE LENTEN SYNOD OF 1080

The synod forbids lay investiture, condemns Wibert of Ravenna, protects Peter's lands from the Normans, warns against false penance, and regulates episcopal elections. Gregory appeals to Peter and Paul: Henry, absolved in Lombardy, wrecked the conference meant to judge between him and Rudolf. Gregory excommunicates and deposes him again, grants the kingdom to Rudolf, and asks the apostles to judge Henry so swiftly that all may see he falls by their power.

Anno ab incarnatione Domini millesimo octuagesimo,
in-the-year from the-incarnation of-the-Lord thousandth eightieth
pontificatus vero domni Gregorii VII papae anno septimo,
of-the-pontificate but of-lord Gregory seventh pope in-the-year seventh
indictione tertia, celebravit ipse domnus papa synodum Romae;
in-the-indiction third celebrated himself lord pope a-synod at-Rome
ubi interfuerunt archiepiscopi et episcopi diversarum urbium,
where were-present archbishops and bishops of-various cities
nec non et abbatum ac diversorum ordinum clericorum
nor not also of-abbots and of-various orders of-clerics
et laicorum innumerabilis multitudo. In qua, apostolica
and of-laymen a-countless multitude in which apostolic

constituta corroborans, multa quae corrigenda erant correxit
decrees strengthening many-things which to-be-corrected were he-corrected
et quae corroboranda firmavit. Inter cetera nanque in
and what-things to-be-strengthened he-confirmed among other-things for at
fine synodalis absolutionis haec annexuit et perpetuae
the-end of-the-synodal absolution these-things he-appended and for-perpetual
memoriae pro posteris scribenda mandavit, ita dicendo:
memory for posterity to-be-written ordered so saying
Sequentes statuta sanctorum patrum — sicut in prioribus
following the-statutes of-the-holy fathers as in earlier
conciliis, quae Deo miserante celebravimus, de ordinatione
councils which God having-mercy we-have-celebrated about the-ordination
ecclesiasticarum dignitatum statuimus — ita et nunc
of-ecclesiastical dignities we-decreed so also now
apostolica auctoritate decernimus ac confirmamus: ut, si quis
by-apostolic authority we-decree and confirm that if anyone
deinceps episcopatum vel abbatiam de manu alicuius laicae
henceforth a-bishopric or abbey from the-hand of-any lay
personae susceperit, nullatenus inter episcopos vel abbates
person shall-have-received in-no-way among bishops or abbots
habeatur nec ulla ei ut episcopo seu abbati audientia
be-held nor any to-him as bishop or abbot hearing
concedatur. Insuper etiam ei gratiam sancti Petri et
be-granted besides also to-him the-grace of-Saint Peter and
introitum ecclesiae interdicimus, quo usque locum, quem
entry into-the-church we-forbid up until the-place which
sub crimine tam ambitionis quam inobedientiae, quod est
under the-charge as-much of-ambition as of-disobedience which is
scelus idolatriae, cepit, resipiscendo non deserit. Similiter
the-crime of-idolatry he-took by-coming-to-his-senses not he-leaves likewise
etiam de inferioribus ecclesiasticis dignitatibus constituimus.
also about the-lower ecclesiastical dignities we-establish

Item si quis imperatorum regum ducum marchionum
likewise if any of-emperors kings dukes margraves
comitum vel quilibet saecularium potestatum aut personarum
counts or any of-secular powers or persons
investituram episcopatuum vel alicuius ecclesiasticae dignitatis
investiture of-bishoprics or of-any ecclesiastical dignity
dare praesumpserit, eiusdem sententiae vinculo se obstrictum
to-give shall-have-presumed of-the-same sentence by-the-bond himself bound
esse sciat. Insuper etiam, nisi resipiscat et ecclesiae
to-be let-him-know besides also unless he-come-to-his-senses and to-the-church
propriam libertatem dimittat, divinae animadversionis ultionem
its-own liberty release of-divine punishment the-vengeance
in hac praesenti vita tam in corpore suo quam ceteris rebus
in this present life as-much in body his as in-other things
suis sentiat; ut in adventu Domini spiritus salvus fiat.
his let-him-feel that at the-coming of-the-Lord the-spirit saved may-be
Item sententiam depositionis et excommunicationis, iam
likewise the-sentence of-deposition and of-excommunication already
plerumque datam in Tedaldum Mediolanensem dictum
often given against Tedald of-Milan called
archiepiscopum et Guibertum Ravennatem et Rolandum
archbishop and Wibert of-Ravenna and Roland
Tarvisiensem, confirmamus et corroboramus. Et Petrum,
of-Treviso we-confirm and strengthen and Peter
olim Rotonensem episcopum, nunc autem Narbonensis
formerly of-Rodez bishop now moreover of-the-Narbonne
ecclesiae invasorem, pari sententia damnamus.
church invader with-equal sentence we-condemn
Item si quis Normannorum terras sancti Petri, videlicet illam
likewise if any of-the-Normans the-lands of-Saint Peter namely that
partem Firmanae marchiae, quae nondum pervasa est, et
part of-the-Fermo march which not-yet seized is and

ducatum Spoletanum et Campaniam nec non Maritimas
the-duchy of-Spoleto and Campania nor not the-Maritime(-lands)
atque Sabinum et comitatum Tiburtinum nec non monasterium
and the-Sabine and the-county of-Tivoli nor not the-monastery
sancti Benedicti Montis Cassini et terras sibi pertinentes,
of-Saint Benedict of-Monte Cassino and the-lands to-it belonging
insuper etiam Beneventum invadere vel depraedari praesumpserit,
besides also Benevento to-invade or to-plunder shall-have-presumed
gratiam sancti Petri et introitum ecclesiae ei usque
the-grace of-Saint Peter and entry into-the-church to-him until
ad satisfactionem interdicimus. Verumtamen, si quis illorum
to satisfaction we-forbid nevertheless if any of-them
adversus habitatores harum terrarum aliquam iustam causam
against the-inhabitants of-these lands some just cause
habuerit, prius a nobis vel a rectoribus seu ministris
shall-have-had first from us or from the-rulers or ministers
inibi constitutis iustitiam requirat; quae si ei denegata
there established justice let-him-seek which if to-him denied
fuerit, concedimus: ut pro recuperatione suarum rerum
it-shall-have-been we-grant that for the-recovery of-his things
de terra illa accipiat; non tamen ultra modum nec more
from land that he-may-take not yet beyond measure nor in-the-manner
praedonum, sed ut decet christianum et eum, qui sua
of-robbers but as befits a-Christian and him who his-own
magis querit recipere, quam aliena diripere, et qui timet
rather seeks to-recover than others'-things to-plunder and who fears
gratiam Dei amittere et maledictionem beati Petri incurrere.
the-grace of-God to-lose and the-curse of-blessed Peter to-incur
Preterea admonemus omnes, qui aeternae damnationis poenas
moreover we-admonish all who of-eternal damnation the-penalties
evadere et verae beatitudinis gloriam cupiunt intrare,
to-escape and of-true blessedness the-glory desire to-enter

ut a falsis sibi caveant poenitentiis. Sicut enim
that from false for-themselves they-beware penances as for
falsum baptisma non lavat originale peccatum, ita post
false baptism not washes-away original sin so after
baptismum falsa poenitentia non delet nefas commissum.
baptism false penance not deletes the-wickedness committed
Ideoque valde necessarium est, ut, qui se aliquod grave
and-therefore very necessary it-is that he-who himself some grave
crimen commisisse cognoscit, animam suam prudentibus
crime to-have-committed knows soul his to-prudent
et religiosis viris committat, ut per veram poenitentiam
and religious men commit that through true penance
certam peccatorum suorum consequatur veniam. Haec est
sure of-sins his he-may-obtain pardon this is
enim vera penitentia: ut post commissum alicuius gravioris
for true penance that after the-committing of-some graver
criminis — utpote meditati homicidii et sponte commissi;
crime as-being of-premeditated homicide and willingly committed
seu periurii pro cupiditate honoris aut pecuniae facti;
or of-perjury for the-greed of-honor or of-money made
vel aliorum his similium — ita se unusquisque ad
or of-other to-these like-things so himself each to
Dominum convertat, ut, relictis omnibus iniquitatibus suis,
the-Lord should-turn that having-left all iniquities his
deinde in fructibus bonae operationis permaneat. Sic enim
thereafter in the-fruits of-good working he-may-remain thus for
Dominus per prophetam docet: “Si conversus fuerit
the-Lord through the-prophet teaches if turned shall-have-been
impius ab omnibus iniquitatibus suis et custodierit
the-impious from all iniquities his and shall-have-kept
universa mandata mea, vita vivet, et non morietur”.
all commands my in-life he-will-live and not will-die

In quibus verbis manifeste datur intelligi: quoniam,
in which words manifestly it-is-given to-be-understood since
qui aliena bona diripuit et ea, cum possit, reddere
he-who others' goods has-plundered and them though he-can to-return
vel emendare noluerit; vel qui arma contra iustitiam
or to-make-amends shall-have-refused or who arms against justice
portaverit; aut odium in corde retinet; vel qui huiusmodi
shall-have-carried or hatred in heart retains or who of-this-kind
negociationibus aut officiis implicitus fuerit, quae sine
in-businesses or offices involved shall-have-been which without
fraude sine falsitate sine invidia sine deceptione fratrum
fraud without falsehood without envy without deception of-brothers
exercere non possit; nec ad Deum conversus nec de
to-exercise not he-can neither to God converted nor for
perpetratis facinoribus veram poenitentiam facere credendus
committed crimes true penance to-do to-be-believed
est. Unde inter omnia vos hortamur atque monemus: ut
is whence among all-things you we-exhort and admonish that
in accipiendis poenitentiis non ad illos curratis, in quibus
in receiving penances not to those you-run in whom
nec religiosa vita nec est consulendi scientia, qui animas
neither religious life nor is-there of-counseling knowledge who the-souls
hominum magis ad interitum quam ad salutem ducunt, teste
of-men more to destruction than to salvation lead witness
Veritate quae ait: "Si caecus caecum ducat, ambo in
the-Truth which says if a-blind-man a-blind-man lead both into
foveam cadunt"; sed ad eos, qui, religione et scripturarum
a-pit fall but to those who in-religion and of-the-scriptures
doctrina instructi, viam veritatis et salutis vobis ostendere
in-doctrine instructed the-way of-truth and of-salvation to-you to-show
valeant.
may-be-able

Item de electione pontificum.

likewise about the-election of-pontiffs

Quotiens, defuncto pastore alicuius ecclesiae, alius est

as-often-as dead the-pastor of-any church another is

ei canonice subrogandus, instantia visitatoris episcopi,

to-him canonically to-be-substituted at-the-instance of-the-visiting bishop

qui ei ab apostolica vel metropolitana sede directus

who to-it from the-apostolic or metropolitan see directed

est, clerus et populus, remota omni saeculari ambitione

is the-clergy and people removed all worldly ambition

timore atque gratia, apostolicae sedis vel metropolitani

fear and favor of-the-apostolic see or of-metropolitan

sui consensu pastorem sibi secundum Deum eligat.

its with-the-consent a-pastor for-itself according-to God let-it-choose

Quodsi corruptus aliquo vitio aliter agere praesumpserit,

but-if corrupted by-some vice otherwise to-act it-shall-have-presumed

electionis perperam factae omni fructu carebit; et

of-the-election wrongly made of-all fruit it-will-be-deprived and

de caetero nullam electionis potestatem habebit; electionis

for the-rest no of-election power it-will-have of-election

vero potestas omnis in deliberatione sedis apostolicae

but the-power all in the-deliberation of-the-see apostolic

sive metropolitani sui consistat. Si enim is, ad quem

or of-metropolitan its let-it-rest if for he to whom

consecratio pertinet, non rite consecrando, teste beato

the-consecration belongs not duly by-consecrating witness blessed

Leone, gratiam benedictionis amittit, consequenter is, qui

Leo the-grace of-blessing loses consequently he who

ad pravam electionem declinaverit, eligendi potestate

to a-wicked election shall-have-turned-aside of-electing of-the-power

privatur.

is-deprived

Item excommunicatio regis Heinrici.

likewise excommunication of-king Henry

Beate Petre princeps apostolorum et tu beate Paule doctor

blessed Peter prince of-the-apostles and you blessed Paul teacher

gentium, dignamini queso aures vestras ad me inclinare meque

of-the-gentiles deign I-beseech ears your to me to-incline and-me

clementer exaudire. Quia veritatis estis discipuli et amatores,

mercifully to-hear because of-truth you-are disciples and lovers

adiuvate, ut veritatem vobis dicam, omni remota falsitate quam

help that the-truth to-you I-may-tell all removed falsehood which

omnino detestamini; ut fratres mei melius michi adquiescant,

altogether you-detest that brothers my better to-me may-assent

et sciant et intelligant: quia ex vestra fiducia post Deum

and may-know and understand that from your trust after God

et matrem eius semper virginem Mariam pravis et iniquis

and mother his ever virgin Mary to-the-wicked and unjust

resisto, vestris autem fidelibus auxilium praesto. Vos enim

I-resist to-your moreover faithful help I-offer you for

scitis: quia non libenter ad sacrum ordinem accessi; et invitus

know that not willingly to the-sacred order I-approached and unwilling

ultra montes cum domino papa Gregorio abii, sed magis

beyond the-mountains with lord pope Gregory I-went-away but more

invitus cum domino meo papa Leone ad vestram specialem

unwilling with lord my pope Leo to your special

ecclesiam redii, in qua utcunque vobis deservivi; deinde

church I-returned in which somehow you I-have-served then

valde invitus cum multo dolore et gemitu ac planctu in

very unwilling with much grief and groaning and lamentation on

throno vestro valde indignus sum collocatus. Hec ideo

throne your very unworthy I-have-been placed these-things therefore

dico, quia non ego vos, sed vos elegistis me et gravissimum

I-say because not I you but you chose me and the-heaviest

pondus vestrae ecclesiae supra me posuistis. Et quia super
weight of-your church upon me you-placed and because upon
montem excelsum me iussistis ascendere et clamare atque
a-mountain high me you-ordered to-ascend and to-cry-out and
annunciare populo Dei scelera eorum et filiis ecclesiae
to-announce to-the-people of-God the-crimes their and to-the-sons of-the-church
peccata eorum, membra diaboli contra me coeperunt insurgere
the-sins their the-limbs of-the-devil against me began to-rise-up
et usque ad sanguinem praesumpserunt in me manus suas
and even to blood presumed against me hands their
inicere. Astiterunt enim reges terrae et principes saeculares
to-lay stood-up for the-kings of-the-earth and princes secular
et ecclesiastici, aulici etiam et vulgares convenerunt in
and ecclesiastical courtiers also and commoners came-together into
unum adversus Dominum et adversus vos christos eius,
one against the-Lord and against you anointed his
dicentes: "Dirumpamus vincula eorum et proiciamus a
saying let-us-burst the-bonds their and cast from
nobis iugum ipsorum"; et ut me omnino morte vel exilio
us the-yoke of-them and that me utterly by-death or by-exile
confunderent, multis modis conati sunt in me insurgere.
they-might-confound in-many ways tried they-have against me to-rise-up
Inter quos specialiter Heinricus, quem dicunt regem, Heinrici
among whom especially Henry whom they-call king of-Henry
imperatoris filius, contra vestram calcaneum erexit ecclesiam,
the-emperor son against your (his)-heel raised church
facta cum multis episcopis ultramontanis et Italicis
made with many bishops beyond-the-mountains and Italian
conspiratione, annitens, me deiciendo eam sibi subiugare.
a-conspiracy striving me by-casting-down it to-himself to-subjugate
Cuius superbiae vestra resistit auctoritas, eamque vestra
whose pride your resisted authority and-it your

destruxit potestas. Qui, confusus et humiliatus ad me in
destroyed power who confounded and humbled to me into
Longobardiam veniens, absolutionem ab excommunicatione
Lombardy coming absolution from excommunication
quesivit. Quem ego videns humiliatum, multis ab eo
sought whom I seeing humbled many from him
promissionibus acceptis de suae vitae emendatione, solam
promises received about of-his life the-amendment only
ei communionem reddidi; non tamen in regno, a
to-him communion I-restored not yet into the-kingship from
quo eum in Romana synodo deposueram, instauravi; nec
which him in the-Roman synod I-had-deposed I-reinstated nor
fidelitatem omnium, qui sibi iuraverant vel erant iuraturi,
the-fealty of-all who to-him had-sworn or were about-to-swear
a qua omnes absolvi in eadem synodo, ut sibi servaretur,
from which all I-absolved in the-same synod that to-him it-be-kept
praecepi. Et haec ideo detinui, ut inter eum et
I-commanded and these-things for-this-reason I-held-back that between him and
episcopos vel principes ultramontanos, qui ei causa
the-bishops or princes beyond-the-mountains who to-him for-the-sake
iussionis vestrae ecclesiae restiterant, iustitiam facerem vel
of-the-command of-your church had-resisted justice I-might-do or
pacem componerem; sicut ipse Heinricus iuramento per
peace compose as himself Henry by-oath through
duos episcopos michi promisit. Praedicti autem episcopi et
two bishops to-me promised the-aforesaid moreover bishops and
principes ultramontani, audientes, illum non servare mihi
princes beyond-the-mountains hearing him not to-keep to-me
quod promiserat, quasi desperati de eo, sine meo consilio
what he-had-promised as-if despairing of him without my counsel
vobis testibus, elegerunt sibi Rodulfum ducem in
you being-witnesses chose for-themselves Rudolf the-duke as

regem. Qui rex Rodulfus festinanter ad me misso nuncio
king which king Rudolf hastily to me sent a-messenger
indicavit: se coactum regni gubernacula suscepisse
indicated himself compelled of-the-kingdom the-helm to-have-taken-up
tamen; sese paratum michi omnibus modis oboedire. Et
yet himself ready to-me in-all ways to-obey and
ut hoc verius credatur, semper ex eo tempore eundem
that this more-truly be-believed always from that time the-same
mihi misit sermonem, adiciens etiam filio suo obside et
to-me he-has-sent word adding also with-son his as-hostage and
fidelis sui ducis Bertaldi filio, quod promittebat, firmare.
of-faithful his duke Berthold with-the-son what he-was-promising to-confirm
Interea Heinricus cepit me precari, ut illum contra predictum
meanwhile Henry began me to-beseech that him against the-aforesaid
Rodulfum adiuvarem. Cui respondi: me libenter facere,
Rudolf I-should-help to-whom I-answered myself gladly to-do(-it)
audita utriusque partis ratione, ut scirem, cui iustitia
heard of-each side the-reason that I-might-know whom justice
magis faveret. Ille vero putans, suis viribus eum posse
more favored he but thinking by-his-own strength him to-be-able
devincere, meam contempsit responsionem. Postquam autem
to-conquer my scorned answer after moreover
persensit, se non posse sicut speravit agere, duo episcopi,
he-perceived himself not to-be-able as he-had-hoped to-act two bishops
Verdunensis videlicet et Osenburcgensis, de consentaneis suis,
of-Verdun namely and of-Osnabrück of partisans his
Romam venerunt et in synodo ex parte Heinrici me, ut
to-Rome came and in the-synod from the-side of-Henry me that
ei iustitiam facerem, rogaverunt. Quod et nuncii Rodulfi
to-him justice I-should-do asked which also the-messengers of-Rudolf
fieri laudaverunt. Tandem, aspirante Deo sicut credo,
to-be-done praised at-last inspiring God as I-believe

statui in eadem synodo: in partibus ultramontanis fieri
I-decided in the-same synod in the-parts beyond-the-mountains to-be-held
colloquium, ut illic aut pax statueretur aut, cui amplius
a-conference that there either peace might-be-established or whom more
iustitia faveret, cognosceretur. Ego enim, sicut vos mihi
justice favored be-recognized I for as you to-me
testes estis patres et domini, usque hodie nullam partem
witnesses are fathers and lords until today no side
disposui adiuvare nisi eam, cui plus iustitia faveret. Et
have-arranged to-help except that to-which more justice favored and
quia putabam, quod iniustior pars colloquium nollet
because I-thought that the-more-unjust side a-conference would-not-want
fieri, ubi iustitia suum locum servaret, excommunicavi et
to-be-held where justice its place might-keep I-excommunicated and
anathemate alligavi omnes personas sive regis sive ducis aut
with-anathema bound all persons whether of-king or of-duke or
episcopi seu alicuius hominis, qui colloquium aliquo ingenio
of-bishop or of-any man who the-conference by-any device
impediret, ut non fieret. Predictus autem Heinricus cum
should-hinder that not it-be-held the-aforesaid moreover Henry with
suis fautoribus, non timens periculum inoboedientiae quod est
his abettors not fearing the-danger of-disobedience which is
scelus idolatriae, colloquium impediendo excommunicationem
the-crime of-idolatry the-conference by-hindering excommunication
incurrit, et se ipsum anathematis vinculo alligavit,
incurred and him himself of-anathema with-the-bond bound
magnamque multitudinem christianorum morti tradi
and-a-great multitude of-Christians to-death to-be-handed-over
et ecclesias fecit dissipari, et totum paene Teutonicorum
and churches caused to-be-destroyed and the-whole almost of-the-Teutons
regnum desolationi dedit. Quapropter, confidens de iudicio
kingdom to-desolation gave wherefore trusting in the-judgment

et misericordia Dei eiusque piissime matris semper virginis
and mercy of-God and-of-his most-loving mother ever virgin
Mariae, fultus vestra auctoritate, saepe nominatum Heinricum,
Mary supported by-your authority the-often named Henry
quem regem dicunt, omnesque fautores eius excommunicationi
whom king they-call and-all abettors his to-excommunication
subicio et anathematis vinculis alligo. Et iterum regnum
I-subject and of-anathema with-the-bonds bind and again the-kingdom
Teutonicorum et Italiae ex parte omnipotentis Dei et vestra
of-the-Teutons and of-Italy from the-side of-almighty God and yours
interdicens ei, omnem potestatem et dignitatem illi
forbidding him all power and dignity from-him
regiam tollo; et, ut nullus christianorum ei sicut regi
royal I-take and that none of-Christians him as king
oboediat, interdico; omnesque, qui ei iuraverunt vel iurabunt
obey I-forbid and-all who to-him have-sworn or will-swear
de regni dominatione, a iuramenti promissione
concerning of-the-kingdom dominion from of-the-oath the-promise
absolvo. Ipse autem Heinricus cum suis fautoribus in omni
I-absolve he-himself moreover Henry with his abettors in every
congressione belli nullas vires nullamque in vita sua victoriam
engagement of-war no strength and-no in life his victory
optineat. Ut autem Rodulfus regnum Teutonicorum regat
may-obtain that moreover Rudolf the-kingdom of-the-Teutons may-rule
et defendat, quem Teutonici elegerunt sibi in regem, ad
and defend whom the-Teutons chose for-themselves as king to
vestram fidelitatem ex parte vestra dono largior et concedo;
your fealty from the-side your as-a-gift I-bestow and I-grant
omnibus sibi fideliter adhaerentibus absolutionem omnium
to-all to-him faithfully adhering absolution of-all
peccatorum vestramque benedictionem in hac vita et in
sins and-your blessing in this life and in

futura, vestra fretus fiducia, largior. Sicut enim Heinricus pro
the-future by-your relying trust I-bestow as for Henry for
sua superbia inoboedientia et falsitate a regni dignitate
his pride disobedience and falsehood from of-the-kingdom the-dignity
iuste abicitur, ita Rodulfo pro sua humilitate oboedientia
justly is-cast-off so to-Rudolf for his humility obedience
et veritate potestas et dignitas regni conceditur.
and truth the-power and dignity of-the-kingdom is-granted
Agite nunc queso, patres et principes sanctissimi, ut omnis
act now I-beseech fathers and princes most-holy that all
mundus intelligat et cognoscat, quia, si potestis in coelo
the-world may-understand and know that if you-can in heaven
ligare et solvere, potestis in terra imperia regna principatus
to-bind and to-loose you-can on earth empires kingdoms principalities
ducatus marchias comitatus et omnium hominum possessiones
duchies marches counties and of-all men possessions
pro meritis tollere unicuique et concedere. Vos enim
according-to merits to-take-away from-each and to-grant you for
patriarchatus primatus archiepiscopatus episcopatus frequenter
patriarchates primacies archbishoprics bishoprics often
tulistis pravis et indignis, et religiosis viris dedistis.
have-taken from-the-wicked and unworthy and to-religious men have-given
Si enim spiritualia iudicatis, quid de saecularibus vos
if for spiritual-things you-judge what about secular-things you
posse credendum est! Et si angelos, dominantes omnibus
to-be-able to-be-believed is and if angels lording-it over-all
superbis principibus, iudicabitis, quid de illorum servis facere
proud princes you-will-judge what about their servants to-do
potestis! Addiscant nunc reges et omnes saeculi principes,
you-can let-them-learn now kings and all of-the-world princes
quanti vos estis, quid potestis; et timeant parvi
of-how-great-account you are what you-can-do and let-them-fear at-little

pendere iussionem ecclesiae vestrae. Et in praedicto Heinrico
to-value the-command of-church your and on the-aforesaid Henry
tam cito iudicium vestrum exercete, ut omnes sciant, quia
so quickly judgment your exercise that all may-know that
non fortuitu sed vestra potestate cadet. Confundetur; utinam
not by-chance but by-your power he-will-fall he-will-be-confounded would-that
ad penitentiam, ut spiritus sit salvus in die Domini.
to penance that the-spirit may-be saved in the-day of-the-Lord
Acta Rome Nonis Martii, indictione 3.
done at-Rome on-the-Nones of-March in-the-indiction third
